

Teach
Yourself®

COMPLETE SPOKEN ARABIC (OF THE ARABIAN GULF)
www.teachyourself.com

Do you want to be able to understand and speak the Arabic of the Arabian Gulf confidently? All you need is this bestselling course from Teach Yourself – the No.1 brand in language learning. This course teaches the spoken Arabic of the Gulf region through everyday real-life situations that make the grammar and vocabulary easy and memorable, with complete audio support available separately – MP3 compatible.

Jack Smart and Frances Altorfer

The authors are both linguists and teachers of long experience.

'Jack was a brilliant and engaging teacher whose enthusiasm and on-the-ground experience helped bring the subject alive for me'.

Jim Muir (BBC Correspondent, Middle East)

Time-saving
Take a one- or ten-minute tour around the subject



Jargon-free
Easy grammar and vocabulary to help you learn fast

Expert
Includes exclusive tips from world-class linguists



Practical
Reinforce your learning with examples and exercises

Motivating
Achieve your goal with support and advice



Audio (MP3 compatible)
Also available as a book/CD pack with audio support

To learn Modern Standard Arabic – used in writing and in formal situations throughout the Arabic-speaking world – pick up a copy of *Complete Arabic*, also from Teach Yourself.

ISBN 978-0-07-174807-0
MHID 0-07-174807-5 \$32.00 USD



9 780071 748070

CONVERSE WITH
INCREASED FLUENCY
AND SPONTANEITY
FROM BEGINNER TO
INTERMEDIATE

Level 4

FROM BEGINNER
TO INTERMEDIATE

Level 4

FROM BEGINNER TO
INTERMEDIATE

Level 4

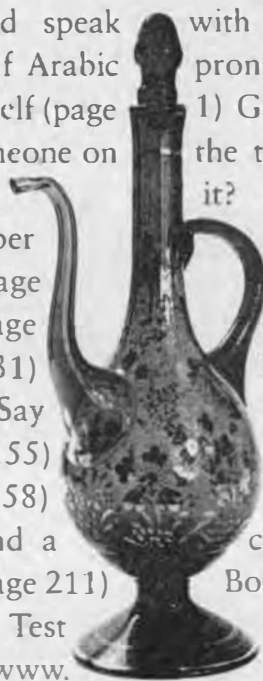
Teach
Yourself®

COMPLETE SPOKEN ARABIC
(OF THE ARABIAN GULF)

Teach
Yourself®

COMPLETE SPOKEN ARABIC

Understand and speak with confidence (page xvii) Learn Gulf Arabic pronunciation (page xx)
Introduce yourself (page 1) Give directions (page 26) Ask for someone on the telephone (page 47)
What time is it? (page 52) Bargain with a shopkeeper (page 73) Order a sandwich (page 91) Talk about your family (page 110) Buy a bus ticket (page 131) Make a complaint (page 138) Say what you did on holiday (page 155) Talk about the weather (page 158) Ask for a doctor (page 196) Find a cashpoint (page 208)
Send a letter (page 211) Book a hotel room (page 225) Test yourself and learn more online (www.teachyourself.com)



LEARN THE SPOKEN ARABIC OF THE ARABIAN GULF

The publisher has used its best endeavours to ensure that the URLs for external websites referred to in this book are correct and active at the time of going to press. However, the publisher and the author have no responsibility for the websites and can make no guarantee that a site will remain live or that the content will remain relevant, decent or appropriate.

For UK order enquiries: please contact Bookpoint Ltd, 130 Milton Park, Abingdon, Oxon OX14 4SB. Telephone: +44 (0) 1235 827720. Fax: +44 (0) 1235 400454. Lines are open 09.00-17.00, Monday to Saturday, with a 24-hour message answering service. Details about our titles and how to order are available at www.teachyourself.com

For USA order enquiries: please contact McGraw-Hill Customer Services, PO Box 545, Blacklick, OH 43004-0545, USA. Telephone: 1-800-722-4726. Fax: 1-614-755-5645.

For Canada order enquiries: please contact McGraw-Hill Ryerson Ltd, 300 Water St, Whitby, Ontario L1N 9B6, Canada. Telephone: 905 430 5000. Fax: 905 430 5020.

Long renowned as the authoritative source for self-guided learning – with more than 50 million copies sold worldwide – the Teach Yourself series includes over 500 titles in the fields of languages, crafts, hobbies, business, computing and education.

British Library Cataloguing in Publication Data: a catalogue record for this title is available from the British Library.

Library of Congress Catalog Card Number: on file.

First published in UK 1999 as *Teach Yourself Gulf Arabic* by Hodder Education, part of Hachette UK, 338 Euston Road, London NW1 3BH.

First published in US 1999 by The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc.

This edition published 2010.

The Teach Yourself name is a registered trade mark of Hachette UK.

Copyright © 1999, 2003, 2010 Jack Smart and Frances Ahotfer

In UK: All rights reserved. Apart from any permitted use under UK copyright law, no part of this publication may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic or mechanical, including photocopy, recording, or any information, storage and retrieval system, without permission in writing from the publisher or under licence from the Copyright Licensing Agency Limited. Further details of such licences (for reprographic reproduction) may be obtained from the Copyright Licensing Agency Limited, of Saffron House, 6–10 Kirby Street, London EC1N 8TS.

In US: All rights reserved. Except as permitted under the United States Copyright Act of 1976, no part of this publication may be reproduced or distributed in any form or by any means, or stored in a database or retrieval system, without the prior written permission of the publisher.

Typeset by MPS Limited, A Macmillan Company.

Printed in Great Britain for Hodder Education, an Hachette UK Company, 338 Euston Road, London NW1 3BH.

Hachette UK's policy is to use papers that are natural, renewable and recyclable products and made from wood grown in sustainable forests. The logging and manufacturing processes are expected to conform to the environmental regulations of the country of origin.

Impression number 10987654321

Year 2014 2013 2012 2011 2010

Contents

<i>Meet the authors</i>	vii
<i>Only got a minute?</i>	viii
<i>Only got ten minutes?</i>	x
<i>Introduction</i>	xv
<i>How to use this book</i>	xvii
<i>Pronunciation and transliteration</i>	xx
<i>The Arabic alphabet</i>	xxvi
1 السلام عليكم as-saláamu: alái-kum <i>Hello!</i>	1
Saying hello and goodbye, using simple greetings, giving your name and asking for someone else's, saying where you are from and asking someone where they are from.	
2 أين...؟ wain...? <i>Where is...?</i>	17
Asking for places in a town, asking where things are, asking for and giving directions.	
3 رقم الهاتف rágam at-tilifóon... <i>The telephone number is...</i>	38
Numbers, asking for someone on the telephone, asking for and giving telephone numbers.	
4 الساعة كم؟ as-sáa:ah kam? <i>What time is it?</i>	52
Asking and telling the time, asking when places open and close, the days of the week, the times of day.	
5 بكم هذا؟ bi-kám háadha? <i>How much is this?</i>	67
Asking whether things are available, asking what things are and how much they cost, doing some simple bargaining, describing things.	

6	انت جوعان؟ <i>ánta joo:áan? Are you hungry?</i>	89
	Buying snacks and soft drinks, expressing your wants and preferences, saying what you like and dislike.	
7	العائلة <i>al-:áa'ilah The family</i>	110
	Talking about your family, talking about more than one person or thing, talking about people's occupations, saying what you do every day.	
8	في الفندق <i>fi l-fúndug In the hotel</i>	131
	Asking for and reserving a room, asking about the services, asking about mealtimes, making a complaint.	
9	الهوايات والإجازات <i>al-hawaayáat wa l-ijaazáat Interests and holidays</i>	149
	Talking about your interests and what you do in your spare time, your plans for the future, the weather, what you did on holiday.	
10	تاريخ العرب <i>taariikh al-:árab The history of the Arabs</i>	171
	Saying what you were doing or used to do in the past, more ways of describing things, saying how and when you do things.	
11	الصحة <i>aS-SiHHah Health</i>	189
	Saying you don't feel well, asking for a chemist or doctor, buying remedies.	
12	الإجراءات الرسمية <i>al-ijraa'áat ar-rasmíyyah Official procedures</i>	207
	Finding a bank cashpoint, cashing travellers' cheques and changing money, buying stamps, sending mail, dealing with government departments and embassies.	

13	الى أين؟ <i>li-wáin? Where to?</i>	223
	Telling people to do things, taking a taxi, booking and buying bus tickets, hiring a car, buying petrol and dealing with car problems.	
14	في البيت <i>fi l-báit In this house</i>	242
	Talking about where you live, describing people and places, talking about renting a flat or house	
	<i>Key to the exercises</i>	257
	<i>Transcripts</i>	293
	<i>Grammar summary</i>	299
	<i>Arabic verbs</i>	307
	<i>Glossary of language terms</i>	314
	<i>Arabic-English glossary</i>	319
	<i>English-Arabic glossary</i>	344
	<i>Index</i>	367



Only got a minute?

Arabic is spoken by more than 200 million people, across North Africa, the Arabian Peninsula and the Middle East. In several other countries it is an official language. It is read and written by more than 1,000 million Muslims across the world. It is the language of the Koran, the holy scripture of the Islamic religion. All Muslims use Arabic in their devotions.

Arabic is a Semitic language, one of an ancient group of languages spoken across North Africa, the Arabian peninsula and South-West Asia. Its main surviving sister language is modern Hebrew. Modern Arabic exists on two levels. The first is the written Arabic of books, newspapers and the media, known as Modern Standard Arabic; the second is colloquial or spoken Arabic, which varies across the Arab world and is not normally written. Although spoken Arabic differs between countries, all dialects descend directly from Ancient Arabic. This book

deals with one of the larger dialect groups, spoken in the Gulf States, Saudi Arabia and Iraq.

Arabic is written from right to left, cursively, like European handwriting, i.e. most letters are joined up. There is no equivalent of European printed text, with separated letters. There are no capital letters. The alphabet has 28 consonants. The short vowels, such as *a* as in *hat*, are not normally written. The Arabic script *looks* difficult, but is actually quite easy to master. Spelling is no problem as there are few irregularities.

There are some 'strange' sounds in Arabic which do not occur in English, but these can be mastered with practice. Vocabulary can be difficult as Arabic comes from a different language group from English, but – especially in spoken Arabic – there are many 'borrowed' words, such as **bank**, and **siinama** (*cinema*), to help you along.

For Mairi and Kirsty

Acknowledgements

Many people and organizations helped us in various ways in the preparation of this book, and we should like to express our sincere gratitude to them.

We would especially like to thank the al-Battashi family for their generous hospitality and for help with the text; Joan Crabbe, Jim and Margaret Fraser, Marijcke Jongbloed and the Sharjah National History Museum and Desert Park, Mike Pinder, Brian Pridham, Adrian Gully and Mairi Smart who helped us with realia; Bobby Coles, Ruth Butler and Jennifer Davies at the Centre for Arab Gulf Studies and Sheila Westcott in the Department of Arabic at the University of Exeter who were endlessly helpful and resourceful, and the embassies of the United Arab Emirates, Bahrain, and Yemen who kindly gave us information and materials.

We are also very grateful to the Coca-Cola Company, McDonalds Corporation, Penguin Trading Est. and National Mineral Water Co. Ltd. of Oman, and Vimto for giving us permission to use copyright material.

Thanks are also due to our editors Sarah Mitchell, Sue Hart and Helen Green, and Ginny Catmur for this latest edition, for their encouragement and patience, to Fred and Dorothea Altorfer, and to Lynne Noble for her generous help behind the scenes.

Meet the authors

The authors are both linguists of long experience, and are familiar with the Arab countries, their society, religion and culture.

Jack Smart has taught Arabic at university level for more than 30 years, specializing in the learning of the language, his students ranging from beginners to candidates for a doctoral degree. He is familiar with the written language from its earliest pre-Islamic period to the present day, and has researched widely into spoken Arabic dialects, in several of which he is fluent. He has lived and worked in Egypt, Sudan and the Gulf countries, and has made short or extended visits and study trips to virtually all of the other Arab states.

Frances Altorfer has also lived in the Middle East. She knows several European languages as well as Swahili and Arabic, and has many years of experience of teaching languages, using the most up-to-date teaching methods.

Working in partnership, Jack has provided the linguistic material, and Frances the teaching expertise. The result is, we are sure, a balanced self-teaching book with a broad scope, mainly linguistic, but also with useful sections on the Arab and Islamic culture, in a clear and easily digestible format.



Only got ten minutes?

Why learn Arabic?

Why do you want to learn Arabic? There could be several reasons.

- It may be that you are going to work in a country where Arabic is the everyday language, and you would like to be able to communicate with the people. To read such basic things as street signs, newspaper headings and so on you need some knowledge of the written language, the basics of which are also dealt with in this book.
- You may simply want to learn Arabic because you intend to visit one of the Arabic-speaking countries as a tourist. Besides the wonderful pharaonic monuments in Egypt, the marvels of Roman and Arab civilizations extend across North Africa and the Middle East.

If you know one form of spoken Arabic, you will find it quite easy to adapt to the dialect of whichever Arabic-speaking country you happen to be in, as you will have a good grounding in the basics of the language. All the dialects are ultimately based on the ancient written language, and grammatical features such as the way the verbs work do not differ greatly wherever you are. For instance, in the Arabic taught in this book, the word for *they go* is *yiruuHuun*; in other dialects – even a few within the Gulf region itself – it is *yiruuHuu*, without the final -n. This is typical of these minor variations – and in any case, you will be understood whichever you use.

What kind of Arabic will you learn?

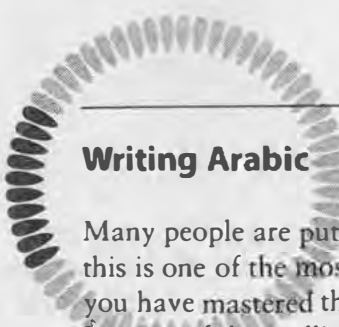
The Arabic taught in this book is representative of the spoken Arabic of the Gulf region, the Kingdom of Saudi Arabia and most of Iraq, and even within this area, there are regional differences. The dialects of the Yemen, perhaps, differ the most. If you learn the Arabic in this book, you will be understood in the whole area. If you are to be in a specific area for a long period, you should listen to and adopt the local usages. For instance, the word given for *there is/are* is *fiih*. If you are in Bahrain you will hear *hast*, in Iraq you will hear *aku*, and in parts of Oman *shayy* – but *fiih* will do fine wherever you are.

In addition to the native speakers, Arabic is read and written by Muslims all over the world as a language of religion.

- There are millions of Muslims in Pakistan, Afghanistan and in the Far East, in Malaysia and Indonesia. If you are a Muslim, you have to read the Koran and pray in Arabic. Translations are only used for reference or to help with understanding the Arabic.
- All the commentaries on the Holy Text, and other literature on interpretation and rules for daily life are written in and have to be read in Arabic.

It is a matter of pride for Muslims to regard Arabic as a prestige language.

In the same way that Welsh and Spanish and English use mostly the same script but are not closely related to one another, other languages of mainly Islamic countries, such as Persian (Farsi) and Urdu, and previously Turkish, use adapted versions of the Arabic script, but are not linguistically related to Arabic. While Persian and Urdu are still written in slightly adapted forms of the Arabic alphabet, Turkish adopted a modified European alphabet in 1928. If you know Arabic, you can often get the gist of a newspaper article written in one of those languages. This is because they have many words borrowed from Arabic, due to the shared Islamic culture.



Writing Arabic

Many people are put off by the apparently difficult script. In fact, this is one of the most rewarding aspects of learning Arabic. Once you have mastered the 28 letters, it is easy to write Arabic – which has few of the spelling oddities of English (think of *write/right* or *cough/through*, for example).

Arabic – except in the Holy Koran and ancient poetry – is always written without the short vowels, such as the *a* in *hat* or *i* in *tin*. This is not as bizarre as you might think: in English we are already used to this with text messaging (*txt msg*). The vowels can usually be predicted because there is a very limited number of permitted word shapes in Arabic. In fact, all true Arabic words fall into fewer than 50 patterns (i.e. combinations of consonants and vowels).

The Arabic heritage

The Arabs began to study their language early in their history, so the basics of grammar were laid down in the eighth century, which is also when the first dictionary was written.

Written Arabic has existed for about 12 centuries without a great deal of change. The West owes Arabic a major debt, as Arabic carried the torch of classical learning when Europe entered the Dark Ages. Many early Greek mathematical, medical and philosophical texts were translated by Arab writers and scientists. Without these scholars, they would have been lost to us. Much that we know of today in the fields of chemistry, medicine, astronomy and other branches of scientific endeavour stems from these early Arab scholars.

Although they did not invent them, the Arabs also gave us what we call Arabic numerals, including the concept of *zero*, which derives from the Arabic *Sifr*. This is more obvious in the word *cipher*, which originally meant the same thing.

Arabic has lent many words to European languages, particularly Spanish and Portuguese, as a result of the Arab occupation of the Iberian Peninsula which lasted for over 700 years. There are also a surprising number in English. *Magazine*, *calibre*, *algebra*, *arsenal* and *admiral*, for instance, all come from Arabic.

The Arabic word for *the* is *al-*, in Arabic script **ال**, which you can see in many borrowings, such as *algebra*, *Alhambra* and *algorithm*. It is always joined on to the next word, so you never see it alone.

Arabic literature

Popular Arabic literature familiar in the West is mainly confined to the *Arabian Nights*, a collection of tales from many sources and not highly regarded in the Arab world until quite recently, due to their popular folk origins. The poetry of Omar Khayyam, the next best known piece of Middle Eastern literature in the West, is in fact Persian, not Arabic.

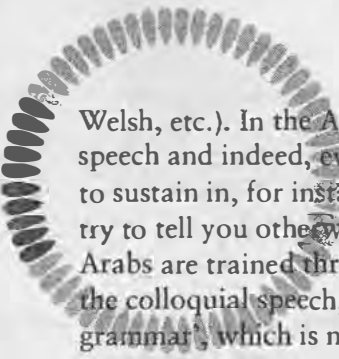
Arabic literature began with poetry in the pre-Islamic era. There were no novels or drama until the 20th century.

The Muslim religion technically prohibits the artistic representation of anything living. Although this was ignored in many Muslim areas, it led to a highly developed art of calligraphy. This is evident in inscriptions on religious buildings, and indeed in all walks of Arab life.

If you learn Arabic, you will be able to learn more about all these things.

Spoken Arabic

The position of spoken or colloquial Arabic is slightly confusing for Westerners to understand. In Britain, for example, by no means everyone speaks Standard English in everyday life, but most people can do so if required, albeit with varying accents (Scottish, Irish,



Welsh, etc.). In the Arab world, no one uses Standard Arabic in speech and indeed, even highly educated people find it difficult to sustain in, for instance, academic discussions. Some Arabs will try to tell you otherwise, but don't believe them. This is because Arabs are trained throughout their education to look down on the colloquial speech, and taught that it is not 'pure' and has 'no grammar', which is nonsense!

Dialects all derive ultimately from the old Classical Arabic, and share many of the same structures. The chief divergences can basically be summed up as follows:

- Dropping the (in any case unwritten) so-called case and mood endings of the noun and verb.
- Using – for no apparent reason – different words from the huge Arabic lexicon for the same concept. For instance, the word used in this book for *to speak* is *yitkallam*, but in other parts of the Arab world *yiHkii* is used. Both are perfectly good Classical Arabic words.
- For historical reasons – often connected with the colonial powers – Arabic spoken dialects have absorbed foreign terms. These reflect historical and geographical influences. For instance Gulf Arabic uses many Persian and Indian words, such as *dariishah* (*window*, Persian), *siidah* (*straight ahead*, Indian). Colonial influence features most in the North African dialects, which have a huge number of French borrowings. Gulf Arabic shows some Portuguese influence (*maiz table*), and much English from the oil age (*fainri refinery*, *biTrool* in the sense of *crude oil*) and many more terms often connected with technology.

Spoken Arabic is not often written down, and there is no standard way of spelling it in the Arabic script. The main instances are cartoon captions in the newspapers and folk theatre, film and TV scripts. Even dialogue in novels tends to be rendered in Standard Arabic – which gives it a peculiar stilted flavour – though there have been attempts at compromise, often described as 'the third language'. In this book the spoken Arabic has been simply transcribed so that you can read it.

Introduction

The purpose of this book is to teach you how to speak and understand the spoken Arabic of the Gulf region. This is a group of closely related dialects, concentrated on the nations of the Arab Gulf from Kuwait down through Qatar, Bahrain, the United Arab Emirates and the Sultanate of Oman. Many of the dialects of the Kingdom of Saudi Arabia are closely related, as is that of (especially southern) Iraq.

It is not a manual of standard, or literary, Arabic, which is not a spoken language; for that use *Complete Arabic*, also published by *Teach Yourself*. However, so that you may have the added pleasure of being able to read road signs, shop names and other visual features of the Gulf environment, a simple account of the Arabic alphabet is given.

This book contains everything you need to know about basic Gulf Arabic. Work steadily at your own pace, and finish the course: don't hurry things or become disheartened after the first couple of chapters. This book introduces the language you really need: vocabulary and grammatical information have been limited to the necessities.

Of course, if you are living in the Gulf, you should seek help from native speakers at every opportunity. Here a slight word of warning: there exists in the Gulf a 'pidgin' variety of Arabic, used mainly between the Arabs and the huge numbers of expatriate workers, mostly from the Indian sub-continent. If your informants come up with something differing radically from what is given in this book (ignoring regional differences in pronunciation), check that you are not hearing 'pidgin'.

Arabs very much appreciate any attempt by a foreigner to learn their language, and your every effort will be greeted with

amazement, then enthusiasm and offers of help. It is the key to a society of very friendly people which is often thought difficult to penetrate. Speaking even a little Arabic will enhance your social life and, in the business world, can open doors which would otherwise remain closed.



How to use this book

The book is divided into units, with all the important information that you need for good communication in Gulf Arabic given in the first ten units. The last four units refer to specific situations in which you might find yourself if you are visiting or resident in the region, and build on the words and grammar that you have learned.

At the beginning of each unit is a summary of the contents, which lists what you will be able to do after working through the unit.

Each unit contains several Dialogues (Hiwáar), which introduce the new language in a realistic context. In some instances you may find slight variants between the book and the recording. This is due to the regional differences in pronunciation. There are two or three questions to help you check your comprehension, and the answers to them and a translation of the dialogues are in the Key to the exercises at the end of the book.

Key words (Quick Vocab) are given after each dialogue in the order in which they appear. Then there are Notes (mulaaHaDHáat), which explain how the language works in the dialogue.

There are some Cultural tips (ma:luumáat thaqaafiyah), which highlight some of the cultural aspects of life in the Arabian Gulf. There are also Author insight boxes, which give you helpful language tips based on the authors' experience.

If you have the recording, listen to it several times alone while reading the dialogue and practise repeating the dialogue to yourself to improve your pronunciation. Listening is the first step to learning a language; don't be disheartened if you don't always understand every word – picking out the gist of what is said is the key.

To sum up what you have learned in the dialogues, **Key phrases** (ta:biiráat háammah) will provide a valuable reference after you have worked through all the dialogues in the unit. These contain the main language elements and help you with the exercises.

This is followed by **Grammar points** (núqaT naHwiyyah), where the constructions contained in the unit are explained and illustrated in sentences. Main grammatical concepts have often been grouped together for ease of reference, and they gradually build up to provide you with all the structures you need to understand and speak Gulf Arabic. These should be used for reference.

The next section, **Exercises** (tamriináat), provides a variety of activities so that you can practise using the new words and structures. The answers are to be found at the end of the book, in the **Key to the exercises**. Some exercises are on the recording, and you may find it helps you to read the transcript of the recording at the back of the book.

The next section contains the **Arabic script** (al-kháTT al-árabí), which gradually takes you through the Arabic alphabet so that by the end you will easily be able to recognise simple words and notices, road signs and so on. There is then a short exercise for you to practise reading Arabic, and again the answers are in the **Key to the exercises**.

The final section of each unit is **Test yourself**, a self-assessment to help you monitor your progress before you attempt the next unit. The answers to these are also in the **Key to the exercises**.

After the **Key to the exercises** and the **Transcripts of the recording**, you will find a reference section. This contains a **Grammar summary** and a section on the **Arabic verbs**. Every verb you come across in the book can be matched in the verb tables with a verb which works in the same way. **Arabic-English** and **English-Arabic** glossaries are provided so that you can look up words alphabetically.

Pronunciation and transliteration

Transliteration means expressing a language which uses a different writing system (such as Arabic) in terms of symbols based on the Roman alphabet. There is no generally accepted system for doing this, and you will find that the English versions of, say, road signs, differ from what is given in this book.

The essential feature of a transliteration system is that it has an equivalent for every sound used in the target language. Instead of using a complicated system of accents and special symbols, this book is more or less restricted to the English alphabet, making use of capital letters to distinguish between Arabic sounds which seem related to us. For instance, Arabic has two sorts of *t* which are distinguished in this way: 'tiin' means *figs*, and 'Tiin' means *mud*. There is a full explanation of how to pronounce these sounds in the next section.

Consequently you will not find capital letters used in the book as they are conventionally used in English. An exception has, however, been made in the case of 'Allaah' *Allah, God*.

The Arabic sounds

CD 1, TR 1, 0:50

Arabic has some sounds which are difficult for foreigners to pronounce. The following table is therefore divided into three parts:

- 1 Sounds that are more or less as in English.
- 2 Sounds which do not occur in English, but are found in other European languages.
- 3 Sounds which are peculiar to Arabic.

Group 1

- b** as in **baab** door
- d** as in **diinaar** dinar
- th** as in **ithnain** two, like *thank*, not like *this, that, father* etc.
- dh** as in **dhahab** gold. It is important not to mix this up with the sound written 'th', as they convey different meanings in Arabic (**dhiyaab** wolves, **thiyaab** garments)
- f** as in **filfil** pepper
- g** as in **galam** pen
- h** as in **haadha** this but never omitted in speech as it very often is in English (e.g. Brahms). An exception is the common feminine ending **-ah**, and the word **fiih** there is/are. The final **-h** in these is there for a special reason and is not normally pronounced.
- j** as in **jisir** bridge
- k** as in **kabiir** big
- l** as in **laazim** necessary, which is mostly as *limp* but sometimes has a more hollow sound, roughly as in *alter*. This distinction is not meaningful in Arabic but depends on the surrounding consonants.
- m** as in **maay** water
- n** as in **naas** people
- s** as in **samak** fish
- sh** as in **shams** sun
- t** as in **tilifoon** telephone
- w** as in **walad** boy
- y** as in **yad** hand
- z** as in **zain** good

Group 2

- r** as in **riyaal** riyal. The Arabic **r** sound does not really occur in standard English, but is familiar in dialect pronunciation. It is the trilled *r* of Scottish *very*, and common in Italian and Spanish (*Parma, Barcelona*)
- gh** as in **ghaali** expensive. This is near - but not quite the *r* of Parisian French. It is actually a more guttural scraping sound, and occurs in Dutch, e.g. *negen*. The Parisian *r* will do.
- kh** as in **khamsah** five. This is roughly the sound of *ch* in Scottish *loch* and *och aye*. Also familiar in German *Bach* and (written *j*) in Spanish *José*.

- a as in *abadan never*, roughly as in *hat*
ii as in *kabiir big*, like *Eve*, and French *livre*
i as in *jibin cheese*, like *big*
uu as in *filuus money*, like *rude*, French *vous*, German *Schule*
u as in *buldaan countries*, like *put* (never as in *cup*)
oo as in *tilifoon telephone*, like *rose* as pronounced in Scotland,
or French *beau*
ai as in *bait house*, like the sound in *wait*
The following diphthong also occurs occasionally:
ay as in *aye*. The place name Dubai is transcribed *dubay*.

Doubled consonants

☛ CD 1, TR 1, 6:37

Doubled consonants (here written *bb*, *nn*, *ss* etc.) are important in Arabic, as they can change the meanings of words radically. They are only pronounced in English when they span two words, e.g. *But Tom, my brother*. . . In Arabic, however, they must always be pronounced carefully, wherever they occur, with a slight hesitation between them, e.g. *gaTar* is the place-name *Qatar*, *gaITar* means *dripped, distilled*.

Stress

'Stress' refers to the syllable in a word which is pronounced more emphatically than the rest, e.g. *potato*, where the stress is on the second syllable *-ta-*. The stressed syllables of words have been marked with an acute accent: *á*, *áa*, etc. in the glossaries and the first six units so that you become used to where they occur. One simple rule, however, is that if a word contains a long vowel (*aa*, *uu*, etc.) the stress falls on this; and if there is more than one, the stress falls on the one nearest the end of the word.

The Arabic alphabet

There are several general points to be noted:

- Arabic is written from right to left – the opposite of English.
- Arabic script is always joined or cursive, i.e. there is no equivalent of the English text you are now reading, where all the letters have separate forms with spaces between them. There are no capital letters.
- In cursive writing letters are joined together by means of joining strokes (called ligatures). As a result, Arabic letters have slightly different forms, depending on whether they come at the beginning, middle, or end of a word.
- A few letters do not join to the following letter.
- Arabic writing looks complicated just because it is so different, but in fact it is not. Spelling in Arabic is easy, because, with a very few exceptions, all sounds are written as they are pronounced. There are no diphthongs, i.e. combinations of two letters to give a distinct sound, like *th*, *sh*, etc. in English.
- One thing you must get used to in the Arabic script is that short vowels, i.e. *a*, *i* or *u* (as opposed to the long vowels *aa*, *uu* and *ii*), are not shown in the script. For instance, the word **bank** (which Arabic has borrowed from English), is written b-n-k.

Because of the cursive nature of Arabic, it is necessary to give the *initial*, *medial* and *final* forms of each letter. Since some letters do not join to the one after them, a separate form has also been included. Although four forms of the non-joiners have been given, if you look carefully you will see that there are really only two shapes.

The Arabic alphabet is given below in its traditional order. Letters which do not join to the following one are marked with an asterisk.

Final is to be interpreted as final after a joining letter. If the preceding letter is a non-joiner, the separate form will be used. If

you look closely, you can see that final and separate letters are usually elongated in form, or have a 'flourish' after them.

Also, in most cases, the initial form of the letter can be regarded as the basic or nucleus form. For example, if you look at **baa'** (the second letter in the following list), you will see that its basic (initial) form is a small left-facing hook with a single dot below it. The medial form is more or less the same, with a ligature coming in from the right (remember you are writing from right to left). The final form is the same as the medial, with a little flourish or elongation to the left (i.e. at the end of the word), and the separate form is the same as the initial, but again with the flourish to the left. Study the letters bearing these features in mind, as many of them follow the same principle. The ' denotes a 'glottal stop' sound which is explained in the **pronunciation and transliteration** section. Fuller descriptions and other hints on deciphering will be given in the units.

Name	Initial	Medial	Final	Separate	Pronunciation
alif*	ا	ل	ل	ا	see below
baa'	ب	ب	ب	ب	b
taa'	ت	ت	ت	ت	t
thaa'	ث	ث	ث	ث	th
jiim	ج	ج	ج	ج	j
Haa'	ح	ح	ح	ح	H
khaa'	خ	خ	خ	خ	kh
daal*	د	د	د	د	d
dhaal*	ذ	ذ	ذ	ذ	dh
raa'*	ر	ر	ر	ر	r

zaay*	ز	ز	ز	ز	z
siin	س	س	س	س	s
shiin	ش	ش	ش	ش	sh
Saad	ص	ص	ص	ص	S
Daad ¹	ض	ض	ض	ض	D
Taa'	ط	ط	ط	ط	T
DHaa'	ظ	ظ	ظ	ظ	DH
:ain	ع	ع	ع	ع	:
ghain	غ	غ	غ	غ	gh
faa'	ف	ف	ف	ف	f
qaaf ²	ق	ق	ق	ق	g
kaaf	ك	ك	ك	ك	k
laam	ل	ل	ل	ل	l
miim	م	م	م	م	m
nuun	ن	ن	ن	ن	n
haa'	ه	ه	ه	ه	h
waaw	و	و	و	و	w
yaa'	ي	ي	ي	ي	y

¹Daad:— This letter in Gulf Arabic is pronounced in exactly the same way as DHaa'.

²qaaf — This is normally pronounced like an English hard g (as in *gold*) in the Gulf.

(See the section on transliteration.)

In addition to the above, there is one combination consonant laam-alif. This must be used when this series of letters occurs, and it is a non-joiner:

Name	Initial	Medial	Final	Separate
laam-alif	لا	لا	لا	لا

There is a letter which the Arabs call taa' marbuuTah and which is referred to in this book as the 'hidden t'. This is the Arabic feminine ending which only occurs at the end of words, so therefore it has only two forms: final (after joiners) and separate (after non-joiners). It is always preceded by a short 'a' vowel:

Final	Separate
ة	ة

If you look carefully at this letter, you will see that it looks like a haa' with the two dots above of the taa' added, and this is exactly what it is. It is normally rendered in speech as a very weak h, but in certain combinations of words it is pronounced as t. It has therefore been transcribed as h and t accordingly.

There is one final item called the hamza. This is not regarded by the Arabs as a letter of the alphabet, but as the supplementary sign. Its official pronunciation is a glottal stop (as in cockney *bottle*) and it has been transliterated by means of an apostrophe ('). It is frequently omitted in speech, but it is common in written Arabic, where it occurs either on its own, or written over an alif, waaw or yaa'. (In the last case, the two dots under the yaa' are omitted.) It can also occur written below an alif, but this is less common. The actual hamza never joins to anything, but its 'supporting' letters take the form required by their position in the word:

Initial	Medial	Final	Separate
independent	- in all cases.		
on alif	أ	آ	إ
under alif	does not occur		ء
on waaw	و	آ	ؤ
on yaa'	ي	آ	ئ

Note that, at the beginning of a word, ' is always written above or below alif.

Vowels

As already mentioned, in Arabic writing the short vowels are not usually marked except in children's school text books, the Holy Koran and ancient classical poetry.

The long vowels are expressed by the three letters alif, waaw and yaa'. Alif almost always expresses the vowel *aa*, but waaw and yaa' can also be consonantal *w* and *y* (as in English *wish* and *yes*).

However, waaw and yaa' can also express the (only) two Arabic diphthongs, usually pronounced *oo* (with waaw) and *ai* (with yaa'). The official pronunciation of these diphthongs is *ow* as in *down* and *ay* as in *aye* respectively, but these are heard in informal speech only in a few words.

All this is not as difficult as it sounds, as the real key to Arabic words is the long vowels. It will not usually cause serious misunderstanding if you pronounce a word with *a*, *u* or *i* (short vowels), but it is important to get the long vowels right.

One further note: the letter yaa' often occurs at the end of words. It is usually pronounced *-i*, or *-ii*, but sometimes also *-a*. In the former case, it is usually written with two dots under it (ئ) and in the latter without them (ى), but this rule is not, unfortunately, always adhered to.

General

Since this book is intended to teach you to recognise the Arabic script, rather than to learn to write it, the above remarks should be sufficient for the purpose. As already mentioned, further information and tips will be given in the units.

Finally, it is better to think of the Arabic script as basically handwriting (since it is always cursive, no matter how produced: by hand, on a typewriter or computer). For this reason – and by dint of what the Arabs regard as the artistic nature of the script, calligraphy being a highly developed art in the Arab world – you are likely to see more variations of the form of the letters than you would in English.

The most important of these is that, very frequently, two dots above or below a letter are frequently combined into one dash, and three dots (which only occur above) into an inverted *v* like the French circumflex $\hat{}$. Here is an example showing taa' and thaa':

ت ث

There are many other variations, but the most important is the writing of سى شى siin and shiin as simply long lines, ironing out their *spikes*, and often with a small hook below at the beginning. Arabic writing is fun. Look at it as an art form!

Credits

Front cover: © Westend61 GmbH / Alamy

Back cover and pack: © Jakub Semeniuk/iStockphoto.com,
© Royalty-Free/Corbis, © agencyby/iStockphoto.com, © Andy
Cook/iStockphoto.com, © Christopher Ewing/iStockphoto.com,
© zebicho – Fotolia.com, © Geoffrey Holman/iStockphoto.com,
© Photodisc/Getty Images, © James C. Pruitt/iStockphoto.com,
© Mohamed Saber – Fotolia.com

Pack: © Stockbyte/Getty Images

1

السلام عليكم

as-saláamu :alái-kum

Hello!

In this unit you will learn how to

- Say hello and goodbye
- Greet someone
- Give your name and ask for someone else's
- Say where you are from and ask someone where they are from

New words and phrases

↪ CD 1, TR 2

Listen to the recording.

Hiwaar 1 (Dialogue 1) حوار ١

↪ CD 1, TR 2, 0:57

Jim and Eleanor McDonald have arrived at the home of their friend Khaled in Muscat. Jim goes in to greet Khaled.

Jim	as-saláamu :alái-kum
Khaled	wa :alái-kum as-saláam
Jim	kaif Háal-ak?
Khaled	al-Hámdu li-l-láah bi-kháir, wa inta kaif Háal-ak?
Jim	bi-kháir, al-Hámdu li-l-láah, aish akhbáar-ak?
Khaled	al-Hámdu li-l-láah

Eleanor comes into the room.

Eleanor	as-saláamu :alái-kum
Khaled	wa :alái-kum as-saláam
Eleanor	kaif Háal-ak?
Khaled	al-Hámdu li-l-láah, wa ínti kaif Háal-ich?
Eleanor	al-Hámdu li-l-láah

as-saláamu :alái-kum	Hello (lit. the peace [be] upon you)
wa	and
:alái-kum as-saláam	Hello (reply to above)
kaif	how
Háal-ak/Háal-ich	your condition (to a man/woman)
al-Hámdu li-l-láah	praise (be) to God
bi-kháir	well
ínta/ínti	you (man/woman)
aish	what (is)
akhbáar-ak/akhbáar-ich	your news (to a man/woman)

mulaaHaDHáat (Notes) ملاحظات

1 as-saláamu :alái-kum

This set religious greeting is always addressed by the incomer to a group, and it and its reply always take the same form regardless of whom they are addressed to. The same expression can also be used for goodbye when taking one's leave. The as- at the beginning

is a variant of al- (*the*). This is explained in the Arabic script section at the end of this unit.

2 kaif Háal-ak/Háal-ich

No verb *to be* is necessary, so *How your condition* means *How (is) your condition*, i.e. 'How are you?' Similarly *aish akhbáar-ak/akhbáar-ich* means *What (is) your news?*

3 Addressing people

In Arabic you must distinguish between a man and a woman and more than one person when addressing people. The first part of the above dialogue is between two men, so you say -ak meaning *your* (to a man) in Háal-ak and akhbáar-ak.

When you are speaking to a woman, you must say *kaif Háal-ich* and *aish akhbáar-ich*.

Insight

This is the most common pronunciation in the Gulf, but you may also hear -ish or even -ik. It makes no difference whether you yourself are male or female, only who you are speaking to.

To speak to more than one person, called the plural form, say *kaif Háal-kum* and *aish akhbáar-kum* (see 1 above).

4 al-Hámdu li-l-láah (thanks be to God)

li-l-láah is a contraction of li- + Al-láah meaning *to God*. It is Arab etiquette to reply to any enquiry about your health with this phrase even if you have just broken both of your legs.

5 bi-kháir

This means literally *in well-being*, i.e. good health.

Hiwaar 2 (Dialogue 2) حوار ٢

CD 1, TR 2, 1:4

Khaled's brother Muhammad comes into the room and shakes hands with everyone.

Muhammad	SabáaH al-kháir
Khaled	SabáaH an-núur
Muhammad	áhlan wa sáhlan
Khaled	áhlan bii-k
Muhammad	kaif Háal-kum
Khaled & Jim	al-Hámdu li-l-láah
Muhammad	(on leaving the room) má:a s-saláamah
Khaled	fii amáan Al-láah

QUICK VOCAB

SabáaH	morning
SabáaH al-kháir	good morning
SabáaH an-núur	reply to above
áhlan wa sáhlan	welcome, hello
áhlan bii-k/bii-ch	reply to above (to a man/woman)
má:a s-saláamah	goodbye
fii amáan Al-láah:	reply to above (to a man or woman)

mulaaHaDHáat (Notes) ملاحظات

- SabáaH al-kháir
This literally means *morning* (of the) *well-being*. (See note 5 above.)
As *masáa'* means *afternoon, evening*, to say *good evening* you use *masáa' al-kháir*, and the reply is *masáa' an-núur*.
- áhlan wa sáhlan is an age-old set phrase.
It can be translated in many ways into English (*welcome, hello, etc.*)

- bii-k is a shortened form of *bi-ak*, literally *with/to you*.
Say *bii-k* to a man, and *bii-ch* to a woman. The plural form, for both men and women is *bii-kum*.
- má:a s-saláamah and its reply *fii amáan Al-láah*.
These remain the same whoever is addressed, man, woman or more than one person.

Hiwaar 3 (Dialogue 3) حوار ٣

CD 1, TR 2, 3:29

At a cultural evening at the university in Al Ain, Jack meets some of the students. First he meets Muhammad.

Jack	as-saláamu :alái-kum
Muhammad	wa :alái-kum as-saláam
Jack	aish ism-ak?
Muhammad	ísm-i muHámmad. wa ínta?
Jack	ána ism-i jaak
Muhammad	ínta min wain?
Jack	ána min ingiltérra. wa ínta?
Muhammad	ána min dubáy
Jack	áhlan wa sáhlan
Muhammad	áhlan bii-k

Then he meets Faridah with some of her friends.

Jack	masáa' al-kháir
Faridah	masáa' an-núur
Jack	aish ism-ich?
Faridah	ísm-i fariídah. wa ínta?
Jack	ána ism-i jaak. ínti min wain?
Faridah	ána min ábu DHábi. ínta min amríka?
Jack	laa. ána min ingiltérra
Faridah	áhlan wa sáhlan
Jack	áhlan bii-ch

- (a) Where is Muhammad from?
 (b) Where is Faridah from?
 (c) Where does Faridah think Jack is from?

ism (or is(i)m)	name
ísm-ak/-ich	your name (man/woman)
ísm-i	my name
min	from
wain	where
ínta/ínti	you (man/woman)
ána	I
ána min ...	I (am) from ...
ingiltérra	England
dubáy	Dubai
ábu DHábi	Abu Dhabi
amríika	America
laa	no

mulaaHaDHáat (Notes) ملاحظات

- 1 jaak is of course the English name Jack, muHámmad is the common Arab name. In English it is spelled many different ways (*Mohamed, Mohammad, etc.*), the transliteration reflects how it should be pronounced in Arabic. ingiltérra is *England* (from the French *angleterre*).

Insight

Most names of Western Countries in Arabic are similar to the originals. The names of the Arab countries given here are in their familiar forms, stripped of 'Kingdom of ...', 'State of ...' and so on which feature in some of their official titles.

- 2 ism/is(i)m name.

The first form is the 'correct' one, but most Gulf dialects have an aversion to certain combinations of two consonants at the end of a word, and tend to add a 'helping' vowel to ease pronunciation.

These vowels have generally been inserted in this book (in brackets) to aid your listening comprehension, or when they are optional. When something is added to the word, they are generally left out:

ísm-ak	your name (to a male)
ísm-ich	your name (to a female)

3 The Gulf States

Here is a list of the rest of the Gulf states and the names of some other places. Notice the al- (*the*) in front of some of them.

lándan	London
iskutlánda	Scotland
ustráalya	Australia
al-baHráin	Bahrain
al-imaaráat	The Emirates
al-kuwáit	Kuwait
al-yáman	Yemen
ar-riyáaDH	Riyadh
as-sa:udíyyah	Saudi Arabia
ash-sháarjah	Sharjah
gáTar	Qatar
:umáan	Oman

Hiwaar 4 (Dialogue 4) حوار ٤

CD 1, TR 2, 4:58

Jack joins another group of students with his American colleague, Ken.

Jack	as-saláamu :alái-kum
Yasin	wa :alái-kum as-saláam. tá:raf :árabi?
Jack	ná:am, á:raf :árabi. íntu min wain?
Yasin	niHna min al-baHráin. íntu min amríika?
Jack (introducing Ken)	laa, ána min ingiltérra. húwwa min amríika
Yasin	áhlan wa sáhlan
Ken	áhlan bii-k

tá:raf/ta:rafiin	<i>you know</i> (to a man/woman)
:árabí	<i>Arabic</i> (language)
á:raf	<i>I know</i>
ná:am	<i>yes</i>
intu	<i>you</i> (plural, both masc. and fem.)
níHna	<i>we</i>
húwwa	<i>he</i>

- (a) What is the first question Yasin asks Jack?
 (b) Where are Yasin and his friends from?
 (c) Where does he think Jack and Ken are from?

mulaaHaDHáat (Notes) ملاحظات

- 1 Your first Arabic verb (or 'doing word'), tá:raf (*you know*) and á:raf (*I know*). The forms differ according to who is doing the action. To address a woman, use the form ta:rafiin. Notice that with Arabic verbs you do not have to use a pronoun, i.e. words for *I, you* etc.

Insight

In some dialects the final -n of the feminine form is omitted: ta:râfií.

- 2 tá:raf :árabí? *do you know Arabic?*
 When you ask someone a question like this in Arabic, you simply use the normal verb *you know . . . ?* without the '*do you . . .*'. The question is marked by a raising of the pitch of the voice at the end of the sentence.

ta:biiráat háammah (Key phrases) تعبيرات هامة

CD 1, TR 2, 6:08

How to say *hello*

as-saláamu :aláikum
 :alái-kum as-saláam

hello

hello (in reply)

How to say *goodbye*

má:a s-saláamah *goodbye*
 fii amáan Al-Iáah *reply to above*

How to greet someone

SabáaH al-kháir *good morning*
 SabáaH an-núur *good morning* (in reply)
 masáa' al-kháir *good afternoon, evening*
 masáa' an-núur *good afternoon, evening* (in reply)
 áhlan wa sáhlan *welcome, hello*
 áhlan bii-k/bii-ch *reply to above* (man/woman)

How to say your name and ask someone else's

aish ísm-ak/ísm-ich? *What is your name?* (man/woman)
 ána ísmi jaak smart *My name is Jack Smart.*

How to ask where someone is from, and say where you are from

inta/inti min wain? *Where are you from?*
 (man/woman)
 húwwa min wain? *Where is he from?*
 híyya min gáTar *She is from Qatar.*
 ána min amríika *I am from America.*
 níHna min ingiltérra *We are from England.*

núqaT naHwíyyah (Grammar points) نقط نحوية

1 is/are

There is no word for *is/are* in Arabic:

ísm-i muHámmid *My name is Mohammed.*
 inta min amríika? *Are you from America?*

2 Sabáah al-kháir

Certain short words in Arabic are regarded as part of the word which follows them. As this often affects pronunciation, this book uses hyphens to mark it. The commonest example is *al-* (*the*) and its variants, but you also have *bi-* (*in*) as in *bi-khair* and *li-* (*to*) as in *al-Hamdu li-l-laah*, (lit. *the praise to God*).

3 Gender

Gender refers to whether a word is regarded as masculine (male) or feminine (female). In Arabic, words for human beings are obviously masculine for men and feminine for women. However, as in French, there is no neuter gender, and the things we refer to in English as *it* are either *he* or *she* in Arabic.

You must always be conscious of gender in Arabic as it affects other words such as pronouns (see below). Fortunately, the vast majority of feminine words in Arabic are marked by the ending *-ah*.

4 Pronouns

A pronoun is a kind of shorthand word which refers to a person or a thing, such as *he, him, his, it, me, my*.

ken min amríika	Ken is from America.
húwwa min amríika	He is from America.
al-bait kabíir	The house is big. (<i>house</i> is masculine)
húwwa kabíir	It (<i>he</i>) is big.
as-sayyáarah gháalyah	The car is expensive. (<i>car</i> is feminine)
híyya gháalyah	It (<i>she</i>) is expensive.

The Arabic pronouns

Singular		Plural	
ána	I	níHna	we
ínta	you (to a man)	íntu	you (both genders)

ínti	you (to a woman)	húmna	they (both genders)
húwwa	he (it)		
híyya	she (it)		

5 Possessives

Possessing or owning something, or something belonging, pertaining, or applying to you is expressed in Arabic by a series of endings, or suffixes. These will be dealt with in a later unit, but note for the moment those used in the dialogues in this unit:

ísm-i	my name
Háal-ak	your condition (to a man)
akhbáar-ak	your news (to a man)
Háal-ich	your condition (to a woman)
akhbáar-ich	your news (woman)

tamriináat (Exercises) تمرينات

- Read each dialogue several times, listening to the recording if you have it, until you can remember both sides without looking.
- Complete the sentences below using the words listed on the right. Use each word once only.

(a) as-saláamu _____	ísm-i
(b) _____ li-l-láah bi-kháir	sáhlán
(c) _____ akhbáar-ak	masáa
(d) _____ sáarah	Háal-ak
(e) _____ al-kháir	aish
(f) kaif _____	:alái-kum
(g) áhlan wa _____	mím
(h) ána _____ amríika	al-Hámdu
- Eleanor goes to greet Samirah, Khaled's wife. Complete the dialogue below, using Dialogue 1 to help you. Check your answers with the key at the back of the book.

Eleanor	_____
Samirah	Wa :alái-kum as-saláam
Eleanor	_____?
Samirah	al-Hámdu li-l-láah bi-kháir, wa inti kaif Haal-ich?
Eleanor	_____?
Samirah	al-Hámdu li-l-láah

4 Now complete the dialogue below where Eleanor greets and then takes her leave of Khaled's two sisters. Notice that it is later in the day. This time her side of the conversation is done for you. Use Dialogue 2 as an example.

Eleanor	masáa' al-kháir
Maryam	_____
Eleanor	áhlán wa sáhlán
Maryam	_____
Eleanor	kaif Háal-kum
Maryam & Aishah	_____
Eleanor	(leaving the room) má:a s-saláamah
Maryam & Aishah	_____

5 Make up brief dialogues for the groups of people below, the person on the left speaking first. Remember the time of day and the number and gender of people being addressed. Suggested dialogues are given in the Key to the exercises at the back of the book.



6 Imagine you are talking to Nasir, and complete your side of the conversation.

Nasir	as-saláamu :alái-kum
inta	(say hello)
Nasir	aish ísm-ak?
inta	(say your name, and ask his)
Nasir	ana ísm-i-náaSir. inta min wain?
inta	(say where you are from, and ask where he is from)
Nasir	ána min :umáan
inta	(reply appropriately)
Nasir	áhlán bii-k

- 7 How would you translate the following sentences in Arabic?
- (to two men) Are you from Saudi Arabia?
 - We are from Sharjah.
 - Are they from London?
 - No, he is from England. She is from Kuwait.
 - (to a woman) Are you from the Emirates?
 - Yes, I am from Abu Dhabi.

4 CD 1, TR 2, 5:31

8 Here is an interview with a woman student. If you have the recording, listen to it several times until you feel that you understand what is being said, or read the transcript at the end of the book. Then listen again and answer the questions below. First look at these new words:

t:tkállam / titkallamiin ... ?	Do you speak (man/woman) ... ?
inglíizi	English
atkállam inglíizi	I speak English

- What is the first question the student is asked?
- Where does the interviewer guess she is from?
- What country is she from?
- What phrase is used to ask: *What is your name?*
- What phrase is used to ask: *Where are you from?*
- What is the last question which Jack asks?

al-khaTT al-:árabí (Arabic script) الخط العربي

al- the

Look at the dialogues in this unit, and you will notice that al- occurs frequently at the beginning of words. This is the Arabic word for *the*, which is always written the same, although it varies sometimes in pronunciation (see below). It is always attached to the following word and is written with two letters, alif ا and laam ل. For obvious reasons it is a very common word in the language and a good one to start off with. It is easy to recognize as it always comes at the beginning of a word: الـ

There is a special combination laam-alif, which is conventionally written لا. When preceded by the initial alif of the al- it looks like this: لا. This combination is found in one place name on the map on page 34:

الإمارات al-imaaraat *The (United Arab) Emirates*

You will find the other forms (middle, final etc.) of these letters in the alphabet table at the beginning of the book. Note that *alif*, like another few letters, does not, by convention, join to the letter following it.

Pronunciation of al- the

Although it never changes in writing, al- has one peculiarity. If the word it is joined to begins with one of the following letters:

t, th, d, dh, r, z, s, sh, S, D, T, DH, l, n

the 'l' of al- is dropped in speech, and the first letter of the word *clearly* doubled. This is reflected in the transcription system used in this book, e.g. al-kuwaít, but ar-riyáaDH and ash-sháarjah. This is an important convention of pronunciation and you must pronounce the double versions of the letters listed above clearly.

Insight

If it helps, to begin with, leave a slight pause between them. It is much better to say as- . . . saláamu :alai-kum than a-salaamu :alai-kum (or, for that matter, al-salaam :alai-kum or salaam :alai-kum, the last very often heard from Europeans).

This photograph illustrates the unsystematic transliteration of Arabic found on public signs. Whatever you encounter, the official correct pronunciation is as-suuq (heard in some parts of Oman and Iraq), but elsewhere in the Gulf you usually hear as-suug.



Insight

An easy way to remember which letters this phenomenon occurs with is to pronounce them all from the above list and think what your tongue is doing as you say them. You will find that its tip always comes into contact with somewhere in the region bounded by the space between the top and bottom teeth (e.g. th, dh) and the inside front upper gum (t, d). Only sh is a slight exception, but none of the other letters get anywhere near this point of articulation (b, f, k etc.).



الكويت Kuwait
السعودية Saudi Arabia
أبو ظبي Abu Dhabi

قطر Qatar
الإمارات the (United Arab Emirates)
العراق Iraq

دبي Dubai
الشارقة Sharjah
البحرين Bahrain

عمان (Sultanate of) Oman
اليمن Yemen
الخليج العربي The Arabian Gulf

Insight

Note the spelling of Sharjah. This reflects the local pronunciation of g/q, mentioned in the Pronunciation Guide.

Practice

As in English (e.g. Belgium, but *the* Netherlands) some countries in Arabic have al- before them, though this *the* is not usually preserved in the English versions of their names. Look at the map and make a list of those which do; practise saying the names as you go.

Now look through the unit again and look for all the Arabic words which have al- or its altered forms before them. e.g. al-Haal, as-saláam(u).

Test yourself

This test covers the main vocabulary, phrases and language points given in Unit 1. If you are not sure about your answers, go back to the dialogues and exercises for some revision, before going on to Unit 2. For the answers, see the Key to the exercises.

Match the words or sentences appropriately:

- | | |
|------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 1 as-saláamu :alái-kum | (a) ána min amríika |
| 2 kaif Háal-ak? | (b) fii amáan Al-láah |
| 3 SabáaH al-kháir | (c) ísm-i faríidah |
| 4 aish ísm-ak? | (d) laa |
| 5 ínta min wain? | (e) húwwa min dubáy |
| 6 tá:raf :árabi? | (f) wa :alái-kum as-saláam |
| 7 aish ísm-ich? | (g) ná:am, á:raf :árabi |
| 8 Sáalim min wain? | (h) al-Hámdu li-l-láah bi-kháir |
| 9 titkállam inglúizi? | (i) SabáaH an-núur |
| 10 má:a s-saláamah | (j) ísm-i muHámmad |

2

أين . . . ؟

wain . . . ?

Where is . . . ?

(Note: the written form of this word differs slightly from the spoken.)

In this unit you will learn how to

- Ask for places in a town
- Ask where places are
- Ask for and give directions

New words and phrases

CD 1, TR 3

Listen to the recording.

Hiwaar 1 (Dialogue 1) حوار ١

CD 1, TR 3, 0:53

Bill Stewart has arrived on business in Dubai and he asks the taxi-driver to take him to his hotel.

Bill	SabáaH al-kháir
sawwáag at-táksi	SabáaH an-núur
Bill	fúndug ash-sháiraTun min fáDHI-ak
sawwáag at-táksi	zain, in shaa' Al-láah
Bill	al-fúndug ba:iid :an al-maTáar?
sawwáag at-táksi	laa, húwwa gariib. :áshar dagáayig bass, muu ákthar
Bill	shúkran
sawwáag at-táksi	:áfwan

sawwáag	driver
sawwáag at-táksi	taxi driver
fúndug	hotel
fúndug ash-sháiraTun	the Sheraton Hotel
min fáDHI-ak	please
zain	OK, good
in shaa' Al-láah	if God wills
ba:iid :an	far from
maTáar	airport
gariib min	near to (lit. near from)
:áshar	ten
dagáayig	minutes
bass	that's all, enough; only just
muu ákthar	not more
shúkran	thanks, thank you
:áfwan	you're welcome, don't mention it

- (a) Is this hotel far from the airport?
- (b) How long will it take to get there?

mulaaHaDHáat (Notes) ملاحظات

1 sawwáag at-táksi
The word *taxi* has the *the* prefix, so literally it means *driver (of) the-taxi*. *fúndug ash-sháiraTun*. The English name here has been

Arabized and given the *the* prefix, so literally it says *hotel (of) the-Sheraton*.

- 2 al-fúndug ba:iid :an al-maTáar.
Just a reminder that there is no word in Arabic for *is* or *are* in such sentences.

ma:luumáat thaqaafiyah (Cultural tips) معلومات ثقافية

in shaa' Al-láah This phrase is usually the first Arabic that Europeans pick up. Contrary to popular belief, it does not indicate an element of vague hope or possibility, but has (by the devout Muslim) to be prefixed to any reference to an action which has not yet taken place.

:áfwan In Arabic, as in most languages, one is expected to say something in reply to *thank you*. In the Gulf it can also be used for *excuse me* when asking someone politely to move out of the way.

Hiwaar 2 (dialogue 2) حوار ٢

CD 1, TR 3, 1:45

Bill needs to find a bank. He asks Mahmoud, the receptionist in the hotel.

Bill	SabáaH al-kháir
Mahmoud	SabáaH an-núur. Kaif Háal-ak?
Bill	bi-kháir, al-Hámdu li-lláah. wa إنتا?
Mahmoud	al-Hámdu li-lláah
Bill	law samáHt, fiih bank garilb min hína?
Mahmoud	áywa fiih, al-bank al-wáTani. tá:raf sháari: ráashid?
Bill	laa; maa á:raf

Mahmoud	zain. min al-báab wa liif yisáar, ba:dáin ruuH siidah wa khudh áwwal sháari: :ála l-yamiin. al-bank :ála l-yisáar
Bill	shúkran jaziilan
Mahmoud	:áfwan

law samáHt	if you please
fiih	there is / is there?
bank	bank
hina	here
áywa	yes
wáTani	national
sháari:	street
sháari: ráashid	Rashid Street
maa á:raf	I don't know
íTla:	go out!
baab	door
liif	turn!
yisáar	left
ba:dáin	then, after, afterwards, after that
ruuH	go!
siidah	straight on, straight ahead
khudh	take!
áwwal	(the) first
:ála	on (sometimes shortened to :a before the definite article)
yamiin	right (direction)
:ála l-yamiin	on the right
:ála l-yisáar	on the left
jaziilan	copious, very much

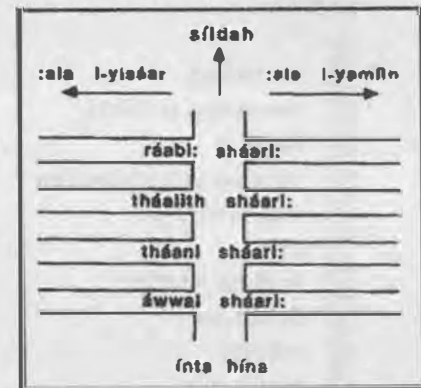
- (a) What does Bill ask about a bank?
 (b) Which way should he turn on leaving the hotel?
 (c) Which street should he turn into?

mulaaHaDHáat (Notes) ملاحظات

1 fiih bank . . . is there a bank . . .
 There is no word for *a, an* (called the indefinite article) in Arabic.

2 áywa
 This is the most usual form of the word for *yes*. However, you have already encountered *ná:am* which is slightly more formal.

3 áwwal sháari: :ála l-yamiin
 To help you find your way, here is a simple diagram:



4 shukran jaziilan
 The word *jaziilan* (*copious, abundant*) is rarely used in colloquial Arabic except with *shúkran* (*thanks*).

Hiwaar 3 (Dialogue 3) حوار ٣

CD 1, TR 3, 2:46

Bill takes a walk along the creek and asks a man the way.

Bill	law samáHt, as-súug min wain?
rajjál	min hináak. :a l-yisáar
Bill	wa l-mátHaf min wain?
rajjál	al-mátHaf fii dubáy muu hina. hina dáirah. ruuH siidah, liif yamiin, wa l-mátHaf ba:d al-jisir
Bill	shúkran
rajjál	:áfwan

rajjáal	<i>man</i>
suug	<i>market</i>
hináak	<i>there</i>
min hináak	<i>over there, that way</i>
mátHaf	<i>museum</i>
muu	<i>not</i>
hina or hini	<i>here</i>
fii	<i>in</i>
dubáy	<i>Dubai (the old town)</i>
dáirah	<i>Deira (the commercial quarter of Dubai)</i>
ba:(a)d	<i>after (past)</i>
jís(i)r	<i>bridge</i>

- (a) ● On which side is the market?
 (b) What is the second place Bill asks about?
 (c) Where is the museum?

mulaaHaDHáat (Notes) ملاحظات

min wain, min hinaak

It is better, though not essential, to put *min* before *where, here* and *there* when asking or giving directions. It implies *which way... that way...* It is, however, quite acceptable to say *wain as-stuug?* (*where is the market?*)

Insight

:a l-yisáar

'Elision' means missing out or gliding over a vowel or letter, and it occurs a lot in Arabic, especially with (a)l- (*the*). Here :ála + al- has been reduced to :a l-. This is not a rule, but it is better to get used to hearing it.

wa l-mátHaf

This time the *wa* has elided with the *al-*. Sometimes *wa* sounds like a short English 'oo', usually when it comes before a consonant. In such cases it has been written *w*:

hína dáirah w hináak dubáy *Here is Deira and there is Dubai.*

Hiwaar 4 (Dialogue 4) حوار ٤

CD 1, TR 3, 3:32

Bill has hired a car and wants to get out of town to do some sightseeing. He stops to ask the way at a small shop.

Bill	<i>masáa' al-kháir</i>
SáaHib ad-dukkáan	<i>masáa' an-núur</i>
Bill	<i>háadha Tariig raas al-kháimah?</i>
SáaHib ad-dukkáan	<i>ná:am. ruuH siida min hína, fáwwit al-mustáshfa, w ba:dáin liff yamiin :ind ad-duwwáar ath-tháani - laa, ad-duwwáar ath-tháalith, gábil al mádrasah. ba:dáin liff yísáar, w ba:dáin ruuH siidah</i>
Bill	<i>híyya ba:iidah :an dubáy?</i>
SáaHib ad-dukkáan	<i>wa-l-láahi . . . tis:iin kiilo min hína tagriiban</i>
Bill	<i>n-záin. shúkran jazílan. as-saláamu :alái-kum</i>
SáaHib ad-dukkáan	<i>má:a s-saláama</i>

SáaHib dukkáan	<i>master, owner (small) shop</i>
SáaHib ad-dukkáan	<i>shopkeeper</i>
háadha	<i>this</i>
Tariig	<i>way, road</i>
raas al-kháimah	<i>Ras al-Khaimah</i>
fáwwit	<i>pass, go past!</i>
mustáshfa	<i>hospital</i>
:ind	<i>at, with</i>
duwwáar	<i>roundabout</i>
tháani	<i>second</i>
tháalith	<i>third</i>
gáb(i)l	<i>before</i>
mádrasah	<i>school</i>
híyya	<i>she, it</i>
wa-l-láahi	<i>by God</i>
tis:iin	<i>ninety</i>

**kíilo, kiilomít(i)r
tagriiban**

*kilometre(s) (same for singular and plural)
approximately*

- (a) What time of day is it?
 (b) In which direction is Bill told to go first?
 (c) At which roundabout did the shopkeeper say Bill should turn right?

mulaaHaDHáat (Notes) ملاحظات

1 tis:íin kíilo

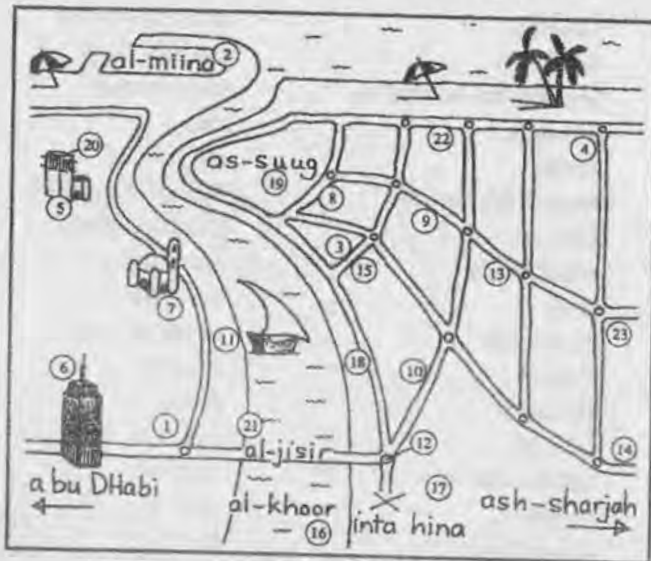
The (borrowed) word *kíilo(mít(i)r)* is often shortened to *kíilo* as here. The fact that it then coincides with *kiilo* (*ghráam*), the measure of weight, doesn't seem to worry anybody.

2 n-záin

The word *zain* means *good, OK, fine*. It is common to prefix an *n-* to it when it stands on its own. The meaning is unchanged.

3 Map of Dubai

Look at the map and identify the following places:



- | | |
|--|---|
| 1 máktab al-bariid (<i>post office</i>) | 13 aS-Saydalíyyah (<i>chemist</i>) |
| 2 al-miina (<i>the port, harbour</i>) | 14 ash-shiishah (<i>petrol station</i>) |
| 3 al-bank (<i>bank</i>) | 15 at-tilifóon (<i>telephone</i>) |
| 4 al-bustáan (<i>garden, park</i>) | 16 al-khoor (<i>creek</i>) |
| 5 al-HiSn (<i>fort</i>) | 17 al-maTáar (<i>airport</i>) |
| 6 al-Jáami:ah (<i>university</i>) | 18 al-fúndug (<i>hotel</i>) |
| 7 al-jáami: (<i>mosque</i>) | 19 as-suug (<i>market, souk</i>) |
| 8 maHáTTat al-baaS (<i>bus station</i>) | 20 al-mátHaf (<i>museum</i>) |
| 9 márkaz ash-shúrTah (<i>police station</i>) | 21 al-jísir (<i>bridge</i>) |
| 10 al-márkaz at-tijáari (<i>shopping centre</i>) | 22 al-mustáshfa (<i>hospital</i>) |
| 11 al-máT:am (<i>restaurant</i>) | 23 al-mádrasah (<i>school</i>) |
| 12 as-sáa:ah (<i>clock (tower), watch</i>) | 24 x ínta hína (<i>you are here</i>) |

The word *jáami:* (*mosque*) refers to a large central mosque, used for the Friday prayers. A small mosque, such as can be seen at almost every corner, is called a *másjid*.

ma:luumáat thaqaafíyyah (Cultural tips) معلومات ثقافية

Most of the cities of the Gulf were laid out during the 70s and 80s, mainly as a result of the rocketing price of oil, and apart from the oldest parts or what remains of them, you find they are very spread out, because space is generally not at a premium.

The exceptions are where cities have grown up around natural features like the creeks of Dubai and Sharjah, and where the mountains around the Capital Area in Oman, for example, have forced development within a comparatively limited space.

A grid pattern of streets is usually linked by a number of roundabouts, which have such decorative features as fountains, clocks or even giant coffee-pots, and impressive flowerbeds and carefully tended lawns. The roundabouts themselves have become landmarks.

ta:biiráat háammah (Key phrases) تعبيرات هامة

CD 1, TR 3, 4:21

How to ask where a place is

fúndug ash-sháiraTun law samáHt	<i>The Sheraton Hotel, please</i>
fiih bank garíib min hína?	<i>Is there a bank near here?</i>
law samáHt, as-súug min wain?	<i>Excuse me, where is the market?</i>
háadha Tariig raas al-kháimah min fáDHI-ak?	<i>Is this the way to Ras al-Khaimah, please?</i>
al-fúndug ba:iid :an/garíib min hína?	<i>Is the hotel far from/near (to) here?</i>

How to tell someone where a place is

ruuH síidah	<i>go straight ahead</i>
liff yisáar/yamiin	<i>turn left/right</i>
khudh áwwal/tháani/tháalith sháari: ála l-yisáar/l-yamiin	<i>take the first/second/third street on the left/ on the right</i>
fáwwit al-mustáshfa	<i>go past the hospital</i>
al-mátHaf :ála l-yisáar/l-yamiin /síidah	<i>The museum is on the left/ right/ straight ahead</i>
húwwa garíib min/ba:iid :an hína	<i>It (the hotel) is near to/far from here</i>
húwwa :áshar dagáayig min hína	<i>It is ten minutes from here</i>
híyya garíibah min dubáy	<i>It (Sharjah) is near to Dubai</i>
fiih bank min hináak	<i>There is a bank over there, that way</i>
gábil al-mádrasa	<i>before the school</i>
ba:d al-mustáshfa	<i>after (past) the hospital</i>
:ind al-miina	<i>at the harbour</i>

núqaT naHwiyyah (Grammar points) نقط نحوية

1 How to say please

The most common way is to use the phrase *min fáDHI-ak* which means something like 'by your favour'. Like *kaif Háal-ak* (*How are you?*) in Unit 1, the ending must change according to whom you are directing the request to:

<i>min fáDHI-ak</i>	<i>to a man</i>
<i>min fáDHI-ich</i>	<i>to a woman</i>
<i>min fáDHI-kum</i>	<i>to more than one person</i>

law samáHt (*if you permit*) is slightly more formal or polite. The endings again change, this time according to a different pattern. You must say:

<i>law samáHt</i>	<i>to a man</i>
<i>law samáHti</i>	<i>to a woman</i>
<i>law samáHtu</i>	<i>to more than one person</i>

2 There is and there are

These are expressed in Arabic by the word *fiih*. The *h* is silent, but it is convenient to write the word this way to distinguish it from *fii* meaning *in*. Remember there is no word for *a, an*.

<i>fiih fúndug</i>	<i>There is a hotel</i>
<i>fiih fúndug fii dubáy</i>	<i>There is a hotel in Dubai</i>

To make a question, just raise your voice at the end of the sentence

<i>fiih fúndug?</i>	<i>Is there a hotel?</i>
---------------------	--------------------------

The negative (*there isn't/there is no . . . there aren't/there are no . . .*) is *maa fiih*:

<i>maa fiih bank</i>	<i>There isn't a bank, there is no bank</i>
----------------------	---

Insight

Mainly in Bahrain you will hear the Persian borrowing *hast* used instead of *fiih*. In Kuwait and Iraq they say *áku*.

3 Telling people to do something

These forms of the verb (technically known as imperatives) are frequently used in giving directions. Those encountered in this unit are:

íTla:	go out
ruuH	go
liff	turn
fáwwit	pass, go past
khudh	take

These also have to be altered according to the person spoken to, and they take the same endings as *samaHt* (see above), so you have to say *íTla:i*, *ruuHi*, *liffi*, *fáwwiti* and *khúdhí* to a woman, and *íTlá:u*, *ruuHu*, *liffu* etc. to more than one person.

4 Numbers – first, second, third etc.

These are known as ordinal numbers, because they tell us the order things come in, and they are obviously common in giving directions.

áwwal	first
tháani	second
tháalith	third
ráabi:	fourth
áakhir	last

Unlike normal adjectives (see Note 5) these can sometimes come before the noun they describe, especially when giving directions:

khudh áwwal sháari: :ála l-yamiin *Take the first street on the right*

There is no need here for a word for *the*.

5 Noun/adjective phrases

Nouns refer to people, things and ideas; adjectives describe nouns. The correct use of noun/adjective phrases is fundamental to speaking Arabic.

With the sole exception of the ordinal numbers in the previous section the rules are as follows:

- 1 The adjective comes after the noun: noun + adjective.
- 2 It agrees with the noun in gender (masculine/feminine):

masc. noun + masc. adjective
fem. noun + fem. adjective

Nearly all Arabic adjectives form the feminine by adding the suffix (ending) *-ah*.

- 3 The use or omission of *al-* (*the*) has a powerful effect on the meaning of such phrases.

The absence of *al-* in the following is, for emphasis, marked with a triangle Δ . There are three basic phrase types:

- (a) no *al-* on either word: Δ noun + Δ adjective

This produces an indefinite phrase:

maTáar kabíir	<i>a big airport (masc.)</i>
sayyáarah Saghíirah	<i>a small car (fem.)</i>

(Remember that Arabic does not have a word for *a* or *an*.)

- (b) *al-* on both words: *al-* noun + *al-* adjective

This produces a definite phrase:

al-maTáar al-kabíir	<i>the big airport</i>
as-sayyáarah aS-Saghíirah	<i>the small car</i>

(c) al- on the noun, but not the adjective: al- noun + Δ adjective

This produces a sentence which, in English, would have the verb *is* or *are*, which as you already know is not used in Arabic:

al-maTáar kabíir	<i>The airport is big.</i>
as-sayyáarah Saghíirah	<i>The car is small.</i>

These three phrase types are fundamental to Arabic. Learn the examples above by heart and, as you progress, constantly construct similar phrases and sentences with the new words you learn. Here are some examples from this unit:

Type 1:
 fih bank garíib min hína? *Is there a bank near here*
 (lit. a near bank)?

Type 2:
 al-bank al-wáTani *the National Bank*
 al-márkaz at-tij áari *the commercial centre*

Type 3:
 al-fúndug ba:íid :an *The hotel is far from the*
 al-maTáar *airport.*

In Type 3, a pronoun can substitute for the first noun, as in:

laa, húwwa garíib *No, it's near.*

If you find that you can't take all this in at once, leave it and come back to it.

6 How to say *this is, these are*

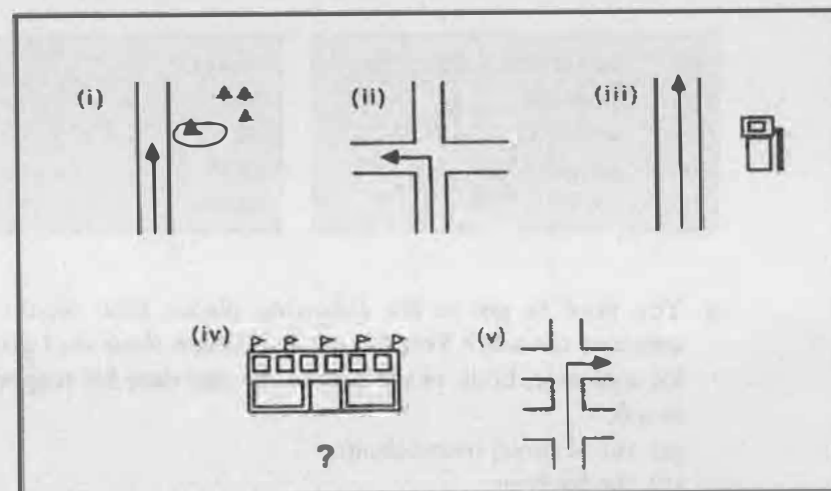
In Arabic, the word *háadha* (*this*) is also a pronoun. It makes a verbless sentence if it is followed by a word without al-

If the noun it refers to is feminine, use *háadhi*. and if it is plural, use *haadhóol* or *haadhéel*.

masc.	háadha muHammad	<i>This is Mohammad.</i>
fem.	háadhi shíishah	<i>This (is) a petrol station.</i>
plural	haadhóol maSriyyiin	<i>These (are) Egyptians.</i>

tamriináat (Exercises) تمرينات

- Match up the Arabic sentences below with the correct diagrams on the opposite page.
 - fáwwit ash-shíishah
 - liff yisáar
 - khudh tháani sháari: :ála l-yamiin
 - al-bustáan :ála l-yamiin
 - al-márkaz at-tijáari min wain?



- Which would you use here: *háadha*, *háadhi* or *haadhóol*? Fit the correct word into the sentence.
 - ... míina
 - ... kuwaitiyyiin

- (c) ... maTáar kabíir
- (d) ... máT Haf?
- (e) laa, ... jáami:ah

CD 1, TR 3, 5:02

3 Five people are asking the way round town. Listen to the recording, or read the transcript, and work out which place is being asked for and how they have to get there.

kaif arúuh
fúndug sii fyuu
áakhir ash-sháari:

how do I go to ... ?
Sea View Hotel
at the end of the road (lit. the last of the road)

4 Pick the correct verb from the box to put in the following sentences. You can only use each word once!

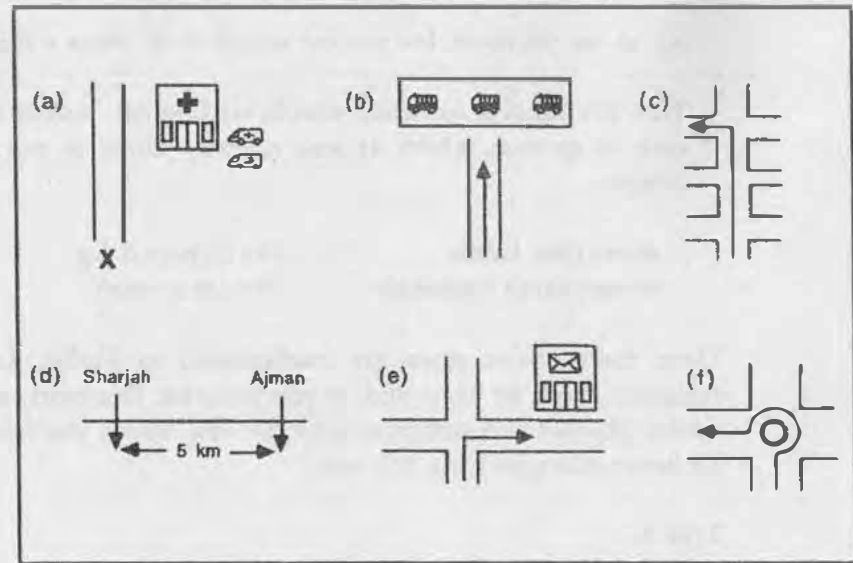
- (a) ... áwwal sháari: :ála l-yisáar
- (b) ... mín hina
- (c) ... al-fúndug
- (d) ... :ála l-yamiin
- (e) ... siidah

- fáwwit
- iTla
- liff
- ruuH
- khudh

5 You need to get to the following places: how would you ask someone the way? You can use **kaif arúuh** (*how do I go to ... ?*) for a change. Look in the Key to the exercises for suggested ways to ask.

- (a) the al-Bourj roundabout
- (b) the harbour
- (c) Abu Dhabi
- (d) the Al-Khaleej restaurant

6 ... and how would you give someone directions to get to the following places?



7 Using the map of Dubai on page 24, and the directions below, work out where you are being sent. Your position is marked X on the map, near the airport.

- (a) ruuH siida, fáwwit ad-duwwáar wa khudh áwwal sháari: :ála l-yamiin, ba:d al-fúndug. _____ :ála l-yamiin.
- (b) áwwal ruuh siidah, ba:dáin liif yisáar :ind ad-duwwáar, w-bá:d al-jísir, :ind ad-duwwáar, liif yamiin, wa _____ :ála l-yisáar, ba:d al-jáami:.
- (c) ruuH siida, wa :ind ad-duwwáar, liif :ála l-yamiin, w-khudh tháani sháari: :ála l-yisáar, wa _____ :ála l-yisáar.
- (d) ruuH siidah w-:ind ad-duwwáar liif :ála l-yisáar, w-ba:dáin ruuH siidah.

8 Lastly see how much new vocabulary you have learned! Find the Arabic for the places below and fit them into the puzzle.

Where would you go if you wanted:

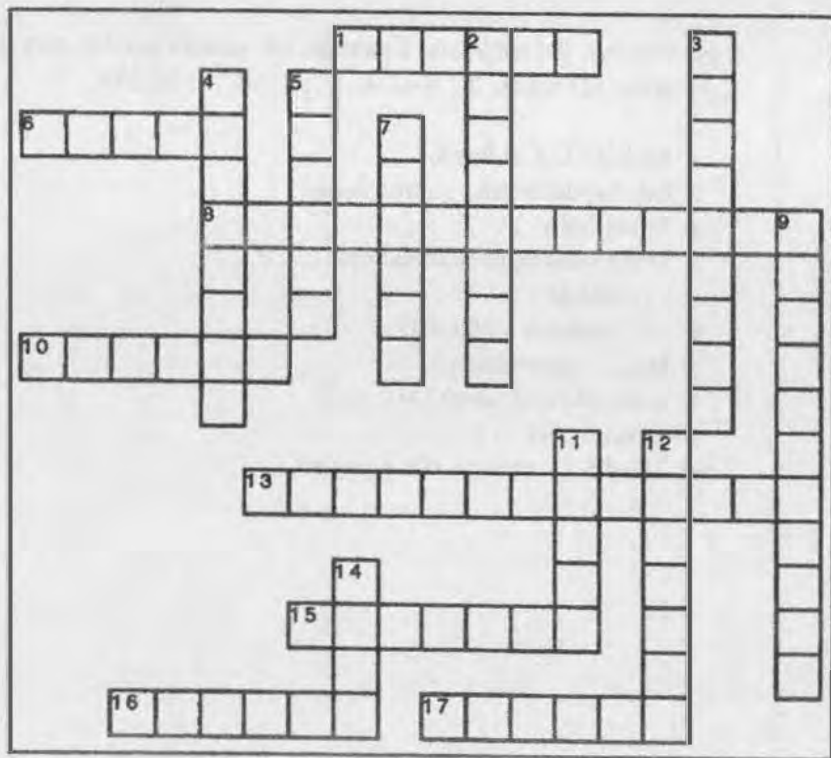
Across

- 1 to go to the Friday prayers
- 6 to watch the container ships unload

Down

- 2 a children's learning centre
- 3 to get medical treatment
- 4 a centre for higher learning

- 8 public transport
- 10 to catch a plane
- 13 to do all your shopping under one roof
- 15 a place where traffic circulates
- 16 somewhere to stay
- 17 to know the time
- 5 to see an exhibition of old remains
- 7 something to eat
- 9 to buy a cold remedy
- 11 to cross the creek
- 12 to visit an ancient military building
- 14 to go to a traditional Arab shopping area



al-khaTT al-:arabi (Arabic script) الخط العربي

Since your main purpose in learning the script is to recognize Arabic, here are the next two most common letters:

m *miim* in Arabic. This letter occurs frequently because, apart from occurring internally and finally in words, it is a common prefix in Arabic. Like most Arabic letters, it has three forms, depending on whether it occurs at the beginning of a word, or in the middle or at the end.

Name	Initial	Medial	Final	Separate	Pronunciation
miim	م	م	م	م	m

When it follows laam – frequently after al- (*the*) ال (al-m . . .).

Here, you will see that the alif has been moved to the left of the letter and the little circle has been filled in.

Insight

Remember that all Arabic letters join to the one before them (reading right to left). However some, by convention, do not join to the one after them (alif in the previous chapter was one of them). ‘Beginning’ (or ‘initial’), ‘middle’ and ‘final’ letters should be interpreted in this context.

Practice

Try to distinguish the miims in the following words from this lesson and find out their meanings. The first word is the only one which begins and ends with miim. Can you work out which it is? The others are transliterated for you:

مطعم

مدرسة

ميناء

المركز التجاري

محطة الباص

mádrasah

míina

al-márkaz al-tijáari

maHáITat al-baaS



Answer: the first word is máT:am (*restaurant*).

The other very common letter which you should learn to recognize is *ā*. This letter is easy to spot as it only occurs at the end of words, and actually marks the feminine ending *-ah*. Watch out for it on signs, place-names etc. Refer back to the place-names and map in Unit 1 and see how often it occurs.

Now look for it in some of the words you have learned in this unit:

مدرسة	mádrasah
شرطة	shúrTah
صيدلية	Saydalíyyah
ساعة	sáa:ah
راس الخيمة	raas al-kháimah
جامعة	jáami:ah

Test yourself

This test covers the main vocabulary, phrases and language points given in Unit 2. If you are not sure about your answers, go back to the dialogues and exercises for some revision, before going on to Unit 3. For the answers, see the Key to the exercises.

To assess your progress so far, pick an appropriate word from the list below to fit in the following sentences, using each word only once:

(a) háadha, (b) ruuH, (c) l-yamíin, (d) al-waTani, (e) min fáDHL-ak, (f) ákhir, (g) wain, (h) hináak, (i) garíib, (j) háadhi

- 1 maHáTTat al-baaS, . . .
- 2 fiih Saydalíyyah . . . min hína?
- 3 aywa, min . . .
- 4 law samáHt, al-mátHaf min . . . ?
- 5 . . . síidah
- 6 . . . máktab al-bariid?
- 7 laa, . . . mustáshfah
- 8 wain al-bank al-qaTari . . . ?
- 9 huwwa :ála . . .
- 10 khudh . . . sháari: :ála l-yisáar

3

رقم التلفون rágam at-tilifóon . . .

The telephone number is . . .

In this unit you will learn

- The numbers
- How to ask for someone on the telephone
- How to ask for and give telephone numbers

New words and phrases

CD 1, TR 4

Listen to the recording.

Hiwaar 1 (Dialogue 1) حوار ١

CD 1, TR 4, 0:18

Bill is in his hotel room and needs to telephone a business contact. First he rings Directory Enquiries.

al-baddáalah	ayy rágam tiríid?
Bill	kam rágam tilifóon shárikat al-khalíij li t-tijáarah min fáDHI-ak?
al-baddáalah	ar-rágam ithnáin síttah árba:ah khámsah Sífir wáaHid.
Bill	shúkrān
al-baddáalah	áfwan.

baddáalah	(telephone) exchange
ayy	which
rág(a)m/ráq(a)m	number
tiríid	you want/do you want?
kam	what (lit. how many)
rágam tilifóon	telephone number
shárikat al-khalíij li t-tijáarah	Gulf Trading Company
shárikah	company
al-khalíij	the (Arab) Gulf
li	to, for
tijáarah	trade, trading
ithnáin	two
síttah	six
árba:ah	four
khámsah	five
Síf(i)r	zero
wáaHid	one

- (a) How does the operator ask which number is required?
(b) What number does the operator give Bill?

ملاحظات (Notes) moolaHaDHáat

shárikat al-khalíij li t-tijáarah (Gulf Trading Company) This literally means 'The Company [of] the Gulf for the Trading'. This type of phrase is dealt with in Grammar point 1 later in this unit.

Insight

kam (in many parts of the Gulf pronounced cham). This means *how many?*, but it is also used when asking for phone numbers, where you would say *what?* (aish = what? is also used).

kam/aish rágam tilifóon . . . *what (is) the telephone number (of) . . . ?* No word for *of* is necessary.

Hiwaar 2 (Dialogue 2) حوار ٢

CD 1, TR 4, 0:56

Bill rings the number he has been given.

as-sikritáirah	SabáaH al-kháir, hína shárikat al-khalíj li t-tijáarah.
Bill	SabáaH an-núur, :abd al-:aziiz mawjúud min fáDHI-ich?
as-sikritáirah	min ism-ak, min fáDHI-ak?
Bill	ism-i biil styuart.
as-sikritáirah	láHDHah law samáHt
<i>(after a few moments:)</i>	
Abdel Aziz	SabáaH al-khair, yaa biil. áhlan fii dubáy. kaif Háal-ak?
Bill	al-Hámdu li l-láah. aish akhbáar-ak?
Abdel Aziz	al-Hámdu li l-láah. kaif al-:áa'ilah?
Bill	bi-khair, al-Hámdu li l-láah. wa inta, kaif al-:áa'ilah?
Abdel Aziz	bi-kháir, shukran. kaif mumkin asáa:id-ak?
Bill	múmkín ajii-k fi l-máktab?
Abdel Aziz	Táb:an. a:Tii-ni rágam tilifóon al-fúndug w attáSSil fii-k ba:d khams dagáayig

Bill	rágam al-fúndug ithnáin thamáaniyah wáaHid khámsah sá:b:a thaláathah
Abdel Aziz	w rágam al-ghúrfah?
Bill	sá:b:ah miyyah sittah wa :ishriin
Abdel Aziz	n-zain, attáSil fii-k ba:d shwayyah. Hayyáa-k Al-láah
Bill	fii amáan Alláah

sikritáirah	secretary (female)
mawjúud	there, present
láHDHah	moment, a moment
áhlan fii dubáy	welcome to Dubai
min or man	who?
yaa	used before names when addressing people
:áa'ilah or :áayilah	family
asáa:id-ak	I help you / can I help you?
ajii-k	I come to you
máktab	office
Táb:an	of course, naturally
A:Tii-ni	give me
attáSil fii-k	I'll ring you
thamáaniyah	eight
sá:b:ah	seven
thaláathah	three
ghúrfah	room
miyyah	hundred
:ishriin	twenty
shwayyah	a little, some
ba:d shwayyah	in a little while, later
Hayyáa-k Al-láah	goodbye

- What is the telephone number of Bill's hotel?
- What is Bill's hotel room number?
- When is Abdel Aziz going to ring back?

mulaaHaDHáat (Notes) ملاحظات

- 1 min (*who?*) is exactly like the word for *from*.
The context will always make it clear which is meant. You also sometimes hear it pronounced man.
- 2 yaa . . .
It is obligatory when addressing someone to place this word before their name. It has no translation in English.
- 3 fi l-máktab (*in the office*)
This is short for fii al-maktab. This obligatory elision is pronounced fil-.
- 4 khams dagáayig (*five minutes*)
The Gulf Arabic numerals are given later in this unit.
- 5 attáSi! fii-k (*I'll phone you*)
You can also use the phrase asawwii l-ak tilifóon.

Insight

a: Tii-ni (*give [to] me*). In certain parts of the Gulf you hear :áT-ni or even nTii-ni.

ma:luumáat thaqaafiyah (Cultural tips) معلومات ثقافية

kaif al-:áa'ilah (*how is the family?*) It is considered impolite to enquire too closely about an Arab family, especially the female element, unless you know that family very well. This phrase or the alternative kaif al-áh(a)l is the accepted way to do it. áh(a)l is another word for family, kinsfolk.

Hayyáa-k Al-láah (lit. *God give you life*) is another well-wishing phrase. It can mean *goodbye* as here, or even *thank you* depending on context.

Al-láah (*God, Allah*) has been spelled with a capital A in this book out of respect. It is actually composed of al- (*the*) plus láah which is a contraction of iláah (*a god*), i.e. *the God*. Like all words beginning with al- the (in this case capital) a can be elided, as you have already seen in al-Hámdu li l-láah (*praise[be] to God*).

núqaT naHwiyyah (Grammar points) نقاط نحوية

1 Possessives

Possessive constructions express the idea of belonging. For example, in Unit 1 the endings or suffixes, applied to the words Haal (*condition*) and akhbáar (*news*) denote *your*:

kaif Háal-ak *how (is) your condition* (to a man)
aish akhbáar-ich *what (is) your news* (to a woman)

The same meaning of belonging can be expressed by placing two nouns together, the second one usually having al- (*the*) before it:

sawwáag at-táksi *taxi driver* (lit. driver of the taxi)
SáaHib ad-dukkáan *shopkeeper* (lit. owner of the shop)
rágam at-tilifóon *phone number* (lit. number of the telephone)
shárikat al-khalíij li t-tijáarah *Gulf Trading Company* (lit. company of the Gulf for the trading)

The last example illustrates the important rule that feminine nouns ending in -ah change this to -at when they are used as the first part of such constructions.

Note that the first word must never have al- placed before it. Instead it is placed before the second word. The indefinite equivalent of such phrases is sawwáag táksi and SáaHib dukkáan (*a taxi driver, a shopkeeper*).

2 Numbers

CD 1, TR 4, 2:24

Here are all the basic Arabic numbers. You should not try to learn them all at once, but use this list as a reference.

Using numbers to count things (e.g. six houses, three cars) will be dealt with in Unit 5. Here you'll find mainly telephone numbers, and 'abstract' numbers (e.g. in arithmetical calculations). Both of these use the independent form.

Masculine/independent	Feminine
1 wáaHid	wáaHidah
2 ithnáin	thintáin
3 thaláathah	thaláath
4 árba:ah	árba:
5 khámsah	khám(a)s
6 síttah	sitt
7 sáb:ah	sab:
8 thamáan(i)yah	thamáan
9 tís(a):ah	tísa:
10 :ásharah	:áshar

Common gender (i.e. no distinction as above)

11	iHdá:shar
12	ithná:shar
13	thalaathá:shar
14	arba:atá:shar
15	khamastá:shar
16	sittá:shar
17	sab:atá:shar
18	thamantá:shar
19	tis:atá:shar
20	:ishrúin
21	wáaHid w-:ishrúin

22	ithnáin w-:ishrúin
23	thaláathah w-:ishrúin

... and so on, using the masc. form of the unit

30	thalaathíin
40	arba:iin
50	khamsiin
60	sittiin
70	sab:iin
80	thamaaniin
90	tis:iin
100	miyyah
200	miitáin
300	thaláath miyyah
400	árba: miyyah
1000	alf (plural. aaláaf)
2000	alfáin
1000000	milyóon (plural. malaayiin)

Insight

Many speakers habitually leave out the final -ar on 11-19, and some speakers say *miyyah* for 100.

Making compound numbers

- When you say any number above 20, you are making a compound number, and the last two numbers always have *wa* (*and*) between them.
- The words are in the same order as in English, except that the units come before the tens.
- When you are talking about 200, you must use the special 'dual' form, *miitáin*, but for 300 or more use *miyyah*.
- When you are talking about 2000 you must also use the 'dual' plural, *alfáin*, but for three thousand or more use the normal plural, *aaláaf*.

(e) If the following word begins with a vowel, the 'h' at the end of the masculine/independent number changes to a 't'.

36	sittah w-thalaathiin	six and thirty
120	miyyah w-ishriin	one hundred and twenty
279	miitain tis:ah w-sab:iin	two hundred, nine and seventy
1945	alf tis:ah miyyah khámsah w-arba:iin	one thousand, nine hundred, five and forty
2488	alfáin árba: miyyah thamáaniyah w-thamaaniin	two thousand, four hundred, eight and eighty
3075	thalaáthat aaláaf khámsah w-sab:iin	three thousand, five and seventy

ma:luumaat thaqaafiyah (Cultural tips) معلومات ثقافية

Here are two well-known Arabic story titles which include numbers: *alf láilah wa láilah* (a) *thousand nights and (a) night*, (i.e. *The Thousand and One Nights*, or *The Arabian Nights*)
:áli báaba wa l-arba:iin *Haráami Ali Baba and the Forty Thieves*

... and a proverb from Abu Dhabi!

al-bild sáb:ah wa l-báHar sáb:ah (lit. 'the line is seven and the sea is seven', used to express *just making ends meet*)

(*al-bild* is the plumbline used to test the depth of the sea in fathoms)

3 Telephone numbers

Telephone numbers in spoken Arabic are given in a straight series of digits - just like English, e.g. 123 456 (one two three, four five six). *Sifir* zero, is the origin of our English word *cipher*. The Arabs were responsible for getting Europe off the Roman numbering system (XVII etc.) in the Middle Ages, and introduced the zero into our numbering system.

We speak of Arabic (as opposed to Roman) numerals, but the Arabs actually borrowed them from the Indians. Hence the different forms.

4 Asking for people on the telephone

You simply say . . . (name of person) *mawjúud?*. This is the standard phrase for asking if someone is there or present. *mawjúud* is an adjective, describing a thing or person, so it has to agree in gender. If the person in question is a female, it becomes *mawjúudah*:

:abd al-:aziiz <i>mawjúud?</i>	<i>Is Abdel Aziz there?</i>
fáaTimah <i>mawjúudah?</i>	<i>Is Fatimah there?</i>
áywa, :abd al-:aziiz <i>mawjúud</i>	<i>Yes, Abdel Aziz is here.</i>
laa, fáaTimah <i>muu mawjúudah</i>	<i>No, Fatimah is not here.</i>

tamriináat (Exercises) تمارينات

CD 1, TR 4, 3:35

1 Listen to the recording and note down the football scores. If you don't have the recording, look in the transcript at the back.

CD 1, TR 4, 4:02

2 Here is a list of four hotel room numbers, and four telephone numbers.

Listen to the recording or read the transcript and jot down the numbers you hear. Some of them don't correspond with the ones below - which ones are wrong? Check your answers in the Key to the exercises at the back.

(a) 10	(c) 208	(e) 321-450	(g) 798-125
(b) 36	(d) 911	(f) 347-806	(h) 892-660

3 A visitor has come to see a hotel guest

<i>záayir</i>	<i>aish rágam ghúrfat áHmad bin sá:ad min fáDHI-ak?</i>
<i>káatib</i>	<i>áHmad bin sá:ad fii ghúrfah rágam khamis miyyah w :áshriin fi d-door al-kháamis.</i>
<i>záayir</i>	<i>shúkran</i>

záa'ir or **záayir**
káatib
door
al-kháamis
ad-door al-kháamis

visitor
clerk, receptionist
floor, storey
the fifth
the fifth floor

Make up similar dialogues, using the information below and referring if necessary to the ordinal numbers in Unit 2.

Name	Room number	Floor
(a) Husáin :iisa	15	1
(b) múuna ábu Háidar	235	2
(c) ad-doktóor muHámmad al-wardáani	480	4

4 **Hisaab (Arithmetic):** The Arabs are proud of the fact that they invented modern arithmetic. Try the following sums in Arabic. Write the numbers and the answers in words. The main arithmetical expressions are as follows:

- + *wa (and)* (more formally *záayid increasing*)
 - *náagiS (lacking)*
 - x *fii (lit. in, more formally DHarb multiplication)*
 - ÷ *:ála (lit. on magsúumah :ála divided by)*
 - = *yisáawi (it equals, makes)*
- (a) $2 + 5 = \dots$ (d) $1389 - 1260 = \dots$ (g) $1000 \div 50 = \dots$
 (b) $11 + 3 = \dots$ (e) $9 \times 5 = \dots$ (h) $96 \div 12 = \dots$
 (c) $46 - 19 = \dots$ (f) $122 \times 3 = \dots$

al-khaTT al-:árabi (Arabic script) الخط العربي

In this Unit you'll take a rest from the Arabic alphabet and deal instead with the numbers.

Although the Arabic script is written from right to left, the numerals are written from left to right as in the West. This may seem bizarre, but it is a fact. As your eye scans a piece of Arabic, it has to reverse direction when numerals appear.

This problem is compounded in dates of day + month + year where the order of these elements is right to left, but the numbers expressing them go in the opposite direction. So where in English the 17th of December 2010 would be 17/12/2010, in an Arabic context it would be written 2010/12/17 - ١٢٠١٠١١٢١٧.

Some bilingual English/Arabic computer word processing packages even have a special way to accommodate this, so that you can keep typing in the same direction!

Nevertheless the numerals are fairly easy to learn. If you look at them closely and use a bit of imagination, you can often see a connection to the European version. Try turning them sideways; for instance, Arabic turned 90 degrees to the left and with the tail deleted is similar to our 3. The same applies to 7 and some others.

Since the computational system and direction of writing are the same as in the West, you have nothing more to learn.

1	١	6	٦
2	٢	7	٧
3	٣	8	٨
4	٤	9	٩
5	٥	0	٠

A few examples:

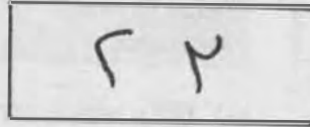
١٢	12
٥٦	56
٢٨٥	285
٢٠٠٦/٠٥/٢٣	7,942
٢٠٠٦/٠٥/٢٣	23/05/2006

(Watch the reading direction)



Insight

In handwriting, 3 is written like a printed 2 (i.e. with one concave curve at the top instead of two) and in such cases 2 is written with a convex (upward facing curve) at the top:



Some countries have adopted the western form of numerals. Look on this as a bonus!

Test yourself

This test covers the main vocabulary, phrases and language points given in Unit 3. If you are not sure about your answers, go back to the dialogues and exercises for some revision, before going on to Unit 4. For the answers, see the Key to the exercises.

How would you say the following sentences in Arabic?

- 1 What is the telephone number of the hotel?
- 2 The number is 264059.
- 3 Is Ibrahim al-Hussein there, please?
- 4 The room number is 310.

Write down the following numbers in English:

- 5 khamsatá:shar
- 6 sá:b:ah wa-tis:íin
- 7 miitáin árba:ah wa-thalaathiin

Now write these numbers in Arabic:

- 8 12
- 9 54
- 10 681

4

الساعة كم؟ as-sáa:ah kam? What time is it?

In this unit you will learn

- How to ask and tell the time
- How to ask when things open and close
- The days of the week
- The times of day

New words and phrases

CD 1, TR 5

Listen to the recording.

Hiwaar 1 (Dialogue 1) حوار ١

CD 1, TR 5, 0:15

Bill's watch is still on London time, so he asks Mahmoud in reception what the time is.

Bill	as-sáa:ah kam law samáHt?
Mahmoud	al-Hiin as-sáa:ah thamáanyah
Bill	as-sáa:ah thamáanyah bi DH-DHabT?
Mahmoud	ná:am, bi DH-DHabT
Bill	shúkran
Mahmoud	:áfwan

Another guests asks about the swimming pool.

DHaif	wain al-másbaH min fáDHI-ak?
Mahmoud	hináak :ála l-yisáar, láakin magfúul al-Hiin
DHaif	as-sáa:ah kam yiftaH?
Mahmoud	yiftaH as-sáa:ah tís:ah, ba:d nuSS sáa:ah
DHaif	ashkúr-ak
Mahmoud	áhlan wa sáhlan

Later that evening a guest asks when the hotel restaurant closes.

DHaif	al-máT:am yibánnid as-sáa:ah kam?
Mahmoud	as-sáa:ah iHDá:shar w nuSS
DHaif	shúkran
Mahmoud	:áfwan

- Bill's watch says 4 am. What is the time difference between London and Dubai?
- When does the swimming pool open?
- What phrase is used to ask when something opens?
- When does the restaurant close in the evening?

sáa:ah	hour (also clock, watch)
as-sáa:ah kam?	What's the time/At what time . . . ?
al-Hiin	now
as-sáa:ah thamáanyah	(the time is) eight o'clock
bi DH-DHabT	exactly
DHaif	guest
másbaH	swimming pool
láakin	but
magfúul	closed, shut
yiftaH/tiftaH	it (masc./fem.) opens
ba:d nuSS sáa:ah	in half an hour

nuSS	half
nuSS sáa:ah	half an hour
ashkúr-ak	thank you (lit. I thank you)
yibánnid/tibánnid	it (masc./fem.) closes
as-sáa:ah iHdá:shar w nuSS	(at) half past 11

mulaaHaDHáat (Notes) ملاحظات

- as-sáa:ah kam? (What's the time / at what time . . . ?)
This is the normal way to ask the time, but you may also hear kam as-sáa:ah? with the word order reversed.
- ba:d nuSS sáa:ah in (lit. after) half an hour.
Where English says in half an hour, Arabic has ba:d (after).

Insight

ashkúr-ak is a slightly more formal variant of shúkran (thank you). Because this is a verb, meaning literally I thank you, the ending must change according to whom you are speaking to. So to a woman you say ashkúr-ich, and to several people, ashkúr-kum (the same endings you are familiar with from kaif Háal-ak etc.). shúkran never changes.

Hiwaar 2 (Dialogue 2) حوار ٢

CD 1, TR 5, 1:53

Abdel Aziz rings Bill in his hotel room.

Abdel Aziz	biil?
Bill	aywa :ind-ak. :abd al-aziz?
Abdel Aziz	ná:am. kaif al-Háal?
Bill	bi-khâir, al-Hámdu li-lláah. wa Háal-ak ínta?

Abdel Aziz	al-Hámdu li-lláah. as-sáa:ah kam tíjji l-máktab?
Bill	as-sáa:ah iHdá:shar zain?
Abdel Aziz	zain, láakin as-sáa:ah iHdá:shar w nuSS áHsan
Bill	zain. idhan ashúuf-ak as-sáa:ah iHdá:shar w nuSS in sháa' Al-láah
Abdel Aziz	in sháa' Al-láah

:ind-ak	with you (i.e. it's me speaking)
tíjji	you come, will come
áHsan	better
idhan	so, therefore
ashúuf-ak	I see you, I will see you

- What does Bill wish to do?
- When does he suggest they meet?
- When do they agree to meet?

ma:luumáat thaqaafiyah (Cultural tips) معلومات ثقافية

Arabs expect to go through a whole gamut of greetings each time they meet and it is considered rude to rush straight into your business, even if you were speaking only a few minutes ago. This goes slightly against the grain with us Westerners, but don't worry, just keep talking, even if your replies don't all exactly fit the questions. It is doubtful whether anyone actually listens.

ta:biiraat haammah (Key phrases) تعبيرات هامة

CD 1, TR 5, 2:43

Asking the time

kam as-sáa:ah min fáDHI-ak/ich?

What's the time please?

Saying what time it is

as-sáa:ah khámsah
 as-sáa:ah árba:ah wa;rúba:
 as-sáa:ah síttah wa-nuSS
 as-sáa:ah thaláathah illa rúba:
 as-sáa:ah thintáin illa khams

*It is five o'clock.
 Quarter past four.
 It is half past six.
 It is a quarter to three.
 It is five to two.*

Saying whether something is open or closed

ad-dukkáan maftúuH *The shop is open*
 aS-Saydalíyyah magfúulah *The pharmacy is closed*

Talking about opening and closing times

ad-dukkáan yiftaH as-sáa:ah tisa:ah *The shop (masc.) opens (at) nine o'clock.*
 aS-Saydalíyyah tíftaH as-sáa:ah tís:ah *The pharmacy (fem.) opens at nine o'clock*
 ad-dukkáan yíbánnid as-sáa:ah sááb:ah *The shop (masc.) closes (at) seven o'clock.*
 aS-Saydalíyyah tihánnid as-sáa:ah sááb:ah *The pharmacy (fem.) closes at seven o'clock.*

núqaT naHwíyyah (Grammar points) نقط نحوية

1 Asking the time

The word *sáa:ah* means in English *hour, clock, or watch*. As the *-ah* ending tells us, it is feminine in gender. To ask the time, say:

kam as-sáa:ah? or as-sáa:ah kam? *What (is) the time?*
 kam as-sáa:ah min faDHI-ak/ich? *What's the time, please?*

According to context, *as-saa:ah kam* (but not *kam as-saa:ah*) can also mean *at what time*:

as-sáa:ah kam tíjji? *(at) what time will you come?*

2 Telling the time

Saying the time on the hour:



as-sáa:ah iHDá:shar 11 o'clock
 as-sáa:ah ithná:shar 12 o'clock

Note from the above that:

- (a) *One and two o'clock* use the feminine form of the numeral
- (b) *Three o'clock to ten o'clock* inclusive use the independent form
- (c) For *eleven and twelve o'clock* there is only one possible form.

rúba: quarter
 thilth (third of an hour), 20 minutes
 nuSS half

Where in English you say *past*, in Arabic you say *wa: as-sáa:ah* (current hour) *wa...* the hour is *x* plus...

For the English *to*, in Arabic use *illa* (*except for, less*): *as-sáa:ah* (next hour) *illa...* the hour is *x + 1* less...



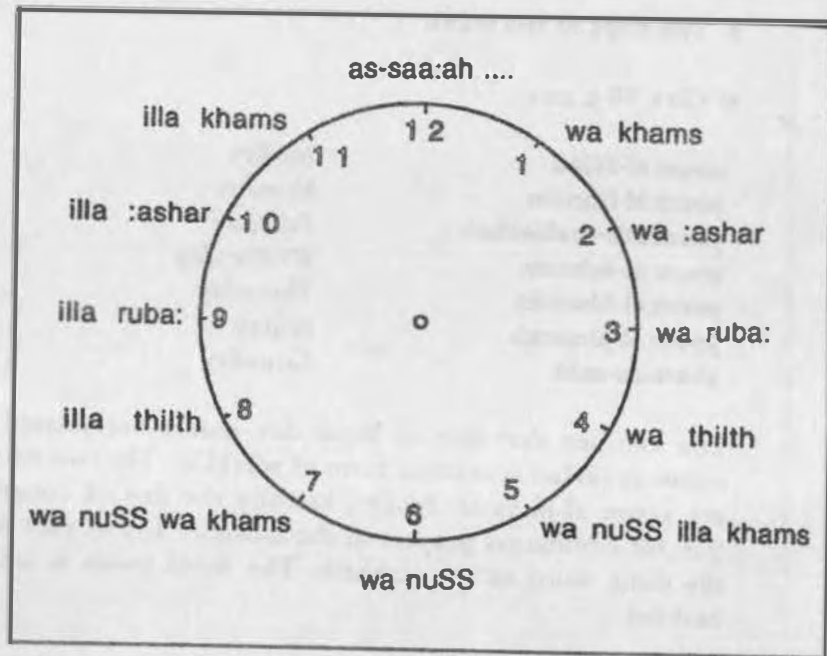
as-sáa:ah iHdá:shar wa-rúba:
 as-sáa:ah thaláathah illa rúba:

quarter past eleven
quarter to three

Twenty-five past and twenty-five to the hour are expressed in Arabic as the hour plus a half less five and the hour plus a half plus five respectively:

as-sáa:ah khámsah wa-nuSS illa khams 25 past five
 as-sáa:ah khámsah wa-nuSS wa khams 25 to six

Note that in time expressions which end in *five* or *ten* (minutes) the numeral is in the feminine form.



More formally (and less commonly) all times can be stated using the preceding hour plus the number of minutes:

as-sáa:ah :ásharah wa khamsah w arba:iin dagíigah 10.45

This is the method used by speaking clocks and other automats, and also sometimes on official radio and television announcements. These, however, usually use the literary Arabic forms of the numbers, which differ a lot (and are best avoided!).

3 Saying at a particular time

Arabic requires no additional word, so as-saa:ah khamsah can mean (*it is*) *five o'clock* or *at five o'clock*:

múmkín tíjji s-sáa:ah thaláathah illa rúba: *Can you come at quarter to three?*
 wáSai as-sáa:ah iHdá:shar l-lail *He arrived at eleven o'clock at night*

wáSai *he arrived*
 al-lail, bi l-lail *night, at night*

4 Times of day

If it is not clear from the context whether the hour referred to is before noon (am) or afternoon (pm), the Arabs have a set of words indicating parts of the day which may be placed after stating the time.

◀ CD 1, TR 5, 3:04

aS-Súb(a)H	<i>morning, forenoon</i>
aDH-Dhúh(u)r	<i>around noon</i>
ba:d aDH-Dhúh(u)r	<i>afternoon</i>
al-:ás(i)r	<i>late afternoon (about four pm)</i>
al-misa	<i>evening</i>
al-lail	<i>night</i>

as-sáa:ah sá:b:ah aS-SúbaH
as-sáa:ah tís:ah bi l-lail

*seven o'clock (in) the morning
nine o'clock at (lit. in the)
night*

This is by no means a complete list but will get you through the main sectors of the Muslim day. Some of these words refer to prayer times.

5 Asking about opening and closing times

To say whether somewhere is open or closed in Arabic, use the adjectives:

maftúuH
magfúul

*open
closed, shut*

Other local words are mbánnad for *closed* and mbáTTal for *open*, but these cannot be used in all contexts so it is better to stick to the first two given. In written Arabic you will see múghlaq (مغلق) but this is not used in speech.



ad-dukkáan maftúuH?
al-másbaH magfúul

*Is the shop open?
The swimming pool is
closed.*

To speak about the time a place opens, use the verb yíftaH/tíftaH it (masc./fem.) opens:

máktab al-baríid yíftaH
as-sáa:ah thamáanyah
al-mádrasah tíftaH
as-sáa:ah thamáanyah
íftaH yaa símsim!

*The post office (masc.) opens at eight
o'clock.
The school (fem.) opens at eight
o'clock.
Open Sesame! (imperative form)*

And to say when it closes, use the verb yibánnid/tibánnid or yígfil/tígfil it (masc./fem.) closes:

máktab al-baríid yígfil as-sáa:ah árba:ah

*The post office closes
at four o'clock.*

al-mádrasah tibánnid as-sáa:ah árba:ah

*The school closes at
four o'clock.*

6 The days of the week

CD 1, TR 5, 3:52

yoom al-áHad
yoom al-ithnáin
yoom ath-thaláathah
yoom al-árba:ah
yoom al-khamiis
yoom al-júma:ah
yoom as-sabt

*Sunday
Monday
Tuesday
Wednesday
Thursday
Friday
Saturday*

You can see that five of these day names are related to the numbers (áHad is another form of wáaHid). The two exceptions are yoom al-júma:ah *Friday*, literally the day of congregation (i.e. for communal prayers in the mosque) and as-sabt which is the same word as our *sabbath*. The word yoom is sometimes omitted.

To say *on* Monday, Tuesday, etc., Arabic requires no extra word, as with the hours of the clock:

wáSal yoom al-khamiis
áji yoom al-ithnain

*He arrived on Thursday.
I'll come on Monday.*

7 Other expressions of time

QUICK VOCAB

al-yóom	today
báakir or búkrah	tomorrow
bá:d búkrah	the day after tomorrow
ams, ám(l)s	yesterday
áwwal ams	the day before yesterday

al-yoom yoom al-júma:ah w búkrah yoom as-sabt	Today is Friday and tomorrow is Saturday.
sa:iid wáSal áwwal ams	Said arrived the day before yesterday.
áji bá:d búkrah	I'll come the day after tomorrow.

:úgub is an alternative word for bá:(a)d *after* used in some parts of the Gulf.

ma:lumáat thaqaafíyyah (Cultural tips) معلومات ثقافية

The working day in the Gulf starts between seven and eight in the morning, and finishes between one and two in the afternoon. Most ministries and other government departments are then closed for the day, but the souk and most shopping centres open again at about four in the afternoon and stay open until eight or nine in the evening, when the temperature has cooled down. This is the time for families to go out shopping together, and you see groups of women choosing dress materials, families buying their food for the week, and everybody just enjoying the chance to get out for a walk. Some families even take picnics to eat on the grass verges, while the children play around them.

Friday is the Muslim day of prayer, and in the Gulf all offices and some large shops are closed on Thursday afternoon and all day Friday. For the souk and other small establishments, however, it is a seven day week.

tamriináat (Exercises) تمارينات

CD 1, TR 5, 4:50

1 Listen to the times of day on the recording or read the transcript, and look at the times below. Decide in each case what the correct time is.

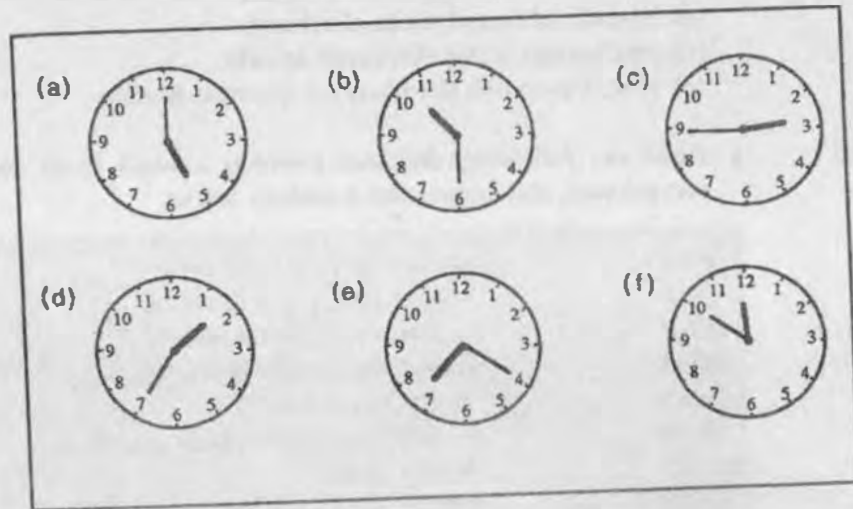
- (a) 1.15, 1.20 or 1.30?
- (b) 6.25, 6.35 or 6.55?
- (c) 10.15, 10.30 or 10.45?
- (d) 4.55, 5.00 or 5.05?
- (e) 9.00 a.m. or 9.00 p.m.?

2 Ask what time it is, and say the time shown on the clock.

Example:

as-sáa:ah kam? as-sáa:ah thamáanyah

What time is it? It is eight o'clock.



3 Fill in the right days of the week:

al-yóom yoom al-júma:ah

- (a) :ams _____
- (b) _____ yoom as-sabt
- (c) bá:d búkrah _____
- (d) _____ yoom al-árba:ah



- 4 Look at the working hours of the post office in Nizwa in Oman in the picture above. Are the following statements true or false?
- máktab al-baríid magfúul as-sáa:ah ithná:shar yoom al-khamíis
 - húwwa maftúuH yoom al-júma:ah
 - húwwa mbánnad yoom al-árba:ah
 - yígfíl as-sáa:h thintáin yoom as-sabt
 - yíftaH as-sáa:ah thamáaniyah yoom al-ithnáin
- 5 Read the following dialogue between a hotel guest and the receptionist, and answer the questions below.

DHaif	as-sáa:ah kam min fáDHI-ak?
káatib	as-sáa:ah thamáaniyah illa rúba:
DHaif	fiih Saydalíyyah garíibah min hína?
káatib	ná:am, fi l-márkaz at-tijáari :a l-yisáar
DHaif	tíftaH as-sáa:ah kam?
káatib	as-sáa:ah thamáaniyah, ba:d rúba: sáa:ah
DHaif	shúkran jazíilan
káatib	:áfwan

- What is the time?
- When does it open?
- Where is the chemist's shop?
- How long is it until it opens?

- 6 Today is your first day in Dubai, and you have some shopping to do, but you need to get cash, and you know that the banks will be closed. The receptionist tells you that the time is 3.30pm, that the nearest money changer is in the souk on the right, and that it opens at 4pm. Write a dialogue based on the one above.
(Sarráaf = money changer)

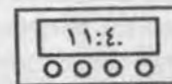
الخط العربي (Arabic script) al-khaTT al-: árabi

More practice in reading Arabic numerals

- 1 Write out the following dates in English in numerical fashion, e.g. 10/6/1989 (day/month/year). Watch the direction of writing!

١٩٥٢/١٢/٣ -١
 ٢٠١٣/١١/١٩ -٢
 ٢٠٠٠/١/١ -٣
 ١٩٩٠/٢/٢٨ -٤
 ١٨٨٠/٤/١٧ -٥

- 2 Write out the following times in words, using the 24 hour clock format, e.g.



(as-sáa:ah)iHdá:shar wa arba:iin dagúgah
 (dagúgah = minute; here also the plural minutes.)

- ١٦:٣٥
- ١٨:١٥
- ٠٩:٢٥
- ٢٠:٥٥

(e) ٠٦:٤٥

(h) ١٤:٢٦

(f) ١٢:٢٠

(i) ٠١:١١

(g) ١٠:١٩

(j) ٢٢:٥٥

Test yourself

This test covers the main vocabulary, phrases and language points given in Unit 4. If you are not sure about your answers, go back to the dialogues and exercises for some revision, before going on to Unit 5. For the answers, see the Key to the exercises.

How would you say the following sentences in Arabic:

- 1 What's the time?
- 2 It is 4.30.
- 3 Is the bank open? No, it's closed.
- 4 Put the weekdays into the correct order:

yoom al-árba:ah, yoom as-sábt, yoom al-khamíis, yoom ath-thaláathah, yoom al-júm:ah, yoom al-ithnáin, yoom al-áHad

Next fill in the missing verbs, choosing one of the three below:

a tígfil, b yíftaH, c wáSal

- 5 al-márkaz at-tijári. . . as-sáa:ah thamáanyah aS-SúbH
- 6 ibrahím. . . ams
- 7 aS-Saydalíyyah. . . as-sáa:ah sáb:ah

Now do the same, but this time you fill in the correct verbs for the gaps in the sentences:

- 8 ad-dukkáan. . . as-sáa:ah tís:ah bi l-lail
- 9 . . . yoom al-khamíis ba:d aDH-Dhúhr
- 10 al-mádrasah. . . as-sáa:ah thamáanyah ílla rúba: aS-SúbH

5

بكم هذا؟

bi-kám háadha? How much is this?

In this unit you will learn how to

- Ask whether things are available
- Ask what things are
- Ask how much they cost
- Do some simple bargaining
- Describe things

New words and phrases

🔊 CD 1, TR 6

Listen to the recording.

Hiwaar 1 (Dialogue 1) حوار ١

🔊 CD 1, TR 6, 0:18

Matthew Baker works in Qatar. He needs new batteries for his son's toy car, and goes to the small local shop.

Matthew	:ind-ak bayáatri, min faDHI-ak?
SáaHib ad-dukkáan	ná:am, fiih
Matthew	bi-kám háadha?
SáaHib ad-dukkáan	háadha bi-riyaaláin
Matthew	wa háadha?
SáaHib ad-dukkáan	háadha bi-riyáal wa nuSS
Matthew	a:Tii-ni arba:ah min háadha sh-shakil
SáaHib ad-dukkáan	zain. tiriid shay tháani?
Matthew	laa, shúkran

Note: From this unit onwards, the plural of nouns and some adjectives will be given in the vocabulary in brackets after the singular.

:ind-ak	<i>you have, do you have</i>
báitri (bayáatri)	<i>battery/batteries</i>
bi-kám	<i>how much</i>
bi-riyaaláin	<i>for two riyals, costs two riyals</i>
a:Tii-ni	<i>give me</i>
shák(i)l (ashkáal)	<i>kind, sort</i>
háadha sh-shákil	<i>this kind (often shortened to há sh-shákil)</i>
tiriid	<i>you (masc.) want</i>
shay	<i>thing, anything</i>
tháani	<i>second, other, more</i>

- (a) How much did the first battery cost?
 (b) Since he bought the second batteries, how much did Matthew have to pay in total?

mulaaHaDHáat (Notes) ملاحظات

1 Gulf currency

Bahrain and Kuwait both have diináars (BD and KD), and they are divided into 1000 fils.

The Omani riyáal (RO) is divided into 1000 baizah (written baisa.)
 The Qatari riyáal (QR) is divided into 100 dirhams, and Saudi riyals (SR) into 100 halala.

The United Arab Emirates has dirhams (Dh), divided into 100 fils.



The words for all the units of currency change when you talk about them in the plural:

- baizah (baizáat)
- diináar (danaaniir)
- dirham (daráahim)
- fils (filúus)
- riyáal (riyaaláat)

There is a complete explanation of the use of numbers with money in the grammar notes at the end of the unit.





2 riyaláin

When you talk about *two* of anything in Arabic, you use a special dual form which adds *-áin* to the end of the word. You then don't need to use the word *ithnáin/thintáin (two)*.

Hiwaar 2 (Dialogue 2) حوار ٢

CD 1, TR 6, 0:59

Peter and Sally are on holiday in the Emirates. They spend a morning in the souk in Sharjah looking for souvenirs. They have found a shop selling local crafts and antiques, and go in to have a look around.

Peter & Sally	as-saláamu :alái-kum
SáaHib ad-dukkáan	wa :alái-kum as-saláam. kaif Háal-kum?
Peter	Tayyibiin, al-Hámdu li-lláh
SáaHib ad-dukkáan	aish tiriiduun?
Peter	nariid nashúuf bass
<i>They look around the shop for a while.</i>	
Sally	(<i>pointing to a dagger</i>) háadha aish ism-uh bi-l-árabi min fáDHI-ak?
SáaHib ad-dukkáan	háadha ism-uh khánjar

Peter	háadha min fáDHDHah?
SáaHib ad-dukkáan	na:am fáDHDHah, fáDHDHah gadiimah.
Sally	(<i>pointing to an incense burner</i>) wa háadha aish ism-uh?
SáaHib ad-dukkáan	háadha ism-uh mijmar.
Sally	háadha aS-Saghiir bi-kám?
SáaHib ad-dukkáan	sáb:a daráahim
Sally	w al-kabiir?
SáaHib ad-dukkáan	iHdá:shar dírham. tiriidiin al-kabiir?
Sally	ná:am . . . láakin gháali.
SáaHib ad-dukkáan	íaa, muu gháali! rakhiiS! . . . n-zain, tis:ah daráahim
Sally	zain, áakhudh háadha bi-tis:ah daráahim.

Táyyib tiriiduun nariid nashúuf nariid nashúuf aish ism-uh bi-l-árabi

good, well, fine, OK you (plural) want we want we look, are looking we want to look What is this called in Arabic? (lit. what [is] its name in Arabic?)

khánjar (khanáajir) min fáDHDHah gadiim mijmar (majáamir) aS-Saghiir al-kabiir tiriidiin gháali rakhiiS áakhudh

dagger of, made from silver old incense burner the small one the big one you (fem.) want expensive cheap I (will) take

- What does Peter tell the shopkeeper they want to do?
- What is the first thing Sally asks about?
- What is the price of the small incense burner?

mulaaHaDHáat (notes) ملاحظات

- 1 Tayyibiin Note the plural, implying 'we' are well.
- 2 nariid nashúuf (lit. *we-want we-look*).
Arabic has no way to say *to look*, and instead puts two verbs together. This will be explained in more detail in a later unit.
- 3 bass This useful word means *that is all* in this context.
It means *enough* when you are being offered food or drink.
- 4 háadha aish ísm-uh bi-l-:árabí (*what is this called in Arabic?*)
- 5 háadha ism-uh khánjar *This is called a dagger* (lit. *this-one his-name [is] khanjar*)
If the item you are asking about is feminine, the answer will be:
háadhi ísm-ha zooliyyah *This is called a carpet* (lit. *this-one her-name [is] carpet*)
- 6 Saying what things are made of

In Arabic you use *min* (of):

húwwa min dháhab *It (masc.) (is) gold.*

hiyya min gúTun *It (fem.) (is) cotton.*

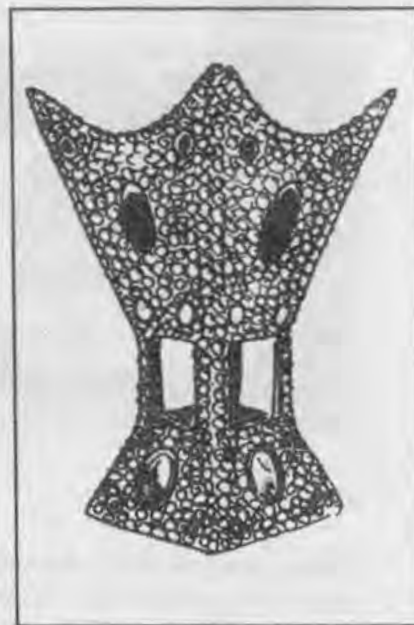


khanjar

ma:luumáat thaqaafiyyah (Cultural tips) معلومات ثقافية

The Gulf Arabs (both male and female) are fond of perfumes. Every home in the Gulf has at least one mijmar (*incense burner*), and these take many forms, depending on fashion and location. They are usually made of earthenware, although nowadays people often have electric ones.

A few live coals are put into the burner, and a sweet-smelling substance is dropped on the coals. This could be sandalwood (the most expensive if it is of good quality), frankincense (a dried resin from Oman or Yemen), or a homemade mixture of resins and woods mixed with sugar, all of which are sold in the souk either loose or in small metal tins.



Clouds of perfumed smoke then rise into the room for half an hour or so. The mijmar is placed in the sitting room for guests, or brought out at the end of a visit and passed around the company, so that the smoke can be wafted into their clothes before they depart.

Hiwaar 3 (Dialogue 3) حوار ٣

CD 1, TR 6, 2:24

Sally wants to buy a gold chain, and she has been looking in the shop-windows of the gold souk in Dubai. She sees one she likes, and goes into the shop to enquire.

Sally bi-kám háadhi s-sílsilah?
SáaHib ad-dukkáan háadhi hína?
Sally laa, haadhiik hináak.

The shopkeeper takes the chain out of the window but Sally sees that it is too short.

Sally háadhi gaSíirah. fiith :índ-ak wáaHidah áTwal?

SáaHib ad-dukkáan

(selecting a different chain)
ná:am. háadhi áTwal
shwáyyah.

Sally

háadhi áHsan. bi-kam?

SáaHib ad-dukkáan

lálHDHah min fádHI-ich . . .
(he weighs it) háadhi
bi-miitáin wa-thalaathiin
dirham

Sally

kathiir!

SáaHib ad-dukkáan

háadha dháhab ithnáin
wa-ishriin qiiráaT. miitáin
dirham zain?

Sally

laa, kathiir. khallii-ha
bi-míyyah wa thamaaniin.

SáaHib ad-dukkáan

laa, ma:a l-ásaf, muu
múmkin. a:Tíl-ni miyyah wa
tis:iin.

Sally

zain. miyyah wa tis:iin
dirham. (handing him the
money) tfádDHDHal

- (a) What is the price the shopkeeper first gives Sally?
- (b) What reason does he give her for the high price?
- (c) What price do they agree on?

mulaaHaDHaat (Notes) ملاحظات

1 khallii-ha (leave it)

This is another imperative verb. You also hear the shortened form **khall** for the masculine in many places. **shuuf (-i) (look)**, and **khudh (-i), (take)** are two more imperative verbs which are very common.

2 ma:a l-ásaf (sorry)

This literally means *with (the) regret*, and does not change no matter who it refers to.

3 t(a)fádDHDHal

This is a very common expression. It is used when politely offering someone something, to take a seat, accept food or (as here) money, enter a room, car etc. It is actually an imperative verb, so it takes the ending **-i** when addressed to a woman, and **-u** when addressed to more than one person. The first **a** is often omitted in normal speech.

ma:luumáat thaqaafíyyah (Cultural tips) معلومات ثقافية

One of the most amazing sights in any town in the Gulf is that of the gold souk, where dozens of small shops blaze with light and the glitter of gold. Generally the gold is either 18 or 22ct., and it looks yellower than the 9ct. gold usually sold in the West.

Jewellery is always sold by weight, and craftsmanship doesn't much affect the price. Arab ladies often sell back their older pieces of jewellery to be melted down and made into new pieces, so that they can keep abreast of fashion. Nobody is interested in second-hand jewellery, although old silver is collected by tourists. The shopkeeper will always expect to bargain with you, and you should never accept his first price.

sílsilah (saláasil)

chain

haadhiik

that one

gaSiir

short

áTwal

longer

áHsan

better

lálHDHah (laHaDHáat)

moment

kathiir

a lot, too much

dháhab

gold

qiiráaT

carat

khallii-ha

leave it, let it be

ma:a l-ásaf

I am sorry

muu

not

múmkin

possible

t(a)fádDHDHal

welcome, here you are

ta:biiráat háammah (Key phrases) تعبيرات هامة

CD 1, TR 6, 3:40

Asking for something in a shop

ariid ashtári zooliyyah *I want to buy a carpet.*
 ariid ashúuf bass *I just want to look.*
 fiih :ind-ak khánjar *Do you have a dagger?*

Asking how much things cost

húwwa/híyya bi-kám? *How much is it?*
 bi-kám háadha l-khánjar? *How much is this dagger?*
 (masc.)
 bi-kám háadhü d-dállah? *How much is this coffee*
 pot? (fem.)
 bi-kám háadhool *How much are these?*
 (plural)
 kam tiríid? *How much do you want?,*
What do I owe you?

Saying what things cost

húwwa bi-riyáal/. . . -áat *It (masc.) costs a riyal . . .*
 riyals.
 híyya bi-diináar/. . . danaaniir *It (fem.) costs a dinar. . .*
 dinars.
 haadhool bi-dirham/. . . daráahim *These cost a dirham/. . .*
 dirhams.

al-film bi-kam? húwwa bi-riyáal *How much is the film? It costs one*
 riyal.

bi-kám al-mijmar? húwwa bi-sába:ah daráahim *How much is the*
 incense burner? *It is seven dirhams.*

az-zooliyyah bi-kám? híyya bi-sittah miyyat dirham *How much is*
 the carpet? *It costs 600 dirhams.*

bi-kám ash-shán Tab? híyya bi-khámsah danaaniir *How much is the*
 suitcase? *It is 5 dinars.*

Talking about what things are called

háadha aish ísm-uh bi-l-:árabi min fáDHI-ak? *What is this called in*
 Arabic please?

ísm-uh khánjar *It (masc.) is called a dagger.*

ísm-ha sílsilah *It (fem.) is called a chain.*

Describing things

húwwa	gadüim/jadiid	<i>It is old/new (masc.)</i>
híyya	gadüimah/jadiidah?	<i>Is it old/new? (fem.)</i>
	fáDHDHah?	<i>silver?</i>
	dháhab?	<i>gold?</i>
	Suuf?	<i>wool?</i>
	gú Tun?	<i>cotton?</i>
	min :umáan?	<i>from Oman?</i>
	min iiráan?	<i>from Persia?</i>
	min bakistáan?	<i>from Pakistan?</i>
húwwa/híyya (wáajid) zain		<i>It is (very) good, nice.</i>
muu zain		<i>not good.</i>
gháali/gháalyah		<i>expensive.</i>
rakhüS/-ah		<i>cheap.</i>
kabiir/-ah		<i>big.</i>
Saghüir/-ah		<i>small.</i>
háadha muu gháali		<i>That's not expensive.</i>
háadha wáajid ghaali		<i>That's very expensive.</i>
háadha kathüir		<i>That's a lot.</i>

Comparing things

háadha ákbar min haadháak *This is bigger than that one.*
 :ind-ak wáaHid árkháS? *Do you have a cheaper one?*

Saying you will take something
 áakhudh háadha

I will take this (one).

núqaT naHwiyyah (Grammar points) نقط نحوية

1 How to say *have*

There is no verb *to have* in Arabic. Instead Arabs use a preposition, :ind, meaning something like *with, in the possession of* and a pronoun suffix.

It is common but not essential to state the subject or the person before :ind:

ána :ind-i sayyáarah *I have a car* (lit. with me [is] a car).
 muHámmad :ind-uh marsáidis? *Does Mohammad have a Mercedes?*
 laa, :ind-uh toyóota *No, he has a Toyota.*

(ána) :ind-i	<i>I have</i>
(ínta) :ind-ak	<i>you have (masc.)</i>
(ínti) :ind-ich	<i>you have (fem.)</i>
(húwwa) :ind-uh	<i>he (it) has</i>
(híyya) :ind-haa	<i>she (it) has</i>
(níHna) :ind-na	<i>we have</i>
(íntu) :ind-kum	<i>you have</i>
(húmma) :ind-hum	<i>they have</i>

Insight

You sometimes hear :ind shortened to :id, especially before suffixes beginning with a consonant, e.g. :id-na (*we have*).

2 *That, those*

These are not used so frequently as in English, and are usually restricted to emphatic or contrastive situations. The three forms are:

haadháak (masc. sing.) haadhíik (fem. sing.) haadhooláak (plural)

háadha maHáll kabíir *This (is) a big shop (masc.).*
 wa haadháak Saghíir *And that (one) is small.*

háadhi zooliyya iraaníyya *This is a Persian rug (fem.).*
 wa haadhíik zoolíyya *And that (one) is a Pakistani*
 baakistaaníyya *rug.*

3 How to say prices and numbers of things

Use this section for reference, and you will find that with practice it becomes second nature to you!

(a) To say *one* of anything in Arabic use the singular noun followed by WáaHid (masc.) or wáaH(i)dah (fem.)

riyáal wáaHid *one riyal (masc.)*
 sayyáarah wáaHidah *one car (fem.)*

(b) To say *two* of anything, Arabic uses a special form called the dual. To form this, add -áin to the singular.

riyaaláin *two riyals (masc.)*
 sayyaar(a)táin *two cars (fem.) (the a in brackets is often omitted in pronunciation)*

The word *two* is only used for special emphasis, after the noun:

waladáin ithnáin *two boys*
 bintáin thintáin *two girls*

Insight

The stress moves to the end of the word. If the word has the feminine ending -ah, this changes to -at.

(c) Between three and ten of anything, use the number (agreeing in gender with the noun) followed by the noun in its plural form:

thaláathah daráahim *three dirhams*
 thaláath sayyaaráat *three cars*

(d) For 11 and above, use the independent gender (i.e. unchanging) number and *singular* noun:

iHdá:shar dirham 11 dirhams
iHdá:shar sayyáarah 11 cars

For quick reference, use the table below:

1	2	3-10	11+	English
dírham	dirhamáin	daráahim	dírham	dirham
riyáal	riyaaláin	riyaaláat	riyáal	riyal
diináar	diinaaráin	danaaníir	diináar	dinar
wálad	waladáin	awláad	wálad	boy
sayyáarah	sayyaaratáin	sayyaaráat	sayyáarah	car

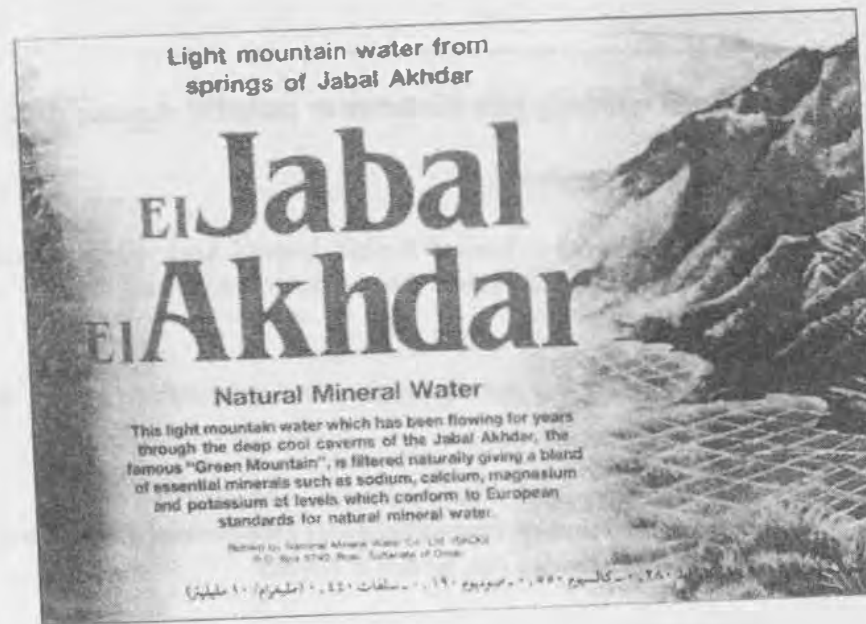
4 Describing things

In Arabic a describing word, or adjective, comes after a noun and has to agree with it. Nearly all adjectives form their feminine by adding *-ah*. The same feminine ending is also used when describing plural things (as opposed to people).

míjmar kabíir a big incense burner (masc. noun)
sílsilah rakhíiSah a cheap chain (fem. noun)
bayáatri Saghíirah small batteries (plural of things)

A few adjectives, mostly referring to the main colours, have irregular feminine forms, e.g.

ábyaDH/báiDHa white (masc./fem.)
áswad/sóoda black
ákhDHar/kháDHra green
áHmar/Hámra red



áSfar/Sáfra yellow
ázzrag/zárga blue
al-jábal al-ákhDHar the green mountain
sayyáarah Hámra a red car

5 Comparing things

When you say that something is bigger or taller than something else, you are using a comparative adjective. English usually forms this comparative by adding *-er*, but Arabic makes changes in the word, and the forms will be given as they occur.

These adjectives are the same for both masculine and feminine, and the word for *than* is *min*.

zain good áHsan better
rakhíis cheap árkhSa cheaper
kabiir big ákbar bigger
Saghíir small áSghar smaller

wáaHid áHsan	<i>a better one</i>
dállah árkhās	<i>a cheaper coffee pot</i>
sáalim ákbar min ráashid	<i>Salim is older than Rashid.</i>
fáaTimah áSghar min máryam	<i>Fatimah is younger than Mariam.</i>

Insight

When applied to people, *kabiir* and *Saghūr* mean *old* and *young*.

The same formation is used for the superlative (ending in *-est* in English).

(a) *al-* noun followed by *al-* comparative:

<i>al-fúndug al-ákbar</i>	<i>the biggest hotel</i>
<i>aT-Táyyarah al-ásra:</i>	<i>the fastest aeroplane</i>

Note that there is no change for gender.

(b) comparative without *-al* followed by noun without *-al*:

<i>ákbar fúndug</i>	<i>the biggest hotel</i>
<i>ásra: Tayyarah</i>	<i>the fastest aeroplane</i>
<i>áTwal wálad</i>	<i>the tallest boy</i>
<i>ásghar sayyarah</i>	<i>the smallest car</i>

The second construction (b) is more common in practice.

6 The words for *not*

muu or *muub* is used with nouns and adjectives, and *maa* with verbs and all other words.

<i>aDH-DHahráan muu</i>	<i>Dhahran is not far from</i>
<i>ba:iidah :an al-baHráin</i>	<i>Bahrain.</i>
<i>háadha muub zain</i>	<i>This is not good.</i>
<i>ána maa min ingiltérra</i>	<i>I am not from England.</i>
<i>maa :índ-na dállah</i>	<i>We do not have a cheap</i>
<i>rakhiiSah</i>	<i>coffee pot.</i>
<i>ána maa aríid ashtári dháhab</i>	<i>I don't want to buy gold.</i>

tamriináat (Exercises) تمرينات

40 CD 1, TR 6, 4:32

- 1 With a little practice, you will soon get used to understanding numbers in Arabic. Listen to the recording or read the transcript and note down the five prices you hear.
- 2 How would you say the following prices in Arabic?
 - (a) 60 dirhams (Dh)
 - (b) 750 baiza
 - (c) 10 riyals
 - (d) 2 dinars
 - (e) 1 dinar 50 fils
 - (f) half a riyal
 - (g) 18 dinars
 - (h) 5 Dh
- 3 You are looking for souvenirs but you are not sure what these objects are called. How would you ask what they are, using the correct form of *háadha*, *háadhi* and *ism-uh*, *ism-ha*?



- | | |
|---|--------------|
| (a) <i>zoolíyyah</i> | (carpet) |
| (b) <i>dállah</i> | (coffee pot) |
| (c) <i>Hálag</i> | (earrings) |
| (d) <i>bánjari</i> | (bracelet) |
| (e) <i>mákhlah</i> (pronounced <i>mák-Halah</i>) | (kohl pot) |

Now ask how much each one costs, using the correct pronoun *huwwa*, *hiyya*.

- 4 You are working in Abu Dhabi and need to do some shopping. Look first at the new words below then play your part in the conversation.

ínta	Ask if he has any pens
SáaHib ad-dukkáan	<i>ná:am hína. ayy loon tiriid?</i>
ínta	Say you'll have a black one and a red one.
SáaHib ad-dukkáan	tiriid shay tháni?
ínta	Say you want a packet of aspirins.
SáaHib ad-dukkáan	<i>maal árba:ah w :ishríin aw síttah w thalaathiin Hábbah?</i>
ínta	Say 36.
SáaHib ad-dukkáan	shay tháni?
ínta	Ask how much the sunglasses over there are.
SáaHib ad-dukkáan	<i>khámsah w khamsiin dirham</i>
ínta	Say no, that's too much and ask how much you owe him
SáaHib ad-dukkáan	<i>khámsah wa :ishríin dirham</i>

maal	<i>belonging to, pertaining to, applying to, for, etc.</i> (placed between two nouns, it implies any kind of connection between them)
gálam (aglám)	<i>pen</i>
loon (alwáan)	<i>colour</i>
:ilbat asbriin	<i>packet of aspirins</i>
Hábbah	<i>pills</i>
aw	<i>or</i>
naDHDHáarah (naDHDHaaráat)	<i>(pair of) glasses</i>
shams	<i>sun</i>
naDHDHáarah maal shams	<i>pair of sun-glasses (lit. glasses for sun)</i>

- 5 Write out these sentences using the correct form of the adjective given in brackets:

- (a) *Faridah is hungry.* (joo:áan)
 (b) *I (male) am thirsty.* (:aTsháan)
 (c) *Are you (female) tired?* (ta:báan)
 (d) *Arabic is not difficult.* (Sa:b)
 (e) *The Mercedes is a good car.* (jáyyid)
 (f) *Aisha is a beautiful girl.* (jamíil)

al-lúghah al-:arabiyah

Arabic, the Arabic language

jáyyid

good (quality)

al-khaTT al-:arabi (Arabic script) الخط العربي

In this unit you will learn to read banknotes. There are several new letters involved, but they will be repeated and explained more fully in future units. At least, if you are solvent, you will have a ready-made crib in English on the back of the note!

The values are generally printed in the middle of the Arabic side of the note at the bottom, and the writing is usually quite clear, although some countries use decorative calligraphy which is more difficult to read. The number of units is written before the currency name, except for **waaHid** according to the rules given in this lesson, so look carefully to see where the currency name begins.

Wherever you are in the Arabian peninsula, your local currency will be either riyals, dirhams or dinars. Here is the full set of these currencies, phonetically-transcribed and in Arabic:

riyaal رِيَال
 dirham دِرْهَم
 diinaar دِينَار

riyaaláat رِيَالَات
 daráahim دَرَاهِم
 danaaniir دَنَانِير

These forms reflect the Arabic spelling more accurately than the English equivalents printed on the notes. Remember again that, in

Arabic, the short vowels are not usually written, so for instance, dirham is written simply d-r-h-m. The long vowels (doubled in our transcription: aa, ii, uu) are, however, represented in the script (so riyáal is r-y-aa-l).



The consonants involved in the money words are:

Name	Initial	Medial	Final	Separate	Pronunciation
alif	ا	آ	آ	ا	(see below)
taa	ت	ت	ت	ت	t
daal	د	د	د	د	d
raa'	ر	ر	ر	ر	r
miim	م	م	م	م	m
nuun	ن	ن	ن	ن	n
haa'	ه	ه	ه	ه	h
yaa'	ي	ي	ي	ي	y

You met the letter *alif* in Unit 1 as the first letter of the word al- (ال) *the*. In that word it represents a short 'a', but in the middle of words it usually represents a *long a* (aa) in the transcription. There is a long *a* in riyáal and in diináar. The singular dírhām does not have one, but its plural daráahim does. (Remember that the plural in Arabic is only used after the numerals 3–10, so expect it only on 5 and 10 unit notes.)

r Look for the initial form in riyáal رِيَال and dírhām دِرْهَم, and the final in (plural) danaaniir دَنَانِير.

y is used to mark the long ii vowels in diináar دِينَار and its plural danaaniir دَنَانِير.

l occurs at the end of riyáal رِيَال.

t occurs at the end of riyaaláat رِيَالَات where it has its independent form after the non-joiner alif (here in its combination form laam-alif, see alphabet table).

d in its initial form occurs at the beginning of dírhām دِرْهَم and diináar دِينَار and their respective plurals.

h occurs in dírhām دِرْهَم and its plural (in both cases in its initial form after the non-joiners r and alif respectively).

m It occurs here as the final letter of dírhām دِرْهَم and its plural daráahim دَرَاهِم.

Practise recognising these words on your own bank notes or the photographs in this unit and make note of the individual letters for future use.

Insight

On the 20 and 50 unit notes, an alif is added to the singular of the currency name. This is a rule of written Arabic, and does not alter the pronunciation.

Test yourself

This test covers the main vocabulary, phrases and language points given in Unit 5. If you are not sure about your answers, go back to the dialogues and exercises for some revision, before going on to Unit 6. For the answers, see the Key to the exercises.

You are on holiday in Dubai and you want to buy some old silver as a souvenir of your holiday. Play your part in the following conversation:

The shopkeeper greets you.

- 1 Tell the shopkeeper you just want to look around.
- 2 Ask if he has any daggers.
[He shows you some, and offers you one but you prefer another]
- 3 Say No, this one here.
- 4 Say it's not a good one, and ask if he has got a better one.
- 5 Ask him if it is old.
- 6 Ask how much it costs.
[The shopkeeper asks for 300 riyals.]
- 7 Tell him that's very expensive.
- 8 Offer him 200 riyals.
- 9 Say you're sorry but you have only got 250.
- 10 Tell him OK, you'll take this one.

6

انت جوعان؟

inta joo:áan?

Are you hungry?

In this unit you will learn how to

- Buy snacks and drinks
- Express your wants and preferences
- Say what you like and dislike

New words and phrases

CD 1, TR 7

Listen to the recording.

Hiwaar 1 (Dialogue 1) حوار ١

CD 1, TR 7, 0:16

In Matrah Jim and Eleanor are shopping with Khaled. He suggests that they stop at one of the drink stalls in the souk.

Khaled	tiHibb tishrab aish?
Jim	fiih aish :ind-hum?
Khaled	(asking the shopkeeper) aish :ind-kum min mashruubáat?
SaaHib ad-dukkáan	:ind-na shaay, gáhwah wa :aSiir burtugáal w-laimóon
Jim	ána áakhudh gáhwah bi-dúun Haliib idha kaan múmkin
Khaled	wa inti, aish tiriidíin tishrabiin?
Eleanor	ána afáDHDHal :aSiir laimóon
SaaHib ad-dukkáan	laimóon bi-shikar?
Eleanor	na:am
Khaled	wa-ána áakhudh shaay
SaaHib ad-dukkáan	zain. wáaHid shaay, wáaHid gáhwah w-wáaHid :aSiir laimóon.

tiHibb/-iin	you like, would you like?
tishrab/-iin	you drink
fiih aish ...?	what is there ...?
mashruubáat	drinks
shaay, chaay	tea
gáhwah	coffee
:aSiir	juice
burtugáal	orange
laimóon	lemon, lime
áakhudh	I take, I'll have
bi-dúun	without
Haliib	milk
idha kaan	if
tiriid/ -iin	you want, wish
afáDHDHal	I prefer
bi	with
shikar	sugar

True or false?

- (a) The stall sells two kinds of fruit juice.
 (b) Eleanor chooses lime juice without sugar.
 (c) Jim and Khaled both have tea.

mulaaHaDHáat (Notes) ملاحظات

- 1 fiih aish :ind-hum (*What do they have?*, lit. *there is what with them?*) and aish :ind-kum min mashruubáat (*What do you have (in the way) of drinks.*)

The use of fiih in this kind of sentence is optional.

- 2 wáaHid shaay
 When you are buying drinks or dishes in a restaurant, use the singular form of the drink and the masculine (independent) number. In this kind of context, wáaHid and ithnáin usually come before the noun, for emphasis.

Hiwaar 2 (Dialogue 2) حوار ٢

CD 1, TR 7, 1:21

Mike Smith is a surveyor working in Abu Dhabi. He and Salim ar-Rumaihi, an associate in his firm, are driving to Al-Ain, having made an early start.

Salim	wa l-láHi, ána joo:áan!
Mike	ána kamáan. khalíi-na nóogaf fii háadhi sh-shiishah w- nashtári shwayyat akil. múmkin fiih :ind-hum sandwiicháat.

They stop at a petrol station which has a small shop selling drinks and snacks.

Salim	fiih aish :ind-kum min ákil min fádHI-ak?
SáaHib ad-dukkáan	:ind-na sandwiicháat w-baiDH w-kaik w-shibs
Salim	fiih aish min sandwiicháat :ind-kum?
SáaHib ad-dukkáan	:ind-na dajáaj w-láHam w-baiDH má:a SálaTah
Salim	tiriid táakul aish yaa maayk?

Mike

ana áakhudh sandwiich dajáaj. múmkin
tisawwii-li sandwiich baiDH bi-dúun Sála-
Tah min fáDHI-ak?

SáaHib ad-dukkáan

Táb:an, wa l-akh?

Salim

ána áakhudh sandwiicháin maal láHam
shay ghair?

SáaHib ad-dukkáan

Salim

ná:am a:Tii-ni shwáyyat kaik kamáan.

SáaHib ad-dukkáan

zain. wáaHid sandwiich maal dajáaj, ithnáin
maal láHam wa wáaHid baiDH bi-dúun
SálaTah, w kaik wáaHid. nasawwii-ha l-Hiin.

- (a) What words mean *we'll buy a little food*?
- (b) What kind of food is available apart from sandwiches?
- (c) What extra thing does Salim order?



"Coca-Cola" is a registered trademark
of The Coca-Cola Company

mulaaHaDHáat (Notes) ملاحظات

- 1 kamáan (also)**
This is a popular borrowed word from northern (i.e. Egyptian, Jordanian, etc.) Arabic. The true Gulf Arabic is *ba:d*, or the more formal *áyDHan*.
- 2 sandwiich maal dajáaj (chicken sandwich)**
An example of the word *maal* associating two things with each other. The simple possessive *sandwiich dajáaj* can also be used.
- 3 má:a, bi-**
Both mean *with*, but *má:a* always means *along with, together with*, while *bí-* also means *by means of*, as in *bi-sikkiin with a knife*.

joo:áan

hungry

kamáan

also, as well

khallii-na

leave us, let us

nóogaf

we stop

nashtári

we buy

ák(i)l

food

shwáyyat ákil

a little food, something to eat

sand(a)wiich (-aat)

sandwich

báiDHah (baiDH)

egg

kaik

pastry, cake

shibs

crisps, chips

dajáajah (dajáaj)

chicken

sandwiich maal dajáaj

chicken sandwich

láH(a)m

meat (excluding poultry)

má:a

with, along with, together with

SálaTah

salad

táakul/iin

you eat (masc./fem.)

tisáwwi

you make, do

tisawwii-li

lit. you make for me

Táb:an

of course, naturally

al-akh

lit. the brother, here a polite

reference to the other person

ghair

other than, else

nasáwwi

we do, make; will do, will make

al-Hiin

now, right away

Hiwaar 3 (Dialogue 3) حوار ٣

CD 1, TR 7, 2:51

Mike and Salim have been waiting for the food to be prepared.

SáaHib ad-dukkáan	as-sandawiicháat jáahizah. tiriidúun tishrabúun shay?
Salim	fiih aish :ind-kum báarid?
SáaHib ad-dukkáan	fiih Haliib, :aSiiir, sóodah, kóola, sávan-aap w maay masáafi.
Salim	aish tiriid tishrab ya maayk?
Mike	ayy shay - láakin maa aHíbb al-Haliib. fiih aish :ind-kum min :aSiiir?
SáaHib ad-dukkáan	:ind-na burtugáal, laimóon, ámbah, ananáas, mooz.
Salim	múmkin ta:Tii-na tashkiil bi :ásharah daráahim?
SáaHib ad-dukkáan	na:am, zain.
Salim	háadha kúll-uh kám?
SáaHib ad-dukkáan	háadha yisáawi :ásharah záayid sittah záayid tís:ah wa nuSS. khámsah wa :ashriin wa nuSS
Salim	(handing him the money) tfáDHDHal

jáahiz	ready
báarid	cold (of things)
maay	water
maay masáafi	Masafi water (mineral water of the UAE)
ayyshay	anything
maa	not (before verbs)
maa aHíbb	I don't like
ámbah, hámbah	mango
ananáas	pineapple
mooz	bananas
ta:Tii-na	you give us

tashkiil (tashkiiláat)
kúll-uh
yisáawi
yá:ni

selection, variety
altogether, lit. all of it
equals, makes (of money)
I mean, that is to say

- What drink does Mike not like?
- What does Salim suggest they have to drink?
- How much were they charged for the food?

mulaaHaDHáat (Notes) ملاحظات

- fiih aish :ind-kum báarid?
Where we would say in English *What do you have that is cold*, in Arabic it is sufficient to say *What do you have cold*.
- ayy shay (anything)
ayy can mean *any* or *which*? according to the context and tone of voice.

Insight

yá:ni lit. *it means*. This is perhaps the most over-used word in Arabic (all dialects). Depending on the tone of voice, it has a thousand meanings, the most common being 'I am having a pause to think' (Eng. 'um, er'). Start listening for it and practise using it right away!

ma:luumáat thaqaafiyah (Cultural tips)

معلومات ثقافية

Everywhere in the Gulf you see little stalls set up in the markets where fresh fruits are squeezed for juice. The most common are orange and lime or lemon. Restaurants often have a colourful row of containers of fruit juices in the window.

Fresh fruit is widely available, as orange and lemon trees fruit in the Gulf in the winter, and mangoes and papayas and other exotic fruits ripen during the summer. Small shops selling snacks and drinks may just have a fridge full of cartons and cans of drinks costing only a few fils or baiza each. People drink a lot of mineral water and all the Gulf countries have 'branded' and bottled spring water.

ta:biiráat háammah (Key phrases) تعبيرات هامة

CD 1, TR 7, 3:44

How to ask someone what they'd like to eat or drink

aish tiHíbb tíshrab? *What would you like to drink?*
 aish tiríid táakul? *What do you want to eat?*

How to ask about food and drink

aish :índ-kum min mashruubáat? *What (sort) of drinks do you have?*
 aish :índ-kum min ákil? *What (sort) of food do you have?*
 fiih aish min sandwiicháat :índ-kum? *What (kinds) of sandwiches do you have?*
 fiih aish :índ-kum báarid? *What do you have that is cold? (lit. What is with you of cold (drinks)?*

How to order food and drink

(ána) áakhudh :aSíir laimóon bi-shíkar *I'll take lemon juice with sugar*
 (ána) áakhudh sandwiich maal dajáaj bi-dúun. SálSat filfil áHmar *I'll take a chicken sandwich without red pepper sauce.*
 a:Tii-ni shwáyyat kaik *Give me some cake.*

How to express your likes and dislikes

ána aHíbb ash-shaay *I like tea.*
 maa aHíbb al-Halíib. *I don't like milk.*

How to express your wants and preferences

(ínta) tiríid gáhwah? *Do you want coffee?*
 laa, maa ańid gáhwah *No, I don't want coffee.*
 tifáDHDHal shaay? *Do you prefer tea?*
 na:am, afáDHDHal shaay *Yes, I prefer tea.*

How to ask someone to do something for you

múmkín tisawwii-li sandwiich *Could you make [for] me an egg sandwich, please?*
 baiDH min faDHi-ak? *Could you give us a selection for 10Dh?*
 múmkín ta:Tii-na tashkiil bi :ásharah daráahim?

How to ask what it all comes to

háadha kúll-uh kám? *How much is all of that?*

núqaT naHwiyyah (Grammar points) نقاط نحوية

1 Verbs in the present tense

There are only two tenses in Arabic, the present tense and the past tense. The present tense is used for all actions which are not yet complete, and the past for all actions which have been completed.

All Arabic verbs are formed from a basic stem; both tenses are formed by adding prefixes and/or suffixes to the stem.

The present tense stem for the word *to drink* is -shrab, so here is the verb with its prefixes and suffixes, separated by hyphens for clarity.

The same prefixes and suffixes are used for virtually all verbs in the present tense, although the stem may change in certain verbs. However, the vowels of the prefixes are often modified to help pronunciation. In this unit, for example, you have áakul (*I eat*), yáakul (*he eats*), táakul (*she eats*), and nóogaf (*we stop*), yóogaf, tóogaf. See the appendix for both of these types of verbs, and for present or past stems.

Singular	
á-shrab	<i>I drink, am drinking</i>
tí-shrab	<i>you (masc.) drink, are drinking</i>
ti-shrab-iin	<i>you (fem.) drink, etc.</i>
yi-shrab	<i>he drinks</i>
ti-shrab	<i>she drinks</i>
Plural	
ná-shrab	<i>we drink</i>
ti-shrab-úun	<i>you (plural) drink</i>
yi-shráb-uun	<i>they drink</i>

Insight

The pronouns are not used unless necessary for clarity. *tíshrab* and *inta tíshrab* equally mean *you drink, you are drinking* (masc.).

2 Saying what you want or don't want

yiriid = *he wants*: The present tense stem is *-riid*, so you need to add the prefix (and suffix if required):

(*inta*) *tiriid gáhwah?* *Do you want coffee?*
laa, maa ariid gáhwah *No, I don't want coffee.*

Often you can use this verb with a second one as in *I want to drink ...* and where you would use the word *to* in English, Arabic uses a second present tense verb. This kind of construction is called a *verb string*.

aish tiriidiin tishrabiin *What do you (fem.) want to drink?*
(lit. what [do] you-want you-drink?)
tiriidúun tishrabúun shay? *Do you (plural) want to drink anything?*
nariid nashúuf bass *We just want to look.*
ariid ashtári khánjar *I want to buy a dagger.*

3 Saying that you prefer something

yifáDHDHal (*to prefer*): The present tense stem is *faDHDHal*.

tifáDHDHal shaay aw gáhwah? *Do you prefer tea or coffee?*
afáDHDHal shaay *I prefer tea.*

Insight

Do not confuse this with *tfaDHDHal* used when offering something to someone, where the 't' is part of the stem.

4 Saying that you like or dislike things

If you are talking of something your feelings don't change about, use the verb *yiHíbb* (*to like, love*).

Note that what you are talking about must be definite; that is, it must have *al-* (*the*) before it, as in French '*j'aime le chocolat*':

(*inta*) *tiHíbb ar-riyáaDHah?* *Do you like sport?*
laa, maa aHíbb ar-riyáaDHah *No, I don't like sport.*
(*inti*) *maa tiHíbbiin al-láHam?* *Don't you (fem.) like meat?*
ána aHíbb al-mooz *I like bananas.*

5 Saying you might be able to do something

In Arabic you put the word *múmkín* before the verb to express the possibility of doing something:

múmkín tisawwii-li sandwiich *Could you make [for]*
baiDH bi-dúun SálaTah? *me an egg sandwich*
without salad?

Note that the verb must agree with the person (potentially) doing the action, but *múmkín* never changes.

6 Me/my, you/your, him/his, etc.

These words belong to the class of pronouns. The independent pronouns (*ana, inta, etc.*) introduced in Unit 1 are used when the person referred to is doing something.

However, there is another set of pronouns, in the form of suffixes, in such phrases as:

aish akhbaar-ak *What is your news?*
ism-i saalim *My name is Salim.*

When used with nouns they express possession (*my, his, our, etc.*), but in Arabic they are also used after verbs and other words to express the equivalent of English *me, him, it, us, etc.*:

nasawwii-ha *we will make her (i.e. it)*

You have already seen these pronouns at work with :ind- the Arabic equivalent of *to have*, but literally meaning *with me, with you, etc.* (see Unit 5).

In this book they are separated from the words they join on to by hyphens for the sake of clarity.

Singular	
-i (-ni with verbs)	<i>me, my</i> (This is the only one which has two distinct forms.)
-ak	<i>you (masc.), your</i>
-ich	<i>you (fem.), your</i>
-uh	<i>him, his, it, its</i>
-ha	<i>her, it, its</i>
Plural	
-na	<i>us, our</i>
-kum	<i>you, your</i>
-hum	<i>them, their</i>

Here are a few examples:

(a) with a noun to show possession of a thing:

isin-i *my name*
ákh-i *my brother*
ism-ak *your name*
ism-uh *his name, its name*

(b) with a verb, where the pronoun is the object of the verb (i.e. the action is done to it):

ashkúr-ak *I thank you*
ashúuf-ak *I (will) see you*
khalíi-na nóogaf *let us stop (lit. let-us we-stop)*

(c) with a preposition:

aish :ind-kum min akil? *What kind of food do you have?*
 (lit. What with you from food?)
tisawwii-li *(you) make for me (li 'for' + -i 'me')*

Note the following points:

(a) When a noun ends in -ah, the 'hidden t' appears and the -ah changes to -at before the suffix:

as-sayyáarah *the car*
sayyáarat-ak *your (masc.) car*
sayyáarat muHámmad *Muhammad's car*

(b) No word for *the* is used when a pronoun suffix is added.

(c) To say *my, me*, use -i with nouns or prepositions, and -ni with verbs. All the other suffixes are the same whatever type of word they are used with:

Sadiig-i *my friend*
jamb-uh *next to him*

múmkin asáa: id-ak *can I help you?*
 a:Tii-ni *give [to] me*

(d) If a word ends in a vowel, this becomes long and stressed, and if the suffix begins with a vowel, this vowel is omitted:

ma:áa-ha (má:a+-ha) *with her*
 khallii-na (kháll+i--na) *let us*
 aish fii-k? (fii+-ak) *what's the matter with you?*
 (lit. *what [is] in you?*)
 nashtaríi-h (nashtári+-uh) *we buy it (him)*

Most prepositions take a suffix without difficulty, but some have to be modified, and we will point them out to you as you meet them.

Insight

A popular saying demonstrating traditional Arab hospitality: *bait-na báit-kum our house [is] your house, or as we would say, make yourself at home!*

tamriináat (Exercises) تمرينات

CD 1, TR 7, 4:17

1 Five Kuwaitis are buying drinks. Listen to the recording or read the transcript and write down what they are ordering.

chakláit *chocolate*
 lában *yoghurt drink*

2 Which of the following words is the odd one out?

- (a) shaay, Haliib, láHam, gáhwah
- (b) burtugáal, laimóon, ámbah, shíkar
- (c) aríid, áshrab, áakul
- (d) báidHah, akh, dajáaj, sálaTah

- 3 Match the questions below with their correct answers
- (a) aish tíriid tíshrab? 1 :índ-na baiDH w-kaik w-shibs
 - (b) aish :índ-kum min mashruubáat? 2 laa, maa aHíbb al-Haliib
 - (c) háadha kúll-uh kám? 3 háadha :ishriin dirham
 - (d) aish :índ-kum min akil? 4 :índ-na shaay, gáhwah w-:aSiiir burtugáal
 - (e) tiHíbb al-Haliib? 5 ayy shay!
- 4 Look at the juice menu below and answer the questions in Arabic.

JUICE	السعر	عصير
CARROT	- 400 - 4.00	جزر
COCKTAIL	- 400 - 4.00	كوكتيل
MANGO	- 400 - 4.00	مانجو
GRAPE	- 400 - 4.00	عنب
ORANGE	- 300 - 3.00	برتقال
PINEAPPLE	- 300 - 3.00	اناناس
SHAMAM	- 300 - 3.00	شمام
BANANA	- 200 - 2.00	موز
APPLE	- 200 - 2.00	تفاح
PAPPAYA	- 200 - 2.00	خربوز
MIXED FRUIT	- 200 - 2.00	مخلوط
VIMTO	- 050 - 0.50	فيمنتو
TANG	- 050 - 0.50	تانسج
LIME	- 050 - 0.50	ليمون

- (a) :aSiiir al-ámbah húwwa al-ághla aw al-árkhaS?
- (b) bi-kám :aSiiir at-tuffáaH?
- (c) aish fiih bi thaláath míyyat báizah?
- (d) wáaHid mooz wa wáaHid jázar yisáawi kam?
- (e) aish árkhah shay?

tuffáaH *apples*
 jázar *carrots*
 ághla *more/most expensive*

Insight

shawarmah is called doner kebab in the West, and slices are carved off the spit and served with pitta bread and salad. **falaafil** is also known as **Ta:amiyya**. Both of these snacks are originally Lebanese, and, like much other food from Lebanon and Syria, have been adopted in the Gulf as Arab food.

- (a) What food could you eat if you were a vegetarian?
- (b) What does the man offer you that you don't want?
- (c) You gave the shopkeeper a 20 riyal note. How much change does he give you?

CD 1, TR 7, 6:11

- 7 You are talking about coffee with some friends from Abu Dhabi.
 - (a) Tell them you like it.
 - (b) Tell them you prefer it with milk.
 - (c) Say you don't like coffee with sugar.
 - (d) Thank them and say you don't want one now.
- 8 Your friend Ahmed is visiting you.
 - (a) Ask him if he wants anything to eat.
 - (b) Ask him if he'd like chicken or meat.
 - (c) Say you'll make a chicken sandwich for him.
 - (d) Ask him if he wants red pepper sauce.

al-khatt al-ʿarabi (Arabic script) الخط العربي

Vowels in Arabic

As you know, short vowels are not normally represented in everyday Arabic script, but only in children's text books, the Holy Koran and classical texts used by scholars, where they are indicated by small marks above and below the consonants like this:

بِسْمِ اللّٰهِ الرَّحْمٰنِ الرَّحِیْمِ

This way of writing is possible in Arabic because the language uses a restricted number of word patterns. For example, if C represents any consonant, there is no native (written) Arabic word which can look like CiCuC, while CuCi (and CaCaC, CaCiC and others) are common. Frankly, much is left to guesswork. Hamad (a man's name) and the word Hamd *praise* as in al-Hamdu li-llaah are written identically in the Arabic script. It was once said 'In other languages one has to read to be able to understand: in Arabic one has to understand in order to read'. This, as far as reading aloud is concerned, is not far from the truth. As your knowledge of the language grows, 'providing' the short vowels becomes much easier, as the context usually makes it clear which possible combination is meant. At this stage, reading road signs and notices and so on, you will learn what to expect as your vocabulary increases, and this is the only way to tackle the problem.

However, long vowels are much more important than short ones, and are consistently shown except in a very few common words. To identify word structures you should look for these long vowels. There are only three long vowels recognized in Arabic. These are aa, uu, and ii. The other two used in this book, oo and ai, are regarded as variants of uu and ii respectively, and are written identically to them. aa is always written with an alif (except in one or two common exceptions), and this letter has no other sound in the language.

At the beginning of a word alif usually represents a short a, as in الـ al- *the* (see Unit 1). ii The word دينار *dinar* illustrates the use of the Arabic letter yaa' to mark the long ii in the first syllable. It is easily recognized as it is the only Arabic letter with two dots under it. This same letter can mark the sound ai as in bait *house*.

uu The third long vowel marker is the letter waaw. It has only two forms و and و as it does not join to the following letter. It is easy to recognize, as it looks like a large comma with a hollow top. It also marks the vowel oo.

7

العائلة al-:aa'ilah The family

In this unit you will learn how to

- Talk about your family
- Talk about more than one person or thing
- Talk about people's occupations
- Say what you do every day

Note: Until this unit, the stress has been marked on every word so that you could become accustomed to pronouncing words correctly. By now you will be getting a feel for the language, so the stress is only given when a word appears for the first time in the vocabulary.

New words and phrases

↻ CD 2, TR 1

Listen to the recording.

Hiwaar 1 (Dialogue 1) حوار ١

↻ CD 2, TR 1, 0:12

In Muscat, Samira is asking Eleanor about her children.

Samira	kaif al-awlaad?
Eleanor	bi-khair, al-Hamdu li l-laah
Samira	kam jaahil :ind-ich al-Hiin?
Eleanor	thalaathah, walad w bintain
Samira	(<i>laughing</i>) thalaathah bass?
Eleanor	(<i>laughing with her</i>) aywa, w inti?
Samira	niHna :ind-na sab:ah, thalaathah awlaad w arba: banaat
Eleanor	maa shaa' allaah!
Samira	al-awlaad kam :umr-hum?
Eleanor	al-walad :umr-uh ithna:shar sanah, wa l-bint al-akbar :asharah, wa l-bint aS-Saghiirah sab: sanawaat
Samira	humma wain?
Eleanor	humma saakiniin ma:a l-waalidah, :ala shaan laazim yiruuHuun al-madrasah
Samira	al-marrah al-gaadimah, laazim tijiibiin-hum li :umaan
Eleanor	in shaa' allaah

wálad (awláad)

jáahil (jiháal)

bint (banáat)

maa sháa' alláah!

:úm(u)r

sánah (sanawáat or siniin)

sáakin (saakiniin)

wáalidah

má:a

:ála shaan

láazim

láazim yiruuHuun

mádrasah (madáaris)

márrah (marráat)

gáadim

yijiib

boy, son

child

girl, daughter

good heavens!

life, age

year

staying, resident

mother

with, together with, along
with

because; in order to
(it is) necessary

they have to go
school

time, occasion
next, coming

to bring

True or false?

- (a) Eleanor has three children.
- (b) Samira has eight children altogether.
- (c) Eleanor's son is twelve years old.

mulaaHaDHaat (Notes) ملاحظات

- 1 kam jáahil? (*how many children do you have?*)
Remember, kam always takes the singular where English uses the plural. awlaad (lit. *boys, sons*) is also commonly used to mean *children*.
- 2 bintáin
You have already encountered the dual ending -áin, meaning *two* people or things.
- 3 kam :umr-hum? (lit. *how many [years] their life*)
It is equally possible to say :umr-hum kam sanah? (lit. *their-life how many years?*).

Hiwaar 2 (Dialogue 2) حوار ٢

CD 2, TR 1, 1:19

Abdel Aziz's son Mohammad is a student at Al-Ain University, and he is being interviewed for a student survey.

Interviewer	al-akh min wain?
Mohammad	ana min ash-shu:aiib, laakin :aa'ilat-i saakiniin fii dubay
Interviewer	aishgadd Saar la-k tiskun fi l-ain?
Mohammad	Saar lii thalaththa:shar shahar al-Hiin
Interviewer	ta:jib-ak al-:ain?
Mohammad	na:am ta:jib-ni kathiir

Now the interviewer asks him about his family.

Interviewer	wa waalid-ak aish yishtaghal?
Mohammad	waalid-i mudiir sharikah fii dubay. waalidat-i maa tishtaghal
Interviewer	khabbir-na :an :aa'ilat-ak shwayyah
Mohammad	:ind-i thalaathah ikhwaan w ukhtain. akhuu-ya al-akbar mitzawwaj w yishtaghal :ind abuu-ya. akhuu-ya kariim DHaabiT fi l-jaish, w akhuu-ya l-aSghar maa zaal yidrus. hum muu mitzawwajiin.
Interviewer	w akhwaat-ak?
Mohammad	hum th-thintain mudarrisaat. naadya saakinah :ind-na fi l-bait fii dubay. jamiilah mitzawwajah w tiskun fii abu DHabi. zooj-ha muwaDHDHaf fii wizaarat al-i:laam. :ind-hum thalaathah awlaad.
Interviewer	shukran yaa muHammad

aishgádd
Saar
Saar la-k, li
aishgádd Saar la-k

how long . . .
it happened
it happened to you, me
how long have you . . .
(been somewhere, lived somewhere)

sháh(a)r (shuhúur)
yá:jib
ta:jib-ak
wáalid
yishtaghal
mudiir (múdara)
khábbir
akh (ikhwáan)
ukht (akhawáat)
mitzáwwaj
:ind
ab
DHáabiT (DHubbáaT)
jaish (juyúush)

month
to please
if (fem.) pleases you
father
to work
manager
tell (imperative)
brother
sister
married
with
father
officer
army

7

العائلة al-:aa'ilah The family

In this unit you will learn how to

- Talk about your family
- Talk about more than one person or thing
- Talk about people's occupations
- Say what you do every day

Note: Until this unit, the stress has been marked on every word so that you could become accustomed to pronouncing words correctly. By now you will be getting a feel for the language, so the stress is only given when a word appears for the first time in the vocabulary.

New words and phrases

↪ CD 2, TR 1

Listen to the recording.

Hiwaar 1 (Dialogue 1) حوار ١

↪ CD 2, TR 1, 0:12

In Muscat, Samira is asking Eleanor about her children.

Samira	kaif al-awlaad?
Eleanor	bi-khair, al-Hamdu li l-laah
Samira	kam jaahil :ind-ich al-Hiin?
Eleanor	thalaathah, walad w bintain
Samira	(<i>laughing</i>) thalaathah bass?
Eleanor	(<i>laughing with her</i>) aywa, w inti?
Samira	niHna :ind-na sab:ah, thalaathah awlaad w arba: banaat
Eleanor	maa shaa' allaah!
Samira	al-awlaad kam :umr-hum?
Eleanor	al-walad :umr-uh ithna:shar sanah, wa l-bint al-akbar :asharah, wa l-bint aS-Saghiirah sab: sanawaat
Samira	humma wain?
Eleanor	humma saakiniin ma:a l-waalidah, :ala shaan laazim yiruuHuun al-madrasah
Samira	al-marrah al-gaadimah, laazim tijiibiin-hum li :umaan
Eleanor	in shaa' allaah

wálad (awláad)	boy, son
jáahil (jiháal)	child
bint (banáat)	girl, daughter
maa sháa' alláah!	good heavens!
:úm(u)r	life, age
sánah (sanawáat or siniin)	year
sáakin (saakiniin)	staying, resident
wáalidah	mother
má:a	with, together with, along with
:ála shaan	because; in order to
láazim	(it is) necessary
láazim yiruuHuun	they have to go
mádrasah (madáaris)	school
márrah (marráat)	time, occasion
gáadim	next, coming
yijiib	to bring

True or false?

- (a) Eleanor has three children.
 (b) Samira has eight children altogether.
 (c) Eleanor's son is twelve years old.

mulaaHaDHaat (Notes) ملاحظات

- 1 kam jáahil? (how many children do you have?)
 Remember, kam always takes the singular where English uses the plural. awlaad (lit. boys, sons) is also commonly used to mean children.
- 2 bintáin
 You have already encountered the dual ending -áin, meaning two people or things.
- 3 kam :umr-hum? (lit. how many [years] their life)
 It is equally possible to say :umr-hum kam sanah? (lit. their-life how many years?).

Hiwaar 2 (Dialogue 2) حوار ٢

CD 2, TR 1, 1:19

Abdel Aziz's son Mohammad is a student at Al-Ain University, and he is being interviewed for a student survey.

Interviewer	al-akh min wain?
Mohammad	ana min ash-shu:aiB, laakin :aa'ilat-i saakiniin fii dubay
Interviewer	aishgadd Saar la-k tiskun fi l-:ain?
Mohammad	Saar lii thalathta:shar shahar al-Hiin
Interviewer	ta:jib-ak al-:ain?
Mohammad	na:am ta:jib-ni kathiiir

Now the interviewer asks him about his family.

Interviewer	wa waalid-akaish yishtaghal?
Mohammad	waalid-i mudiiir sharikah fii dubay. waalidat-i maa tishtaghal
Interviewer	khabbir-na :an :aa'ilat-ak shwayyah
Mohammad	:ind-i thalaathah ikhwaan w ukhtain. akhuu-ya al-akbar mitzawwaj w yishtaghal :ind abuu-ya. akhuu-ya kariim DHaabiT fi l-jaish, w akhuu-ya l-aSghar maa zaal yidrus. hum muu mitzawwajin.
Interviewer	wakhsaat-ak?
Mohammad	hum th-thintain mudarrisaat. naadya saakinah :ind-na fi l-bait fii dubay. jamiilah mitzawwajah w tiskun fii abu DHabj, zooj-ha muwaDHDHaf fii wizaarat al-i:laam. :ind-hum thalaathah awlaad.
Interviewer	shukran yaa muHammad

aishgádd
 Saar
 Saar la-k, li
 aishgádd Saar la-k

how long . . .
 it happened
 it happened to you, me
 how long have you . . .
 (been somewhere, lived somewhere)

sháh(a)r (shuhúur)
 yá:jib
 ta:jib-ak
 wáalid
 yishtághal
 mudíir (múdará)
 khábbir
 akh (ikhwáan)
 ukht (akhawáat)
 mitzáwwaj
 :ind
 ab
 DHáabiT (DHubbáaT)
 jaish (juyúush)

month
 to please
 if (fem.) pleases you
 father
 to work
 manager
 tell (imperative)
 brother
 sister
 married
 with
 father
 officer
 army

áSghar	<i>smallest, youngest</i>
maa záal	<i>still</i>
yidrus	<i>to study</i>
al-ithnáin, fem. ath-thintáin	<i>both (lit. the two)</i>
mudárris (mudarrisiin)	<i>teacher (male)</i>
mudárrisah (mudarrisáat)	<i>teacher (female)</i>
:ind-na fi l-bait	<i>at home with us</i>
yiskun	<i>to live, reside</i>
tiskun	<i>you live, she lives</i>
zooj	<i>husband</i>
muwáDHDHaf (muwaDHDHafiin)	<i>official</i>
wizáarah (wizaaráat)	<i>ministry</i>
wizáarat al-i:láam	<i>Ministry of Information</i>

- (a) How long has Mohammad been studying in Al-Ain?
 (b) How many brothers and sisters does he have?
 (c) Who is a teacher?
 (d) What is his brother-in-law's occupation?

Insight

hum *they* is an alternative to humma.

mulaaHaDHaat (Notes) ملاحظات

1 :aa'ilah (family)

The apostrophe represents a glottal stop (see Pronunciation guide at the beginning of the book). This is not a common sound in the middle of words in Gulf Arabic where it often changes to 'y' (:aayilah).

:aa'ilat-i (*my family*) is the feminine possessive where the -ah has changed to -at, and the suffix ending is -i (*my*).

- 2 aishgádd Saar la-k (*how long have you...?*) done something, lived somewhere, etc.
 Saar never changes, but the suffix pronoun after l(i)- to, for and the main verb (always present tense) have to be altered to suit the person referred to.
- 3 aishgádd (*how long, for what period/extent?*)
 This can be replaced with a kam (*how many*) expression followed by (the singular) of a time word (day, week, year etc.)

aishgádd Saar l-ak tiskun hina?	<i>How long have you lived here? (to a man)</i>
Saar l-i thalaath sanawaat askun hina	<i>I have lived here three years</i>
aishgádd Saar l-ich tidrusiin :arabi?	<i>How long have you been studying Arabic? (to a woman)</i>
Saar l-i thalaathah shuhuur/ sanatain adrus :arabi	<i>I have been studying Arabic for three months/two years.</i>

Here are some more expressions of time:

:áadatan	<i>usually, generally</i>
kathiir	<i>often, frequently</i>
aHyáanan	<i>sometimes</i>
min Hiin íla Hiin	<i>now and then, occasionally</i>
dáayman	<i>always</i>
ábadan	<i>never</i>
yoom (or ayyáam) al-júm:ah	<i>on Fridays, every Friday</i>
áakhir al-usbúu:	<i>at the weekend (lit. at the end [of] the week)</i>

4 akhúu-ya (*my brother*)

The -ya here is a variation of -i (*my*), because of the special form of akh brother used before the suffix pronouns. You sometimes also hear ákh-i, akhúu-i.

Insight

The word *ab* (*father*) behaves in the same way, but here you have an alternative; you may find it simpler to use *waalid* (see below) instead.

ma:luumaat thaqaafiyyah (Cultural tips) معلومات ثقافية

It was mentioned in Unit 3 that it is better not to enquire too closely about an Arab family. However, once you get to know an Arab well, he will welcome you into his family and show a real interest in yours, particularly in any children. Arabs take great pleasure in their children, and are very indulgent towards them!

Men should nevertheless be careful about mentioning an Arab's womenfolk. Of course some families are more liberal than others, but it is safest not to mention the female members of the family directly or (if you are a man) to expect to see them when you go on a visit or for a meal.

Arab families (and extended families) are much more close-knit than ours in the West, so you need to learn the relationship words (men bearing in mind the warning above about asking after womenfolk). There are a couple of relationships which we do not distinguish in English. Paternal uncle or aunt means your father's brother or sister, while maternal refers to the same relationship on your mother's side. The distinction extends to a cousin, who is merely the son or daughter of a paternal or maternal uncle or aunt. There are no separate words for nephew or niece, who are son or daughter of brother or sister.

wáalid or ab	<i>father</i>
wáalidah or umm	<i>mother</i>
akh (ikhwáan)	<i>brother</i>
ukht (akhawáat)	<i>sister</i>
:amm	<i>paternal uncle</i>
khaal	<i>maternal uncle</i>

:ámmah	<i>paternal aunt</i>
kháalah	<i>maternal aunt</i>
ibn/bint :amm	<i>male/female cousin</i> <i>(on father's side)</i>
ibn/bint khaal	<i>male/female cousin</i> <i>(on mother's side)</i>
jadd	<i>grandfather</i>
jáddah	<i>grandmother</i>
waalidáin	<i>parents</i>
ajdáad	<i>grandparents, forefathers</i>
zooj	<i>husband</i>
zoojah	<i>wife</i>

ab and *akh* usually become *abu* and *akhu* with possessive nouns and pronouns (see above). In the Gulf countries, it is common once you know people well to refer to a man as *abu* plus the name of his eldest child, and his wife as *umm* plus the same:

abu SáaliH lit. father of Salih
umm háashim mother of Hashim

abu is also used of humans and inanimates to indicate some attribute:

abu líHyah *a man with a beard*
(lit. father of a beard)
abu DHabi *(Abu Dhabi) lit. father of gazelle (in which it presumably once abounded)*

umm is occasionally used in the same way.

akhi (lit. my brother) is a term of address used between males of approximately equal status.

The more formal *al-akh* (the brother) is used as a polite way of addressing a stranger.

If an Arab is addressing an older person he does not know, he might say *yaa :amm-i* (lit. *my uncle*).

The word *ibn* (*son*) is mostly used with the suffix pronouns, for example, *ibn-i* (*my son*). It has an alternative form *bin* used in proper names which, in the Gulf, often take the form of: first name + *bin* + father's first name + *al-* tribal name (usually ending in *-i*):

yuusif bin aHmad al-qaasimi Youssef bin Ahmed al-Qasimi.

This means a man called Youssef, whose father's first name was Ahmed and who belongs to the tribe of the Qasimis.

muHammad bin maHmuud al-Kindi Mohammed bin Mahmoud al-Kindi (Muhammed son of Mahmoud of the Kindi family/tribe).

Two proverbs

wálad al-kalb, kalb mithl-uh *The son of a dog is a dog like it.*
bint al-báTTah :awwáamah *The daughter of a duck is a (good) swimmer.*

An equivalent proverb in English would be: *Like father, like son.*

<i>kalb (kiláab)</i>	<i>dog</i>
<i>mithl-uh</i>	<i>like him, it</i>
<i>báTTah (baTT)</i>	<i>duck</i>
<i>:awwáam (-ah)</i>	<i>a (good, better than average) swimmer</i>

Hiwaar 3 (Dialogue 3) حوار ٣

CD 2, TR 1, 2:48

Bill Stewart is having coffee with Abdel Aziz's son Salim in the office in Dubai.

Bill	<i>aishgádd Saar l-ak tishtaghal hina fi l-maktab ma:a waalid-ak yaa saliim?</i>
Salim	<i>Saar l-i sanah al-Hiin</i>
Bill	<i>inta tiskun :ind al-waalid?</i>

Salim	<i>laa, naskun fii shaggah gariibah min hina. bait al-waalid ba:iid :an al-maktab. :ala shaan ana adaawim min aS-SubH badri, w aHyaanan laazim ashtaghal bi l-lail</i>
Bill	<i>wa t(i)shuuf al-:aa'ilah kathiir?</i>
Salim	<i>na:am, aruuH :ind-hum kull yoom.</i>
Bill	<i>wa t(i)shuuf-hum yoom al-jum:ah?</i>
Salim	<i>na:am, :aadatan naruuH - al-:aa'ilah kull-ha ya:ni - nazuur jadd-i w jaddat-i yoom al-jum:ah</i>
Bill	<i>hum saakiniin wain?</i>
Salim	<i>fi sh-shu:aib. :amm-i w :ammat-i yiskunuun wiiyáa-hum fii nafs al-bait</i>

máktab (makáatib)

shággah or shiggah (shigag)

bait (buyúut)

yidáawim

bádri

kull

kull yoom

yirúuH

yizúur

wiiya

wiiyáa-hum

yoom al-júm(a):ah

nafs

office

flat, apartment

house

to keep office hours

early

every, all, whole

every day

to go

to visit

with, along with

with them.

on Friday, i.e. at the weekend

self, same

(a) Why does Salim not live at home?

(b) When does he go to visit his grandparents?

(c) Where do his uncle and aunt live?

mulaaHaDHaat (Notes) ملاحظات

1 **yidaawim**

You hear this verb a lot in the Gulf. It expresses the working hours one keeps; when one will be in one's office, at one's desk.

2 bait al-waalid (*father's house*)

Just as you add pronoun suffixes to nouns to express possession, you can also add another noun. In this type of construction (as here) the second noun usually has the al- (*the*) unless it is someone's name. The first noun never has it. If the first noun has the -ah ending, the 'hidden t' appears, as in wizaarat al-i:laam [*the*] ministry of information, from wizaarah.

3 al-:aa'ilah kull-ha ya:ni *the whole family, I mean.*

Here kull-ha refers to the family (feminine).

4 nafs

This word followed by a noun with al- means *the same*:

nafs ai-bait	<i>the same house</i>
nafs ash-shay	<i>the same thing</i>

You can also use the pronoun suffixes:

nafs-i/-ak/-uh/-ha, etc. (*myself, yourself, himself, herself*)

ta:biiraat haammah (Key phrases) تعبيرات هامة

↔ CD 2, TR 1, 3:44

How to talk about the family

:ind-i akh waaHid w thalaath akhawaat *I have a brother and three sisters.*

maa :ind-i laa ikhwaan wala akhawaat *I have no brothers or sisters (laa . . .wála neither . . .nor).*

haadha akhuu-ya saliim *This is my brother Salim.*

haadhi ukht-i jamiilah *This is my sister Jamilah.*

Talking about how old people are

maHmuud :umr-uh kam sanah? :umr-uh ithna:shar sanah *How old is Mahmoud? He is 12 years old.*

awlaad-ak kam :umr-hum? waaHid:ind-uh khamasta:shar sanah w waaHid :ind-uh arba:ata:shar (sanah) *How old are your children? They are 15 and 14 years old (lit. one is. . .).*

How to talk about where you live and your occupation

wain tiskun? *Where do you live?*

askun fi l-baHrain *I live in Bahrain.*

The adjective saakin *living, residing* can be used:

inta saakin wain? ana saakin fi l-baHrain wain tishtaghal? *Where do you work?*

ashtaghal fii maktab/bank/mustashfa/sharikah *I work in an office/ bank/hospital/company.*

aish shughl-ak? *What is your work?*

ana muháandis/mudárris/mudiir sharikah *I am an engineer/a teacher/a company director.*

How to talk about your daily routine

as-saa:ah kam tiguum (min an-noom)? *When do you get up (from sleep)?*

aguum as-saa:ah sittah aS-SubaH *I get up at 6 a.m.*

tiruuH ash-shughul as-saa:ah kam? *What time do you go to work?*

aruuH al-maktab as-saa:ah sab:ah, w adaawim min as-saa:ah thamaanyah li-ghaayat as-saa:ah ithnain *I go to the office at 7 a.m. and work from 8 a.m. to 2 p.m.*

as-saa:ah kam taakul ar-riyuug/al-ghada? *When do you eat breakfast/lunch?*

aakul ar-riyuug/al-ghada as-saa:ah sittah/thintain wa nuSS *I have breakfast/lunch at 6 a.m./2.30 p.m.*

as-saa:ah kam tiruuH tinaam? *When do you go to bed (lit. to sleep)?*

aruuH anaam as-saa:ah iHda:shar w nuSS *I go to bed at 11.30 p. m.*

yiguum

to rise, get up (from sleep)

li-ghaayat

up to, until

riyuug

breakfast

gháda

lunch

yináam

to sleep

QUICK VOCAB

núqaT naHwíyyah (Grammar points) نقط نحوية

1 Saying you have to, must do something

This is done by using the word *laazim* [it is] necessary [that]. . . before the (present) verb:

laazim ashtaghal yoom as-sabt I have to work on Saturday.
laazim aruuH al-kuwait baakir I have to go to Kuwait tomorrow.
laazim titkallam :arabi You must speak Arabic.

2 Saying you like something

In the previous unit you learnt to use the verb *yiHibb* to express a permanent like or dislike, as of tea or chocolate.

If you are talking about something which just strikes you as good, or pleasing, use the verb *ya:jib* (to please) and add the suffix ending according to who is being pleased.

ya:jib-ni (it pleases me) is identical to the French 'il me plait'. Remember that places are usually feminine, so the verb prefix must be feminine:

<i>ta:jib-ak al-:ain?</i>	<i>Do you like Al-Ain? (lit. it [fem.] pleases you Al-Ain?)</i>
<i>na:am ta:jib-ni kathiir</i>	<i>Yes, I like it a lot. (lit. it pleases me a lot)</i>
<i>háadhi S-Súurah maa ta:jib-ni</i>	<i>I don't like this picture. (lit. this picture does not please me)</i>

3 Talking about more than two people or things

Arabic plurals are formed in one of three ways, depending on the word:

- by changing the internal shape of the word
- by adding *-iin* to the singular word
- by adding *-aat* to the singular word.

- (a) Many commonly-used nouns (and some adjectives) have 'broken' plurals, formed by changing or 'breaking up' the internal structure of the word itself, like English *mouse* → *mice*, *foot* → *feet*. This type of plural, where it exists, is used for both human beings and things:

wálad → *awláad* (boy)
bait → *buyúut* (house)

Insight

In general, it is 'shorter' nouns, i.e. those with fewer letters, which take broken plurals. Broken plurals can be formed from foreign borrowings if they meet the 'length' criterion. Compare the examples above with the two following types of plurals:

film → *afláam* (film)
bank → *bunúuk* (bank)

With a few exceptions, nouns have only one plural form. The two categories of plurals which follow do not have a broken plural. They are not alternatives.

- (b) Words which do not have a broken plural and which signify male human beings usually add the ending *-iin* to the noun.

muhándis → *muhandisiin* (engineer)
mudárris → *mudarrisiin* (teacher – male)
kuwáiti → *kuwaitiyyiin* (Kuwaiti)

Note that words which end in *-i* in the singular, add a 'helping' *y* or *yy* before this ending.

A few common foreign words for males use the ending *-iyya*:

dráiwil → *draiwiliyya* (driver)
kúuli → *kuulíyya* (coolie, labourer)

- (c) Words which do not have a broken plural and which signify female human beings or inanimates drop the ending -ah if present and add -aat:

mudárrisah → mudarrisáat (*teacher – fem.*)

sayyáarah → sayyaaráat (*car*)

baaS → baaSáat (*bus*)

Note: A relatively few very common nouns denoting female members of the family take irregular or hybrid plurals:

umm → ummaháat (*mother*)

ukht → akhawáat (*sister*)

bint → banáat (*girl, daughter*)

sanah (*year*) has two plurals, sanawáat and siníin (the latter being the only common exception to the 'men only' rule for the -iin suffix).

In the end, you just have to learn the plurals along with the singulars. They are given in brackets after the noun in the vocabulary, in full if they are broken, or with -iin or -áat.

4 Plural adjectives

Adjectives have plurals just like nouns, which must be used when you are talking about people. For things you use the feminine singular -ah.

humma saakiniin wain?

Where are they living?

al-banaat al-kuwaitiyyaat

the Kuwaiti girls

sayyaaraat kathíirah

many cars

A few common adjectives have broken plurals, and these will be given in the vocabulary in the same way as the plural of nouns. If no plural is given for an adjective, assume that it takes -iin.

tamriinaat (Exercises) تمرينات

CD 2, TR 1, 4:55

- 1 Listen to these six people saying what their occupations are or where they work, or look at the transcript. Make a note of what they tell you, and check your answers in the key.

Tabíib (aTibba)

doctor

Táalibah (-aat)

student (female)

ta:liim

education

- 2 Which questions would be appropriate to ask each of these people, and which replies belong to which person?

- (a) tishtaghal aish?
 (b) aishgádd Saar l-ich tishtaghaliin hinaak?
 (c) ana muhandisah
 (d) tiHibbiin shughl-ich?
 (e) ana mudiir sharikah
 (f) aish shughl-ich?
 (g) tiHibb ash-shughul hinaak?
 (h) aishgádd Saar l-ak tiskun hinaak?



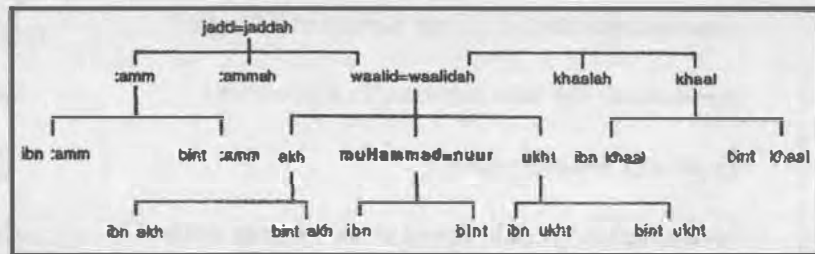
- 3 Complete the following Arabic sentences using the new words given below. Remember the rules for using the plural as explained in Unit 5.

- (a) kam (*houses*) fiih fi sh-sháari?
 (b) fiih sáb: (*emirates*) fi-l-imaaráat al-:arabiyyah al-muttaHidah
 (c) al-baHrain fii-ha thalaathah wa-thalaathiin (*islands*)
 (d) ana :ind-i thalaathah (*brothers*) wa arba: (*sisters*)

- (e) fiih mushkilah - :ind-na iHda:shar (*people*) laakin :asharah (*chairs*)
 (f) fi l-madrasah khamasta:shar (*men teachers*) wa thalaath (*women teachers*).
 (g) fiih kam (*rooms*) fi l-fundug?
 (h) fii {2 *roundabouts*} gabil al-maTaar.

imáarah (-áat)	<i>emirate</i>
al-imaaráat al:arabiyyah al-muttáHidah	<i>the UAE</i>
jaziirah (jazáayir or júzur)	<i>island</i>
mushkilah (masháakil)	<i>problem</i>
shakhS (ashkháaS)	<i>person, individual</i>
kúrsi (karási)	<i>chair</i>
mudárrisah (-áat)	<i>teacher (f.)</i>
ghúrfah (ghúraf)	<i>room</i>
duwwáar (-áat)	<i>roundabout</i>

- 4 Mohammad, from Qatar, shows you his family tree below. Answer the questions about his relatives in Arabic. The first question is answered for you.



- (a) man zoojat waalid muHammad? (answer: wáalidat-uh)
 (b) khaal-uh akh man?
 (c) man ibn akhuu-h?
 (d) man waalidat bint ukht-uh?
 (e) man waalidat ibn-uh?
 (f) man ibn :amm-uh?
 (g) man akh bint-uh?
 (h) man waalidat abuu-h?

- 5 You are on a short visit to Bahrain and have been invited to a party, where you meet Munir and his wife Nadia

inta	<i>Ask them where they come from.</i>
Munir	<i>niHna min al-kuwait. inta min waIn?</i>
inta	<i>Tell them where you are from. Ask them if they live in Bahrain.</i>
Munir	<i>laa, niHna saakiniin fi l-kuwait, laakin akhuu-ya yiskun hina. yishtaghal fi s-sifaarah al-kuwaitiyyah, w naaji hina nazuur-uh kathiir. inta aishgádd Saar l-ak tiskun fi l-baHrain?</i>
inta	<i>Say you have only been there three days. Ask them what they do.</i>
Nadia	<i>zooj-i muhandis w ana ashtaghal fii bank. ayy shughul tishtaghal inta?</i>
inta	<i>Tell them what you do and where you work.</i>
Nadia	<i>tajjib-ak al-baHrain?</i>
inta	<i>Tell them you like it very much.</i>

sifáarah (-aat)	<i>embassy</i>
náaji	<i>we come</i>

CD 2, TR 1, 5:20

- 6 Listen to the recording or read the transcript on Ahmad talking about his life in Abu Dhabi. Look at the new words given below, and check your comprehension by answering the questions.

noom	<i>sleep (noun)</i>
yiwáSSil	<i>to take someone, give them a lift</i>
bi-sayyaarát-ha	<i>in her car</i>
yitghádda	<i>to lunch, eat lunch</i>
yishúuf at-tilfizyoon	<i>to watch television</i>

- (a) When does Ahmad get up?
 (b) Where does his wife go?
 (c) When does he finish work?
 (d) What does he do after lunch?
 (e) When do they usually go to bed?

al-khaTT al-árabi (Arabic script) الخط العربي

Originally (believe it or not!) the ancient Arabic language was written with far fewer letters, many of them having several different pronunciations. To remedy the confusion which this defective alphabet caused, dots were added to some of the letters to distinguish between these varying pronunciations. The 'dot system' in Modern Arabic uses the following combinations:

- (a) one, two or three dots above the letter
- (b) one or two (but not three) dots below the letter

Of course some letters are not dotted at all.

The dotting phenomenon enables us to divide the Arabic alphabet into groups or sets of letters for convenience of learning.

The largest group contains the letters b, t, th, n and y. Three of these have been mentioned in earlier units, but now you have the full set. You know by now that, as with most of the Arabic letters, there is a 'nucleus' form, to which are added joining strokes or ligatures for the other forms. In addition, the final form used at the end of words frequently undergoes some elongation or embellishment.

Apart from the number and placement of dots, the letters in the following list are all identical except for variations in the final and separate forms of two of them. This series of letters is written small in height, and the 'nucleus' form is no more than a small hook placed on the line. They all join to both preceding and following letters.

Name	Initial	Medial	Final	Separate	Pronunciation
baa'	ب	با	باء	ب	b
taa'	ت	تا	تاء	ت	t
thaa'	ث	ثا	ثاء	ث	th
nuun	ن	نا	نن	ن	n
yaa'	ي	يا	ياء	ي	y

A look at the above table will show that the letters are identical, except for the final and separate forms of 'n' and 'y'. The former extends below the line, and is an incomplete 'egg-on-end' shape, while the latter is a double curve, again below the line. Notice that the dots of the initial and medial forms of the above letters are centred above or below the upward pointing tooth of the letter. In the final and separate forms, the dots are centred above or below the flourish. There are no difficulties of pronunciation in this group, but remember that 'y' sometimes represents a long ii or ai as described in Unit 6. Now try to recognize the following words, which incorporate some of these new letters. Remember to supply the short vowels.

Insight

Write down the consonants with a hyphen between them, and see what they suggest. For example, the first word below, which uses three letters from this group, is: b-n-t, i.e. bint. We have provided clues to help you.

١. بنت (usually after shay: this is really something else!)
٢. ثاني (the second letter is 't'; not feeling too bright?)
٣. تعبان (pronounce the first letter as 't': a pronoun)
٤. إنت (a present from Arabia)
٥. من (one syllable; middle vowel is 'ai' written with Arabic 'y': there's no place like it)
٦. بيت (remember long vowels: delicious squeezed...)
٧. ليمون (written with a hyphen after the first letter in our transcription: no sugar thanks)
٨. بدون (second letter is 't' again: most useful word in Arabic)
٩. يعني (cool, creamy and delicious)
١٠. لبن

Test yourself

This test covers the main vocabulary, phrases and language points given in Unit 7. If you are not sure about your answers, go back to the dialogues and exercises for some revision, before going on to Unit 8. For the answers, see the Key to the exercises.

- 1 Match these professions or people with their corresponding places of work, and indicate whether they are male or female:
(a) mudīir (i) mádrasah
(b) Tabīib (ii) máktab
(c) mudárrisah (ii) mustáshfa
(d) Táalibah (iv) jáami:ah
- 2 How well do you remember the names for the members of the family? Give the corresponding male or female to the ones below.
(a) ukht (d) bint
(b) waalid or ab (e) zooj
(c) :amm
- 3 Give the plurals for the following words:
(a) walad (c) sayyaarah kabiirah
(b) bank (d) muhandis kuwaiti
- 4 Arrange these expressions of time in order of frequency, with the most frequent first:
(a) abadan, (b) kathiir, (c) daayman, (d) aHyaanan

How would you answer the following questions in Arabic?

- 5 aishgadd Saar l-ak tiskun hina?
- 6 as-saa:ah kam tiguum min an-noom?
- 7 laazim tirúuH ash-shughl as-saa:ah kam?
- 8 as-saa:ah kam taakul al-ghada?
- 9 tiHibb tishúuf at-tilifizyoon?
- 10 as-saa:ah kam tiruuH tinaam?

8

في الفندق fi l-fundug In the hotel

In this unit you will learn how to

- Reserve and ask for a room
- Ask about the services
- Ask about mealtimes
- Make a complaint

New words and phrases

⚡ CD 2, TR 2

Listen to the recording.

Hiwaar 1 (Dialogue 1) حوار ١

⚡ CD 2, TR 2, 0:15

Tony is in Saudi Arabia on business, and he has driven from Jeddah to visit Taif. He goes into the Centre Hotel.

Kaatib	ahlan wa sahlán, marHáb
Tony	ahlan bii-k. :ind-ak ghurfah min faDHI-ak?
Kaatib	ghurfah li shakhS waaHid aw shakhSain?
Tony	shakhS waaHid, bi Hammaam
Kaatib	li muddah aish?
Tony	lailatain.
Kaatib	dagiigah min faDHI-al na:am, fiih ghurfah
Tony	hiyya bi-kam, min faDHI-ak?
Kaatib	miyyah w :ishriin riyaal bi l-khidmah
Tony	zain. aakhudh-ha.
Kaatib	imla haadha l-kart min faDHI-ak. mumkin ta:Tii-ni jawaaz as-safar law samaHt?
Tony	tfaDHDHal. al-fuTuur as-saa:ah kam min faDHI-ak?
Kaatib	al-fuTuur min as-saa:ah sittah w nuSS fi l-maT:am, aw mumkin tiTlub-uh fi l-ghurfah.
Tony	zain
Kaatib	ghurfah ragam khams miyyah w arba:ata:shar. haadha huwwa l-miftaaH. (calls the porter) ta:aal yaa :abdallah. huwwa yisaa:id-ak bi sh-shúnuT

ta:aal	come (imperative)
yisaa:id	to help
shánTah (shúnuT)	bag, suitcase

- What kind of room does Tony want?
- How long does he want to stay?
- What does the receptionist ask Tony to give him?

mulaaHaDHaat (Notes) ملاحظات

- marHáb**
This is a common alternative to *ahlan wa sahlán*.
- aw or**
Both *aw* and *wálla* are commonly used.
- li muddah aish?** (*for how long?*)
This is comprised of three elements: *li-* (*to, for*) + *muddah* (*period of time*), (sometimes showing the hidden 'r') + *aish* (*what*).
- lail(a)tain** (*for two nights*)
This is the dual of *lailah* (*night*). *li* (*for*) can sometimes (as here) be omitted.
- shanTah** (*suitcase*)
This is often pronounced *janTah*.

ma:luumaat thaqaafiyyah (Cultural tips) معلومات ثقافية

al-fuTuur (also called, less formally *ar-riyuug*) (*breakfast*) is often just fresh fruit, or bread with cheese.

For most people the main meal of the day is *al-ghada* (*lunch*), when everyone comes home from work and school, and various hot fish, meat or poultry curries are served with rice, vegetables and salads.

káatib (kuttáab)	clerk
márHáb	welcome, hello
ghúrfah li shakhS waaHid	single room
aw	or
ghúrfah li shakhSáin	double room
Hammáam (-aat)	bathroom
li múddah aish	for how long
láilah (layáali)	night
khidmah (khadamáat)	service
imla	fill in (imperative)
yimla	to fill (in)
kart (kurúut)	card
jawáaz as-sáfar	passport
fuTúur	breakfast
yíTlub	to order (something), ask for
miftáaH (mafatiH)	key

In the evening people tend to have simpler food, like sandwiches or take-away meals, although of course in the hotels and restaurants people would eat a more substantial dinner, al-:asha.

<i>Breakfast</i>	النفطور
<i>Fresh fruit juice</i>	عصير الفواكه الطازجة
<i>Assorted fruit</i>	فواكه مشكّنة
<i>Arabic breakfast (dalan, fal madameen, labnah, salad and bread)</i>	النفطور العربي (قر. فول مدنس، لبنه مطبوخة وخبز)
<i>American breakfast (eggs, tomatoes, sausage, ically)</i>	النفطور الأمريكي (بيض، طماطم، صجوج ولبننة)
<i>Tea</i>	شاي
<i>Coffee (Turkish or American)</i>	قهوة (تركية أو أمريكية)
<i>K.D. 3.00</i>	٣ دنانير كويتية

Hiwaar 2 (Dialogue 2) حوار ٢

CD 2, TR 2, 1:27

Youssef, an Iraqi, has business in Kuwait, and he telephones the Gulf Pearl Hotel to reserve a room.

Youssef	Sabaah al-khair. ana baaji l-kuwait ash-shahar
kaatib	al-gaadim, w ariid aHjiz ghurfah min faDHI-ak,
Youssef	zain. fii ayy taarikh in shaa'allaah?
kaatib	ariid ghurfah li shakhS waaHid, min as-sabt thamaanyah
	fibraayir li ghaayat iHda:shar fibraayir
	laHDHah . . . ya.ni arba:at ayyaam?

Youssef	aywa, SaHiiH.
kaatib	na:am, zain. as-saa:ah kam tooSal in shaa'allaah?
Youssef	in sha'allah ooSal yoom thamaanyah ba:ad aDH-DHuhur.
	yimkin yikuun fiih bard fi l-kuwait fi sh-shita. al-ghurfah
	fii-ha tadfi'ah?
kaatib	maa fiih mushkilah. al-ghurfah kull-ha fiih tadfi'ah, wa
	takyiif w tilifizyoon mulawwan.

yij:i	to come
baaji	I will be coming
gaadam	next
yIHjiz	reserve
taariikh	date
fibraayir	February
yoom (ayyaam)	day
SaHiiH	correct, right
yooSal	to arrive
aDH-DHuh(u)r	(the) noon
yimkin	maybe
yikuun fiih	there will be
bard	cold (noun)
ash-shita	(the) winter
tadfi'ah	heating
takyiif	air-conditioning
mulawwan	coloured

- (a) Does Youssef ask for a single or a double room?
 (b) When is he hoping to arrive?
 (c) What is he worried about?

mulaaHaDHaat (Notes) ملاحظات

- 1 baaji
 This is simply aaji (*I come*) prefixed with a b- to make it in the future tense, *I will come*.

Insight

Note that this is the true Gulf Arabic usage. Northern dialects prefix an H- for the future, and use b- for other purposes. You may hear this, as all Gulf Arabs are familiar with Egyptian Arabic from the television, and it is influencing their speech habits.

2 tooSal (*you will arrive*)

As in English, the future need not be marked if it is obvious from the context ('He's arriving on Tuesday').

3

shuhúur as-sánah	<i>the months of the year</i>
yanáayir	<i>January</i>
fibráayir	<i>February</i>
mars	<i>March</i>
abriil	<i>April</i>
máayo	<i>May</i>
yúunyo	<i>June</i>
yúulyo	<i>July</i>
aghúsTos	<i>August</i>
sabtámbar	<i>September</i>
októobar	<i>October</i>
nufámbar	<i>November</i>
disámbar	<i>December</i>
min maayo li sabbambar	<i>from May to September</i>
fii yanaayir	<i>in January</i>

Instead of naming the month, it is also common to say just the day and number of the month:

baaji l-kuwait shahr fibraayir	<i>I am coming to Kuwait in February.</i>
baaji l-kuwait shahr ithnain	<i>I am coming to Kuwait in February (month two).</i>

Insight

The old Arab months, the best-known in the West being ramaDHáan *Ramadan*, are based on the Islamic calendar which starts from 16th July 622 AD. Converting dates from this is not merely a matter of subtracting 622. Since the year consists of 12 lunar months it is about ten days shorter. For instance, 1st January 2000 = 24th Ramadan 1420.

There is a third set of month names which begins the year with the month kaanúun ath-tháani (*Kanun the Second*). Stick to the European months.

4 To say *on* such and such a date use fii (*i n*) or simply nothing at all:

fii tis:ah yuunyo	<i>on the 9th of June</i>
:asharah :asharab	<i>on the 10th of October</i>

Insight

The ordinary numbers are used for dates, not the ordinals (7th, 20th etc.) as in English.

5 yímkin (lit. *it is possible*)

This verbal form is more or less interchangeable with the adjective mumkin.

6 yikúun fiih (*there will be*)

This is the future of fiih (*there is*).

yikuun fiih bard (*it will be cold lit. there will be coldness*).

ma:luumaat thaqaafiyyah (Cultural tips)

معلومات ثقافية

takyiif (*air-conditioning*) in cars and buildings is an essential part of modern life in the Gulf. This is the formal word for it, but you will frequently hear the adapted English kandáishan.

Although the Gulf is famed for the intense heat of its summers, in the northern Gulf in the winter months it can be bitterly cold. Even the

smallest hotels will have air-conditioning units in the rooms, which are needed all year in the southern Gulf, but you might wish to confirm that there is heating if you are going to the north in winter.

aS-Saif	summer
ash-shíta	winter
fi S-Saif	in summer
fi sh-shíta	in winter

Hiwaar 3 (Dialogue 3) حوار ٣

CD 2, TR 2, 2:34

Tony is in his room but he has a problem and calls reception.

Tony	haalo. hina ghurfah ragam khams miyyah w arba:ata:shar. fih mushkilah
kaatib	aish hiyya l-mushkilah? in shaa' allaah nasaa:id-ak
Tony	aHtaaj ila fuwaT ziyaadah fi l-Hamaam, w at-takyiif kharbaan, maa yishtaghal
kaatib	muta' assifiin jiddan. attaSil fii khidmaat al-fundug w yiTarrishuun Had fawran yiSalliH-uh w yijiib fuwaT
Tony	zain. shukran

múshkilah, masháakil	problem
yiHtáaj ila	to need
ziyáadah	more
fúuTah (fúwaT)	towel
kharbáan	broken
mut(a)'ássif (-iin)	sorry
jiddan	very
khidmaat al-fundug	hotel services
yiTárrish	to send
Had	someone
fáwran	immediately
yiSálliH	to mend, fix, repair
yijiib	to bring

- (a) What is the problem?
(b) What does the receptionist promise to do?

mulaaHaDHaat (Notes) ملاحظات

- yiHtaaj ila (to need)
In English you say *I need something*, but the Arabic verb requires *ila* (lit. to, towards) after it.
- ziyaadah (more)
This is not actually an adjective, but a noun meaning literally *an increase*, so it does not change for gender.

ta:biiraat haammah (Key phrases) تعبيرات هامة

CD 2, TR 2, 3:27

Booking a room

ariid aHjiz *I want to reserve, make a reservation.*
:ind-ak ghurfah li shakhS waaHid/shakhSain? *Do you have a room for one person/for two people?*
ariid ghurfah li shakhS waaHid/shakhSain } *I want a single/double room.*
afaDHDHiil ghurfah bi Hammaam *I prefer a room with a bathroom.*
(al-ghurfah) fii-ha takyiif? *Does it (the room) have air-conditioning?*
tilifizyoon? *television?*
tilifoon *a telephone?*
thalláajah *a fridge?*
al-ghurfah bi kam? *How much is the room?*
haadha bi l-khidmah? *Is the service (charge) included?*

Saying how long you want to stay

kam lailah? *How many nights?*

li muddat aish? *For how long?*
 (li) lailah waaHidah *For one night.*
 lailatain *two nights.*
 thalaathat ayyaam *three days.*
 usbuu: *a week.*

Saying when you will arrive

mata tooSal? *When will you arrive?*
 ooSal baakir *I will arrive tomorrow.*
 lailat al-arba:a *on Wednesday night*
 al-khamiis al-gaadim *next Thursday*
 thalaathah oktoobar (thalaathah :asharah) *on the 3rd of October/*
the 10th (month)
 Hawaali s-saa:ah sab:ah *At about 7.00 p.m.*
 al-mísa *In the evening.*

Checking in

mumkin timla baadha l-kart min faDHI-ak?. *Can you fill in this*
card please?
 mumkin tiwaggi: hina? *Can you sign here?*
 mumkin ta:Tii-ni jawaz as-safar/al-buTaagah sh-sbakhSiyyah?
Can you give me your passport/identity card?

QV

ylwággi: *to sign*
 buTáagah shakhSiyyah *identity card*

Asking about meals

al-fuTuur as-saa:ah kam? *What time is breakfast?*
 min as-saa:ah sittah fi ghaayat as-saa:ah :asharah *From 6 am.*
until 10 am.
 wain naakhudh al-fuTuur/al-ghada/al-:asba? *Where is breakfast/*
lunch/dinner served? (lit. where do we take . . .).
 fi l-maT:am/al-koofii shoob *In the restaurant/coffee shop*
 mumkin tiTlub-uh fi l-ghurfah *You can order it in your room*
(lit. in the room).

Making a complaint

ana fii ghurfah khams miyyah w khamsah. fiih mushkilah *I am in*
room number 505; there is a problem.
 min faDHI-ak jiiib fúwaT/Saabúun/thalj ziyáadah *please bring*
more towels/soap/lice.
 at-takyiif/ad-dushsh kharbaan/maa yishtaghal *The air-conditioning/*
shower is broken/does not work.
 maa fiih Saabuun/fuuTah/maay saakhin *There is no soap/towel/*
hot water.
 al-ghurfah waajid Saghiirah/baaridah/was(i)khah *The room is*
very small/cold/dirty.

In Arabic there is no word for *too*; use *waajid* or *jiddan* *very*

ariid ghurfah naDHIifah/háadyah *I want a clean/quiet room.*
 aHtaaj ila makháddah/barnúS/shárshaf/fúuTah thaani/yah *I*
need an other pillow/blanket/Sheet/towel.

núqaT naHwiyyah (Grammar points) نقط نحوية

1 Talking about the future

The future tense (English *I shall*) in Gulf Arabic is formed by the relevant part of the present tense prefixed with *b-*. Before consonants, this acquires a helping vowel, usually *-i*, and the vowels of the verbal prefixes *t(i)-*, *y(i)-* and *n(a)-* are omitted to smooth out pronunciation. (These are merely habits of speech, so do not worry about them unduly.) Here is the verb *yisawwi* (*to do, make*) in full in both the present and the future:

Present		Future	
asawwi	<i>I do</i>	basawwi	<i>I shall/will do</i>
tisawwi	<i>you (masc.) do</i>	bitsawwi	<i>you will do</i>
tisawwiin	<i>you (fem.) do</i>	bitsawwiin	<i>you will do</i>
yisawwi	<i>he does</i>	biysawwi (or byisawwi)	<i>he will do</i>

tisawwi	she does
nasawwi	we do
tisawwuun	you (plural) do
yisawwuun	they do

bitsawwi	she will do
binsawwt	we will do
bitsawwuun	you will do
biysawwuun (or byisawwuun)	they will do

Insight

In most parts of the Gulf, verbs like *yisawwi* whose present stem ends in *-i* drop this before the suffixes *-iin*, and *-uun*.

As in English, if the time sequence is obvious from the context, the simple present can be used:

aish bitsawwi fi S-Saif?	<i>What are you doing in the summer?</i>
aruuH ingilterra	<i>I am going to England.</i>
mata btoosal?	<i>When will you arrive?</i>
oosal yoom as-sabt al-gaadim	<i>I will arrive next Saturday.</i>

2 More verb strings

In Unit 6 you learnt how to use two verbs together:

nariid nashuuf	<i>We want to look (lit. we-want we-look).</i>
aish tiriidiin tishribiin?	<i>What do you want to drink?</i>

In both the above cases the person doing the 'wanting' is the same person or people doing the 'looking' or 'drinking', and so the form of the verb is the same in both cases.

If there are different people doing each action, the forms of the verbs have to agree accordingly:

yiTarrishuun Had yiSalliH-uh	<i>They will send someone to mend it (lit. they [will]-send someone he [will]-mend-it.)</i>
------------------------------	---

nariid-ak tiSalliH-uh

*We want you to mend it
(lit. we-want-you you-mend-it.)*

tamriinaat (Exercises) تمرينات

CD 2, TR 2, 4:07

- 1 Listen to these four people booking a room or read the transcript. Look at the options they have, and mark which ones they choose (with reservation)/(without reservation).



(a) :ind-hum Hajz



maa :ind-hum Hajz



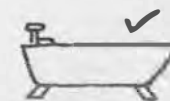
(b) ghurfah li shakhS waaHid



li shakhSain



(c) lailah waaHidah lailatain thalaath layaali



(d) bi Hammaam



bi-duun Hammaam

- 2 You overhear a new guest in the hotel asking the receptionist some questions. What does he want to know? Look at the new words, and answer the questions below.

DHaif	fiih thallaajah fi l-ghurfah?
kaatib	na:am. fiih miini baar
DHaif	ayy yoom :asha s-samak?
kaatib	yoom al-arba:a min as-saa:ah sittah w nuSS
DHaif	mumkin tiguul li-i, fiih tilifoon fi l-loobi?
kaatib	na:am. hinaak jamb al-maSaa:id.

- (a) Is he asking if the room has (i) air-conditioning (ii) satellite TV (iii) a fridge?
 (b) Does he want to know about (i) breakfast (ii) lunch or (iii) dinner?
 (c) Is he asking for (i) the lift (ii) a telephone (iii) the coffee shop?

sámak	fish, seafood
lóobi	lobby
jamb	beside
miS:ad (maSÁa:id)	lift

- 3 You hear three people booking a room. What dates do they want a room for?
 (a) min ithnain w :ishriin li arba:ah w :ishriin shahar :asharah
 (b) min thalaathta:shar li tis:ata:shar maayoo
 (c) min :asharah li sab:ata:shar shahar ithna:shar
- 4 Now it's your turn to book ahead. Write down what you would say in (transliterated) Arabic, and check your answers in the Key to the exercises.
 (a) 2nd to 5th March
 (b) 9th to 16th July
 (c) 1st to 8th September
- 5 Mealtimes. How would you ask the following?
 (a) when dinner is served?
 (b) when the restaurant opens?
 (c) whether you can order lunch in your room?
 (d) where the lift is?

- 6 Put the replies in this dialogue into the correct order.
 SabaaH al-khair. mumkin asaa:id-ak?
 —*bi-dushsh*
 na:am. li shakhS waaHid aw li shakhSain?
 —*al-ghurfah bi-kam min faDHI-ak?*
 bi Hammaam aw bi-dushsh?
 —*al-ghurfah wain min faDHI-ak?*
 li kam lailah?
 —*SabaaH an-nuur. :ind-ak ghurfah min faDHI-ak?*
 akiid
 —*thalaath layaali*
 al-lailah bi khamsah w :ishriin diinaar
 —*shukran jaziilan. fii amaan Al-laah*
 hiyya fi T-Taabag ath-thaani, ghurfah ragam sab:ah w :ishriin.
 haadha huwwa l-miftaaH
 —*li shakhS waaHid*

akiid	certain(ly)
Táabag (Tawáabig)	floor, storey

CD 2, TR 2, 4:50

- 7 You have asked your friend Youssef to tell you something about the hotel he stayed in, and he reads aloud to you from the brochure. Listen to the recording or read the transcript, and answer the questions below to check your comprehension.

Look at the new words given below first, but don't worry about understanding every word that is said; concentrate on trying to get the gist of what he says.

- (a) How many rooms are there?
 (b) What facilities do they have besides bathroom?
 (c) What types of cuisine do the restaurants offer?
 (d) When is the coffee-shop open?
 (e) Where do they serve a drink or snack outside?
 (f) What is the function room used for?

lu'lú'at ash-sharg

káamil

jináaH (ájniHah)

al-ittiSáal al-mubáashir li-l-kháarij

máT:am (maTáa:im)

áwwal dárajah

Tábiiikh

máqha

qáa:ah

iHtifáal (-aat)

mu'támar (-aat)

tijáari

a:máal

wagt al-faráagh

yisúdd

Háajah (-aat)

*Pearl of the East**complete**suite, wing**direct dialling abroad**restaurant**first-class**cuisine**café**hall, large room**celebration, party, function**conference, convention**business (adjective),**commercial**affairs**leisure**to meet, fulfil**need (noun)*

The forms given above are the printed ones. In handwriting (including calligraphy on shop and street signs and bank-notes) the joining strokes from the previous letters are often looped over the top like this:

In the following exercise try to match the Arabic on the left with the transliteration on the right. There are a few letters which you have not



learned yet, but by this stage you should be able to look them up in the alphabet table at the beginning of the book. Note that double letters, for example, the second 'm' in the name Muhammad, are only written once.

Insight

The second letter in this group (ج) is very common in the numerous personal names which derive from the root H-m-d (ح-م-د) meaning praise e. g. Muhammad, Hamid, Mahmoud, Hamdan, etc.

al-khaTT al-:árabí (Arabic script) الخط العربي

In this unit you will learn the three letters transliterated j, H and kh. These are distinguished only by dots, the basic form of the letters being identical.

Name	Initial	Medial	Final	Separate	Pronunciation
jiim	ج	ج	ج	ج	j
Haa'	ح	ح	ح	ح	H
khaa'	خ	خ	خ	خ	kh

Note the nucleus shape (ح) and the flourishes below the line on the final and separate forms. These are medium sized letters, (those in the previous unit having been small, and letters like laam (ل) being tall).

1 محمد

2 ثج

3 ثلاجة

4 حمام

5 خربان

6 خط

7 البحرين

8 حسين

9 حسن

10 خالد

A khaTT (script)

B khaalid (name)

C al-baHrain (place name)

D thallaajah (fridge)

E Hasan (name)

F muHammad (name)

G thalj (ice)

H Husain (name)

I kharbaan (broken)

J Hammaam (bathroom)

Test yourself

This test covers the main vocabulary, phrases and language points given in Unit 8. If you are not sure about your answers, go back to the dialogues and exercises for some revision, before going on to Unit 9. For the answers, see the Key to the exercises.

Match these questions with the appropriate answer.

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1 tiriid ghurfah li-shakhS waaHid aw shakSain? | (a) min as-saa:ah sab:ah li-ghaayat as-saa:ah iHda:shar wa-nuSS |
| 2 fii ayy taarikh? | (b) tafaDHDHal |
| 3 li-kam lailah? | (c) yoom as-sabt, waaHid w-:ishriin oktoobir |
| 4 fiih takyiif fi-l-ghurfah? | (d) na:am, laakin al-fanaadiq kull-ha fiih takyiif |
| 5 al-ghurfah bi-kam? | (e) ajiib-uh |
| 6 as-saa:ah kam tooSaluun? | (f) al-lailah bi-arba:ah miyyat diinaar |
| 7 al-:asha s-saa:ah kam? | (g) na:am, kull al-ghurfah fii-haa rakyiif |
| 8 maa fiih Saabuun fii ghurfat-i | (h) nooSal aDH-DHuhur |
| 9 al-jaww Haarr fii dubai fi S-Saif? | (i) li-shakhSain |
| 10 mumkin ta:Tiini jawaaz as-safar min faDhi-ak? | (j) lailatain |

الهوايات والإجازات al-hawaayaat wa l-ijaazaat Interests and holidays

In this unit you will learn how to

- Talk about your interests and say what you do in your spare time
- Talk about your plans for the future
- Talk about the weather
- Say what you did on holiday

New words and phrases

CD 2, TR 3

Listen to the recording.

Hiwaar 1 (Dialogue 1) حوار ١

CD 2, TR 3, 0:18

Mohammad and some of the people at the university in Al-Ain are being asked what they do in their spare time.

Interviewer	gul-li yaa muHammad, aish hawaayaat-ak?
Mohammad	:ind-i hawaayaat kathiirah Tab:an. aHibb al:ab kurah. in shaa' Al-laah al:ab fii fariig al-Jaami:ah ha s-sanah. wa al:ab lu:ab fi l-kambyuutar maal-i
Interviewer	wa t(i)sawwi shay ghair?
Mohammad	al:ab tanis hina fi l-:ain . . . wa fi S-Saif aruuH aSTaad samak ma:a ikhwaan-i wa awlaad :amm-i
Interviewer	miin :allam-ak Said as-samak?
Mohammad	jadd-na :allam-na wa niHna Sughaar

Now the interviewer asks Farida, from Abu Dhabi.

Interviewer	fariidah, aish t(i)sawwiin fii wagt al-faraagh? tiHibbiin til:abiin ar-riyaaDHah?
Farida	laa, maa aHibb ar-riyaaDHah khaaliiS. hina fi l-:ain agra w aruuH as-suug ma:a Sadiigaat-i, aw ashuuf t-tillifizyuun aw astami: ila l-musiiga
Interviewer	w aish tisawwiin Hiin tiruuHiin al-bait fii abuu DHabi?
Farida	ya:ni . . . nafs ash-shay

Note: verbs are now given in two parts, past tense then present. See the grammar section later in this unit.

gaal yigúul (B1)	<i>to say</i>
hawáayah (-aat)	<i>interest, hobby</i>
lá:ab yil:ab (A)	<i>to play</i>
kúrah, or more formally kúrat al-gádam	<i>football</i>
fariig (furúug))	<i>team</i>
tánis	<i>tennis</i>
Said as-sámak	<i>fishing</i>
iSTáad yiSTáad (B1) (sámak)	<i>to hunt (fish), fish</i>
miin	<i>who? (alternative to man)</i>
:állam yi:állim (A)	<i>to teach</i>
Saghiir (Sugháar)	<i>small, young</i>
wagt al-faráagh	<i>leisure, free time</i>
riyáaDHah (-aat)	<i>sport</i>

kháaliS	<i>at all (after negative)</i>
gára yigra (C)	<i>to read</i>
raah yirúuH (B1)	<i>to go</i>
Sadiig (áSdiga)	<i>friend (male)</i>
Sadiigah (-aat)	<i>friend (female)</i>
shaaf, yishúuf (B1)	<i>to see, watch, look at</i>
istáma: yistámi: ila (A)	<i>to listen to</i>
musiiga	<i>music</i>
Hiin	<i>when, at the time when</i>

- What does Mohammad do in the summer?
- Who does he go fishing with?
- Which of Farida's interests is the most active?

mulaaHaDHaat (Notes) ملاحظات

- ha s-sánah: haadha/haadhi can sometimes be shortened in this way.
- to hope, intend to do something
You will recall that the phrase in shaa' Al-laah is used wherever there is some doubt about what will happen. To say you hope to do something, put in shaa' Allaah (*God willing*) before the verb for what you intend to do in the present tense:

in shaa' Al-laah naruuH iskutlanda shahar sab:ah
We hope to go to Scotland in July (lit. 'month seven').
in shaa' Al-laah naruuH al-hind fi S-Saif
We intend to go to India in the summer.
- verbs, past tense
See grammar points at the end of the unit. The present tense has both prefixes and (sometimes) suffixes; the past tense has only suffixes.
- wa niHna Sughaar (*when we were young*).
The Arabic idiom says literally *and we young* (at that time). The plural adjective Sughaar agrees with the (plural) human beings.

Insight

Remember that when you are talking about things, the Arabic adjective takes the same form as the feminine singular, usually the ending -ah, e.g. hawaayaat kathiirah (*many hobbies*).

When talking about people, use the plural form of the adjective. This usually has the suffix -iin, but a number of common adjectives take special forms, e.g. Saghiiir/Sughaar as here. If no plural form is given in the vocabularies, the -iin suffix should be used.

Hiwaar 2 (Dialogue 2) حوار ٢

CD 2, TR 3, 1:34

Next he interviews Dr Jones, who is ending a year's exchange as a history lecturer at the university. First he asks him about living in Al-Ain.

Dr Jones	al-:ain :ajabat-ni kathiir, wa T-Tullaab kaanu mujtahidiin jiddan
Interviewer	ya:ni . . . aT-Tullaab fii ingiltarra kaslaaniin?
Dr Jones	(laughs) na:am . . . ba:DH-hum
Interviewer	doktoor joonz, mumkin tiguul (ka)-na maa sawwait fi l-:ain?
Dr Jones	al-Hagiigah sawwaina ashyaa' kathiirah. kamaa ta:raf ana mudarris taariikh, fa zurt gilaa: w mataaHif kathiirah fi l-imaaraat, w niHna . . . ya:ni ana w al-:aa'ilah sawwaina riHlaat iila jabal Hafiit w al-baHar. ishtarait kaamira jadiidah fii dubay, w Sawwart kathiir. w aHyaanan shufna sibaag al-jimaal ti sh-shita.
Interviewer	w aish min ar-riyaaDHaat?
Dr Jones	na:am, la:abt goolf ma:a zamiil waaHid, wa ruHna kathiir nisbaH fi l-baHar, wa fi l-ijaazaat, al-awlaad ta'allamu al-ghooS, ya:ni as-skuuba, fii khor fakkaan
Interviewer	shukran jaziilan yaa doktoor joonz.

:ájab yí:jab (A)

to impress, cause wonder; used in the idiom to like

Táalib (Tulláab or Tálabah)

student (male)

Táalibah (-aat)

student (female)

mujtáhid

hard-working, diligent

kasláan

lazy

ba:DH

some

al-Hagiigah

really, actually. (lit. the truth)

shay (ashyáa')

thing

kámaa tá:raf

as you know

taariikh

date; history

fa

so

zaar yizúur (B1)

to visit

gál(a):ah (giláa:)

fort

mátHaf (mataaHif)

museum

riHlah (-aat)

outing, trip, journey

jábal (jibáal)

mountain, desert

ishtára yishtári (C)

to buy

káamira (-aat)

camera (more formally áalat taSwiir)

Sáwwar, yiSáwwir (A)

to photograph, take photographs

sibáag al-jimáal

camel racing

goolf or lá:bat al-goolf

golf

zamiil (zúmala)

colleague

sábaH, yisbaH (A)

to swim, bathe

ijáazah (-aat)

holidays

ta:állam, yit:állam (A)

to learn

ghooS

diving

(a) Which of Dr Jones' interests is in keeping with his job?

(b) Which are his most active pursuits?

(c) Who learned to scuba dive?

mulaaHaDHaat (Notes) ملاحظات

1 ba:DH (some, some of)

Usually followed by a noun with al- or a suffix pronoun:

ba:DH aT-Tullaab *some of the students*
 ba:DH-hum *some of them*

2 Jebel Hafit

A mountain near Al-Ain, popular for visitors as it is the only feature nearby. Other words relating to the landscape are:

raas	<i>headland, point</i>
al-barr	<i>inland, the desert</i>
wáadi (widyáan)	<i>dried-up river bed, wadi</i>
bálad (biláad)	<i>town, village</i>
báandar	<i>town on the coast, port</i>
wáaHa (-aat)	<i>oasis</i>

3 (mumkin) tiguul l(a)-na can you tell us . . . ?

The verb *gaal/yiguul* (to tell/say) is frequently followed by the preposition *li/la* (to).

Insight

The full form is given here for the sake of clarity, but in practice this would be pronounced *tigul-l-na* condensed into one word *tigullna*.

mumkin tigulli can you tell me . . . ?

4 :allam + t(a):allam (teach and learn)

This is a common type of verb pair in Arabic, equivalent to what is called the active and the passive in English. :allam (lit. to make know) and t(a):allam (to be made to know).

ma:luumaat thaqaafiyah (Cultural tips) معلومات ثقافية

The Arabs have many words for varieties of camel. *jámal* (plural *jimáal*) is the only one you really need, and the one from which the English is derived.

Similarly there are many words for the desert, depending on whether it is sandy, rocky, salt-flat and so on. *al-barr* (the land, country) is the most useful general term. *aS-SáHraa* (whence we get Sahara) is the literary word, and *rimáal* (lit. sands) refers to that type of desert landscape. *ar-ruba: al-khaali* (the Empty Quarter) is a term not originally used by inhabitants of the area (who call it *ar-rimaal*), but everybody knows it now from literary sources.

Hiwaar 3 (Dialogue 3) حوار ٣

CD 2, TR 3, 2:59

Mike and Salim are in Abu Dhabi, discussing their holiday plans.

Salim	wain bi-truuH fii ijaazat aS-Saif Yaa maayk?
Mike	in shaa' Al-laah bi-nruuH ingilterra haadhi s-sanah :a shaan nazuur al-:aa'ilah. as-sanah l-maaDHiyah ruHna :umaan.
Salim	:umaan bilaad jamiilah jiddan. ruHt hinaak min gabil?
Mike	laa, kaan haadha awwal marrah. inta ta:raf :umaan?
Salim	na:am, ruHna hinaak min sanatain. aish sawwaitu fii :umaan?
Mike	saafarna ila masqaT bi T-Tayyaarah w ga:adna fii fundug jamb al-baHar. ba:dain ista'jarna sayyaarah w tajawwalna shwayyah.
Salim	aish kaan ra'y-ak fii-ha?
Mike	:ajabat-na kathiir. ruHna bi s-sayyaarah ila DHufaar fi l-januub, w shufna ghailam w Tuyuur kathiirah w asmaak w nakhiil maal narjiil. bitna fii khaimah fi l-barr, wa l-awlaad inbasaTu waajid nun haadha.
Salim	kaif kaan al-jaww?
Mike	al-usbuu: al-awwal kaan al-jaww Haarr jiddan, laakin al-usbuu: ath-thaani kaan fiih bard w maTar w hawa shwayyah.
Salim	yaa khaSaarah!
Mike	laa, niHna l-ingliiz mit:awwidiin :ala l-hawa wa l-maTar!



ijáazat aS-Saif	<i>summer holiday</i>
haadhi s-sanah	<i>this year</i>
:a shaan	<i>in order to (short for :ala shaan)</i>
maaDHi	<i>past, last (year, week etc.)</i>
as-sánah l-máaDHiyah	<i>last year</i>
jamíil	<i>beautiful</i>
biláad (fem.)	<i>country</i>
min gábil	<i>before, beforehand</i>
kaan yikúun (B1)	<i>was; will be (see notes)</i>
áwwal márrah	<i>the first time</i>
:áraf yí:raf (A)	<i>to know</i>
min san(a)táin	<i>two years ago</i>
sáafar yisáafir (A)	<i>travel</i>
bi	<i>by (when talking about means of transport)</i>
Tayyáarah (-aat)	<i>plane</i>
istá'jar yistaá'jir (A)	<i>to hire, rent</i>
tajáwwal yitjáwwal (A)	<i>to tour around</i>
ra'y (aaráa')	<i>opinion</i>
aish kaan rá'y-ak fii-ha	<i>what was your opinion of it?</i>
DHufáar	<i>Dhofar (southern region of Oman)</i>
al-janúub	<i>the south</i>
gháilam	<i>turtles (in Oman; elsewhere Hámas)</i>
Tair (Thyúur)	<i>bird</i>
sámak (asmáak)	<i>fish</i>
nákhlah (nakhiil)	<i>palm tree</i>
narjiil	<i>coconuts</i>
baat yibáat (B1)	<i>to spend the night</i>
khaimah (khiyáam)	<i>tent</i>

inbásaT yinbásiT min (A)	<i>to enjoy</i>
jaww	<i>air, atmosphere, weather</i>
usbúu: (asabii:)	<i>week</i>
Haarr	<i>hot</i>
bard	<i>cold (noun)</i>
máTar	<i>rain</i>
háwa	<i>wind, air</i>
khaSáarah	<i>a pity</i>
mit:áwwid :ála	<i>used to, accustomed to</i>

- Where does Mike intend to go on holiday this year?
- When did Salim go to Oman?
- What did the children particularly enjoy?
- How was the weather in the second week?

mulaaHaDHaat (Notes) ملاحظات

- kaan (was, were: verb)**
Although no verb is used in Arabic for *is/are*, there is a verb *kaan* (*was, were*). It has a present tense form *yikuun*, but this implies a future or potential event. (See Unit 10 and the verb tables at the end of the book for the formation of the tenses).

kaan fi l-bait
kunt fii ghurfat-i

He was in the house.
I was in my room.

kaan has many other uses, the main one being to give everything which comes after it a past aspect:

fiih there is/are
:ind-i I have
mumkin nazuur we can visit

kaan fiih there was/were
kaan :ind-i I had
kaan mumkin nazuur we could/were able to visit

laazim yiruuH he must/has to go

kaan laazim yiruuH he had to go

2 going to . . .

In English you say 'he goes to work'; in Arabic there is no translation of the word to:

yi-ruuH ash-shughal	He goes to work
	(lit. he goes the work).
naruuH ingilterra	We are going (to) England.

Insight

If you use the word yisaafir (*he travels* from which our word *safari* comes), then you may use *ila* (to): yisaafir ila taaylaand
He is going (travelling) to Thailand.

3 al-jaww (the weather)

When talking about good, bad, hot and cold weather you can use an adjective:

al-jaww zain/muu zain	The weather is good/not good
al-jaww baarid	The weather is cold.
al-jaww Haarr	The weather is hot.

Alternatively you can use a noun:

fiih bard	It is cold (lit. there is cold).
fiih Harr	It is hot (lit. there is heat).

This noun construction is the only one available for talking about any other weather condition:

fiih shams	It is sunny (lit. there is sun).
fiih ghaim	It is cloudy (lit. there are clouds).
fiih hawa	It is windy (lit. there is wind).
fiih maTar	It is raining (lit. there is rain).
fiih thalj	It is snowing (lit. there is ice, snow).
fiih :aaSifah	It is stormy (lit. there is a storm).
darajat il-Haraarah	It is 30°C (lit. degree the-heat
thalathiin	{is} 30).

4 To talk about the weather in the past, put *kaan* before the statement:

kaan al-jaww baarid	It was cold.
kaan fiih maTar	It was raining, it rained

5



- (a) What does the name of the bus mean in English?
- (b) Which word is missing from the English transliteration?

6 bi (by, by means of)

When you want to talk about a means of transport, you use the word *bi* (by, by means of). Note that where you say *by car, plane* etc., in Arabic you always say *by the*.

bi T-Tayyaarah	by plane
bi s-sayyaarah	by car
bi l-baaS	by bus
bi t-taksi	by taxi
bi s-safiinah	by ship
ruHna masqaT bi T-Tayyaarah	We went to Muscat by plane.

But to say you go on foot, use the verb *yiruuH* (he goes) with *yímshi* (he walks):

muu ba:iid, naruuH nimshi *It's not far, we'll walk.*

7 The points of the compass

<i>ash-shamáal</i>	<i>the North</i>
<i>al-janúub</i>	<i>the South</i>
<i>ash-sharq</i> (or <i>ash-sharg</i>)	<i>the East</i>
<i>al-gharb</i>	<i>the West</i>
<i>shamaal al-khalij</i>	<i>the North of the Gulf</i>
<i>ash-sharg al-awsaT</i>	<i>the Middle East</i>
<i>al-gharb</i>	<i>the West (i.e. Europe and the USA)</i>

The adjectives from these compass directions are formed by adding *-i* (fem. *-iyyah*) to the noun:

urúbba l-gharbiyyah *Western Europe*

ma:luumaat thaqaafiyyah (Cultural tips) معلومات ثقافية

As you might expect, Arabs accept hot weather as a fact of life, and only comment on it if the temperature rises above about 40°C, or if it is excessively humid. They are however very interested in rain, which in most of the region generally comes in the winter. Naturally the success of the harvest depends on the arrival of rain, which is often sudden and can result in flash floods, but usually the sun comes out again and the ground dries up quickly.

The Bedouin have many words for clouds, depending on whether they are rain-bearing or not. The Dhofar area of southern Oman catches the monsoons and has a regular annual rainfall pattern. It is covered with lush green vegetation for considerable periods of the year.

ta:biiraat haammah (Key phrases) تعبيرات هامة

Talking about what you like to do in your spare time

<i>aish tisawwi fii wagt al-faraagh?</i>	<i>What do you do in your free time?</i>
<i>al:ab tanis/skwaash</i>	<i>I play tennis/squash.</i>
<i>aruuH as-suug</i>	<i>I go shopping (lit. to the souq).</i>
<i>ashuuf at-tilifizyuun</i>	<i>I watch television.</i>
<i>agra</i>	<i>I read.</i>
<i>azuur :aa'ilat-i/aSdigaa'-i</i>	<i>I visit my family/friends.</i>

Talking about what you like and don't like to do

<i>tiHibb la:bat at-tanis?</i>	<i>Do you like to play tennis? (lit. the game of tennis).</i>
<i>aHibb la:bat as-skwaash</i>	<i>I like to play squash.</i>
<i>maa aHibb as-sibaaHah</i>	<i>I don't like swimming.</i>

Talking about what you did in the past

<i>la:abt golf</i>	<i>I played golf.</i>
<i>ruHt ad-dooHa</i>	<i>I went to Doha.</i>
<i>shuft sibaag al-Jimaal</i>	<i>I watched the camel-racing.</i>
<i>sawwait riHlah</i>	<i>I went on a trip (made a trip).</i>

núqaT naHwiyyah (Grammar points) نقاط نحوية

The Arabic Verb: Past tense

The past tense uses a past stem with suffixes only. These suffixes are more or less the same for all Arabic verbs, with only slight variations to smooth out pronunciation. There are only two verbs in Arabic

which could be called irregular, and these are fully explained in the verb tables at the end of the book which you should look at regularly.

All verbs in Arabic can be categorised into four types, depending on the nature of the stems. The following is a summary:

TYPE A The simplest type, with one stem for each tense.

The next three types have more than one stem in either or both of the tenses. Which stem is used depends on the part of the verb you are using (*he, we, they*, etc.)

TYPE B1 has two past stems and one present stem.

TYPE B2 also has two past and one present stem, but is of a different nature.

TYPE C verbs have two stems for each of the past and present tenses.

Important note

Because Arabic does not have the handy infinitive form (*to go, to read* etc.) found in most European languages, we use its most basic part, the past tense *he*-form, which has neither prefixes nor suffixes. From this lesson onwards, verbs are given as follows:

Past tense *he*-form followed by present tense *he*-form followed by verb type, e.g. (A) given between brackets and then the meaning expressed as *to* . . .

For example:

raaH, yiruuH (B1) to go (lit. *he went, he goes*)

Note: Only two parts are given for each verb. For types other than group (A) you must check in the verb tables.

Below are two examples with the suffixes picked out in bold type.

TYPE A has only one past stem. An example is akhadh to *take* (actually, of course, *he took*):

Singular		Plural	
I	akhadh - t	we	akhadh - na
you (masc.)	akhadh - t	you (m. and f.)	akhadh - tu
you (fem.)	akhadh - ti		
he/(it)	akhadh - (no suffix)	they (m. and f.)	akhadh - u
she (it)	akhadh - at		

TYPE B1 has two past stems. The main stem has been picked out in italics. An example is raaH to go (*he went*):

Singular		Plural	
I	ruH - t	we	ruH - na
you (masc.)	ruH - t	you (m. and f.)	ruH - tu
you (fem.)	ruH - ti		
he/(it)	<i>raaH</i> - (no suffix)	they (m. and f.)	<i>raaH</i> - u
she (it)	<i>raaH</i> - at		

Insight

Where verbs have more than one past stem the main one (i.e. that given first in the vocabularies and glossary) is used with the *he, she* and *they* form, or, put another way, when either there is no suffix or the suffix begins with a vowel.

Note that as with present tense verbs, there is usually no need to put in the pronoun (*I, you* etc.), as it is already implied by the verb itself. However, in the following exercises it has often been supplied for the sake of clarity.

tamriinaat (Exercises) تمرينات

CD 2, TR 3, 4:50

- 1 Listen to the recording or read the transcript at the end of the book, and make a note of what these five people say they do in their spare time.

booling
siinima

bowling
cinema

- 2 (a) How would you ask Mohammad, in Arabic, if he would like to:

(i) go fishing? (ii) play tennis? (iii) go to the market?

What do you think his reply would be to each question?

- (b) How would you ask Faridah, in Arabic, if she would like to:

(i) play tennis?
(ii) watch television?
(iii) go swimming?

What do you expect her answers would be?

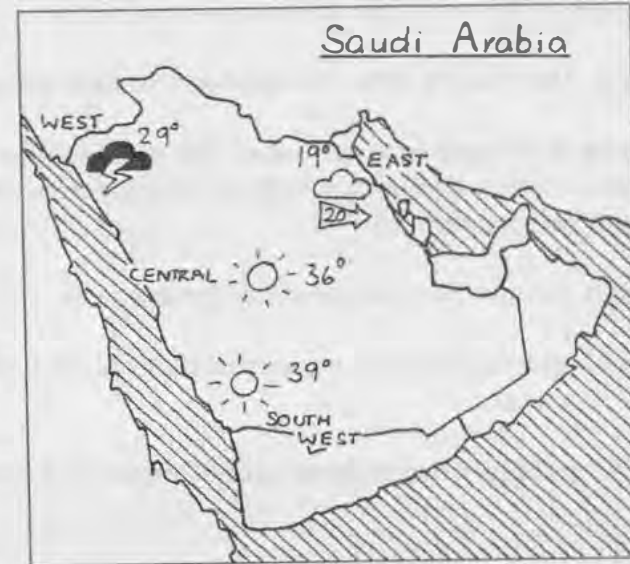
- 3 You are describing a trip you made while staying in the Gulf. Match up the two halves of the sentences so that they make sense.

(a) ga:adt	(i) matHaf
(b) ista'jart	(ii) baarid
(c) akalt	(iii) sayyaarah
(d) zurt	(iv) fi l-fundug
(e) shuft	(v) samak w baTaaTis
(f) kaan al-jaww	(vi) ghailam

gá:ad, yíg:ad (A)

to sit, stay, remain

- 4 Look at the map of Saudi Arabia and say whether the statements below are true or false.



mánTigah (manáaTig)

ghaim (ghuyúum)

áwsaT, fem. wúsTaa

rá:ad

bárg

:áaSifah (:awáaSif)

area, region

cloud

middle, central

thunder

lightning

storm

- (a) fi l-manTigah al-gharbiyyah ghuyuum w hawa, sittah w :ishriin darajah
(b) fi l-manTigah l-wusTaa shams, sittah w thalaathiin darajah
(c) fi manTigah al-januub al-gharbi shams, khamsah w thalaathiin darajah
(d) fi l-manTigah ash-shargiyyah :awaaSif, ra:ad w barg, tis:ata:shar darajah

- 5 Jim and Eleanor are with their friends Khaled and Samirah in Muscat, and are planning to spend Friday with them and their family. Read the conversation and check your comprehension by answering the questions below.

Khaled	aish al-barnaamij baakir?
Jim	ayy shay. aish barnaamij-ak inta?
Khaled	niHna aHyaanan nisawwi riHlah ma:a l-awlaad yoom al-jum:ah. niruuH al-baHar, al-mazra:ah, ayy makaan
Samirah	mumkin banruuH nakhal. al-jaww jamiil hinaak, wa l-awlaad yiHibbuun-uh
Eleanor	aish nsawwii hinaak fii nakhal?
Samirah	fiih gala:ah w :ain saakhinah, w kull-uh akhDHar w Hilw. al-awlaad mumkin yiHabuun w nakkul piikniik hinaak
Jim	n-zain. laazim naakhudh akil w mashruubaat baaridah Hagg al-piikniik
Khaled	laa, nashtari kull shay fi T-Tariig. fiih dukkaan gariib min al-:ain.

- What does Khaled ask about tomorrow?
- What do Khaled and Samirah sometimes do on Fridays?
- Why does Samirah suggest going to Nakhal?
- What is there to see in Nakhal?
- What could they do there?
- What does Jim suggest?
- What will they buy?
- Where can they buy it?

barnaamij (baráamij)	<i>programme, plan of activity</i>
mázra:ah (mazáari:)	<i>farm, country estate</i>
makáan (-aat)	<i>place</i>
ayy makaan	<i>anywhere</i>
:ain (fem.) (:uyuun)	<i>spring; eye</i>

sáakhin
Hilw
Hagg

warm, hot
sweet, pleasant, pretty
for

CD 2, TR 3, 5:12

- 6 Listen to the weather forecast for the Gulf Region on the recording, or read the transcript, and note down what the weather will be like for tomorrow in (a) the North (b) Bahrain and Qatar (c) the Emirates and Dhofar.



mánTigat al-khaliiij (al-:arabi)
Haráarah
dárajat al-Haráarah

the (Arab) Gulf region
heat
temperature (lit. degree of heat)

al-báaTinah

the Batinah, eastern coastal strip of Oman

- 7 You have been on holiday in the Gulf and get chatting to the taxi-driver on the way to the airport. Fill in your part of the conversation.

Inta
sawwáag at-taksi

Ask him where he is from.
ana min al-hind, min bangaloor
fi l-januub. inta zurt al-hind?

inta

Tell him you went last year, to
Delhi.

sawwáag at-taksi

aish sawwait hinaak?

inta

Tell him you did a tour, and you
took a lot of photographs, and
you went shopping.

sawwáag at-taksi

shuft al-jibaal?

inta

Say yes, but fram for away. Say
they were very beautiful.

sawwáag at-taksi

laakin al-jaww waajid baarid fi
sh-shita, w fiih thalj

inta

Tell him it's not cold here in the
Gulf in the winter!

QV

dálhi
jáwlah (-aat)

Delhi
tour

al-khaTT al-:árabí (Arabic script) الخط العربي

In this unit you will learn two more sets of Arabic letters, the equivalents of d and dh and r and z. The second of each pair is distinguished by having one dot above it. You already know two of them from the currency units dirham, diinaar and riyaa in Unit 5.

Name	Initial	Medial	Final	Separate	Pronunciation
daal	د	د	د	د	d
dhaal	ذ	ذ	ذ	ذ	dh
raa'	ر	ر	ر	ر	r
zaay	ز	ز	ز	ز	z

These are all non-joiners, so there are really only two forms for each.

At first the two pairs look similar. However the daal and the dhaal are written above the line, and have an upright stroke leaning towards the left. The raa' and the zaay start on the line and go below it, and have no upward stroke except the tiny one where they meet the ligature. They have a much less pronounced hook than the first pair.

Insight

There is no difficulty in pronunciation here, but remember that dh is the sound of English *th* in words like *that, those, then*. Also remember the r must be trilled as in Scots or Spanish.

Since you know all the words below, this time here are some Arabic words and their translations for you to match up.

- | | |
|---------------------------|----------|
| (a) good, fine | ١- برد |
| (b) journey, flight, trip | ٢- درجة |
| (c) cold (adj.) | ٣- حجز |
| (d) cold (noun) | ٤- جزيرة |
| (e) step, degree | ٥- بحر |
| (f) heat, temperature | ٦- حرارة |
| (g) booking, reservation | ٧- تليج |
| (h) island | ٨- رحلة |
| (i) sea | ٩- بارد |
| (j) ice, snow | ١٠- زين |

Test yourself

This test covers the main vocabulary, phrases and language points given in Unit 9. If you are not sure about your answers, go back to the dialogues and exercises for some revision, before going on to Unit 10. For the answers, see the Key to the exercises.

Some tourists are on holiday in Ras al-Khaimah, and are telling Mahmoud at the hotel reception what they did during the day and what they hope to do tomorrow. You fill in the correct form of the verb; the stem has been put in brackets for you. You will need the following new vocabulary:

qy

naam, yinaam (B1)

viidiyoo (viidiyooháat)

to sleep, go to sleep
video

- 1 ana (ishtara C) banjari fi s-suug adh-dhahab
- 2 jaan (la:ab A) tanis ma:a zoojat-uh
- 3 niHna (sabaH A) fi l-masbaH
- 4 ana (akal A) al-ghada ma:a ukhti fii maT:am :arabi
- 5 maryam (naam B1) w ba:dain (shaaf B1) viidiyoohaat fii ghurfat-ha
- 6 Khaled wa Nasser (ista'jar A) sayyaarah wa (raaH B1) Hatta
- 7 niHna (raaH B1) ash-shaarjah wa (zaar B1) as-suug
- 8 piitar wa saara (saafar A) ila gaTar wa (sawwa C) ghooS as-skuuba
- 9 kaan yuusif maa (:araf B) aish (sawwa C), fa (ga:ad A) fi l-fundug, maa (kharaj A).
- 10 (raaH B1) naaSir wa-khaalid dubay wa (shaaf B1) sibaag al jimaal

10

تاريخ العرب

taariikh al-:arab

The history of the Arabs

In this unit you will learn

- How to say what you were doing or used to do in the past
- More ways of describing things
- To describe how and when you do things

New words and phrases

CD 2, TR 4

Listen to the recording.

Hiwaar 1 (Dialogue 1) حوار ١

CD 2, TR 4, 0:16

Bill asks his friend Suleiman to give him an outline of the history of the Arabs.

Bill	mumkin tikhabbir-ni shwayyah :an taariikh al-:arab yaa akh-i?
Suleiman	Tab:an. aish tiriid ta:raf?
Bill	awwalan, al-:arab aSal-hum min wain?
Suleiman	al-:arab aSal-hum min jaziirat al-:arab.
Bill	ya:ni maa kaan fiih :arab fii maSir mathalan?
Suleiman	laa, haadha ba:d DHuhaar al-islam.
Bill	w aish Saar ba:d DHuhaar al-islam?
Suleiman	fi l-guruun ba:d DHuhaar al-islam, al-:arab intasharu li-ghaayat aS-Siin fi sh-sharg w al-andalus - ya:ni isbaanya - fi l-gharb.
Bill	idhan al-junuud al-:arab fataHu buldaan kathiirah!
Suleiman	na:am. Hatta al-:arab tishuuf inn al-:arab la-hum duwal kathiirah.
Bill	wa fii haadhi d-duwal kull-ha an-naas yitkallamuun :arabi?
Suleiman	bi-DH-DHabT. al-lughah l-:arabiyyah hiyya lughat al-umm li-Hawaali miyyah w khamsiin milyoon min sukkaan al-:aalam al-mu:aaSir.

biláad (buldáan) (fem.)	country
Háttá	until
al-'aan	now
inn	that (conjunction)
dáwlah (dúwal)	state, country, nation
takállam, yitkállam (A)	to speak
lúghah (-aat)	language
lúghat al-úmm	mother tongue (lit. language of the mother)
Hawáali	about, approximately
sáakin (sukkáan)	inhabitant, resident
al-áalam	the world
mu:áaSir	contemporary

- Where did the Arabs originally come from?
- What happened after the appearance of Islam?
- How many people speak Arabic as their mother tongue in the contemporary world?

mulaaHaDHaat (Notes) ملاحظات

- taariikh al-:arab (the history of the Arabs)**
This is the possessive construction again: noun without al- followed by noun with al-.
- :arab**
See grammar section on nouns and adjectives of nationality.
- fataHu (they conquered)**
This verb usually means simply *to open* but in military contexts it is also used for *to conquer*.
- al-lughah l-:arabiyyah hiyya lughat al-umm li- . . .**
The *hiyya (it)* here lends some emphasis to the sentence. *li- (to, for)* here expresses possession (an alternative to *:ind* used sometimes).

khábbar, yikhábbir (A)	<i>to tell, inform</i>
:an	<i>of, about</i>
áwwalan	<i>firstly</i>
:arabi (:arab)	<i>Arab, Arabic</i>
ás (a)l (uSúul)	<i>origin</i>
jaziirat al-:arab	<i>the Arabian peninsula (lit. the island of the Arabs)</i>
maS(i)r	<i>Egypt</i>
mathalan	<i>for example</i>
DHuhaar	<i>emergence, appearance</i>
al-islám	<i>Islam</i>
Saar, yiSiir (B1)	<i>to happen, become</i>
garn (gurúun)	<i>century</i>
intáshar, yintáshir (A)	<i>to spread, spread out</i>
aS-Siin	<i>China</i>
al-ándalus	<i>the Arab name for their empire in Spain</i>
isbaanya	<i>Spain (modern name)</i>
júndi (junúud)	<i>soldier</i>
fataH, yíftaH (A)	<i>to open, conquer</i>

ma:luumaat thaqaafiyah (Cultural tips) معلومات ثقافية

This is not a history book, but it is as well to know something about and show an interest in the Arab heritage. As mentioned in the dialogue, the Arab empire was very extensive, and their scholars and writers made many important contributions to science, medicine, engineering and other subjects.

This generally receives scant attention in European education, which tends to jump from the Graeco-Roman era to the Renaissance. In the centuries preceding this Renaissance (i.e. 're-birth') of European culture, the torch of learning was carried by the Arabs, who were far ahead of the West in practically all fields of endeavour.

Arab occupation of Southern Spain (roughly Andalusia which is the same word as the Arabic al-andalus), the last outpost of the Arab Empire in Europe, ended with the fall of Granada in 1492, the year in which Columbus discovered America.

Hiwaar 2 (Dialogue 2) حوار ٢

CD 2, TR 4, 1:32

Bill asks Suleiman to tell him something about Islam.

Bill	mumkin tikhabbir-ni :an ad-diin al-islami shwayyah?
Suleiman	akiid. anzal Al-laah al-qur'aan al-kariim :ala muhammad rasuul Al-laah, Salla Al-laahu :alái-hi wa sallam, fii awáa'íl I-garn as-saabí: al-miilaadi.
Bill	kaan an-nabi muhammad min makkah, muu kidha?
Suleiman	na:am. mawluud fii makkah al-mukarramah, w ba:dain haajar ila l-madiinah l-munawwarah fii sanat sitt miyyah ithnain wa :ishriin miilaadiyyah. haadhi nasammii-ha l-hijrah, w naHsab at-taariikh min haadhi s-sanah.

diin (adyaan)
isláami
ánzal, yúnzil (A)

al-qur'áan
kariim

rasúul Al-láah
Sálla Al-láahu :alái-hi wa sállam
awáa'il

miiláadi

nábi (anbiyáa')
mákkah
kídha, also chídha, chídhi
muu kídha
mawluúd
al-mukárramah

háajar, yiháajir (A)
al-madiinah
al-munáwwarah

sámma, yisámmi (C)
al-híjrah
Hásab, yiHsab (A)

religion
Islamic
to reveal, send down (of God, the Koran)
the Koran
generous, noble (in this context holy)
the Apostle of God
Peace be upon Him
the first, early part of (used with months, years, centuries) pertaining to the birth (of Christ), i.e. A.D.
prophet
Mecca
like this, so
lit. isn't it so?
born
Holy (honorific adjective used after Mecca)
to emigrate
Medinah
resplendent, illuminated (honorific adjective used after Medinah)
to call, name
the Hegirah (see below)
reckon, count, calculate

- (a) Where was the Prophet Muhammad born?
(b) In which year did he migrate to Medinah?
(c) Why is this date important in Arab history?

mulaaHaDHaat (Notes) ملاحظات

- 1 Written, especially classical, Arabic differs from the spoken variety. Since all Islamic religious scriptures, especially the Holy Koran,

are couched in a high style of Classical Arabic, people tend to import words and phrases from this register of the language when discussing such subjects.

Apart from words and phraseology, pronunciation is also affected, especially the letter q (see pronunciation notes, p. 15), especially in the Arabic word for the Koran, *al-qur'aan*.

- 2 The verb *anzal* (*to send down, reveal*) (of the Koran) is not used in other contexts.
- 3 Phrases such as *Salla l-laahu :alai-hi wa sallam* (*peace be upon him*) and *Iaa iláaha illa l-láah* (*there is no other god but God*) (see exercises below) also preserve some of the old Classical endings which have long since been dropped in everyday speech.

Insight – hijri and miilaadi

These are the terms used to distinguish between the Islamic and Christian dating systems, often abbreviated in writing to هـ and م written after the date. The Islamic dating system, now (except in Saudi Arabia) almost restricted to use in religious connections – although still given along with the Christian date on most Arabic newspapers – began on 16th June 622 AD, the date of the Prophet's hijrah (often spelled in English *Hegirah* for some reason) from Mecca to Medinah.

THE NEWS الأخبار
الجمعة ٢٢ يناير ٢٠١٠ الموافق ٦ صفر ١٤٣١ هـ
Friday 22 January 2010, 6 Safar 1431 A.H.

- 4 *miilaadi*
The adjective (see grammatical points) from *miilaad* birth, i.e. that of Christ.
- 5 Honorific adjectives and phrases.
These are automatically used after certain nouns referring to religious persons, places and things. Muslims do not expect Westerners to

know or use these, but you will hear them frequently. Each place, religious figure or group of figures has a specific one:

<i>al-qur'aan al-kariim</i>	<i>the Holy Koran</i>
<i>makkah al-mukarramah</i>	<i>Holy Mecca</i>
<i>al-madiinah al-munawwarah</i>	<i>Medina the Resplendent</i>
<i>muhammad rasuul Al-laah, Salla</i>	<i>Muhammad the Prophet of</i>
<i>Al-laah :alai-hi wa sallam</i>	<i>God, peace be upon Him</i>

Jesus Christ is counted among the general ranks of the prophets in Islam, and merits the honorific *:alai-hi s-salaam* (*peace be upon him*).

Insight

nasammíl-ha (*we call it*) and *ma:náa-ha*

Remember that any final vowel at the end of a word is lengthened (and stressed) when a pronoun suffix is added.

ta:biiraat haammah (Key phrases) تعبيرات هامة

❖ CD 2, TR 4, 2:28

More examples of Arabic past (continuous):

akhi maHmuud kaan yiruuH al-madrasah as-saa:ah sab:ah S-SubaH
My brother Mahmoud used to go to school at seven o'clock in the morning.

kaanat ukhti faaTimah tidarris al-lughah l-arabiyyah fii landan *My sister Fatima was teaching/used to teach Arabic in London.*

núqaT naHwiyyah (Grammar points) نقاط نحوية

1 Adjectives formed from nouns

In English you have several ways of forming adjectives from nouns, for example adding *-ic* (e.g. *historic, photographic*), or *-an* (e.g. *American,*

Belgian). Some of these require a slight alteration to the base noun, e.g. the final -y in *history* has to be omitted, and the -um from Belgium.

Arabic mainly uses one ending -i, which becomes -iyyah in the feminine, and usually -iyyiin in the plural when applied to human beings. However, changes to the base-word are also required in certain cases.

Probably the largest class of such adjectives in Arabic are those referring to nationality, places of origin or tribal/family affiliations, such as:

Country	Masc.	Fem.	Plural	Translation
gáTar	gáTari	gaTariyyah	gaTariyyiin	Qatari
:umáan	:umáani	:umaaniyyah	:umaaniyyiin	Omani
máS(i)r	máSri	maSriyyah	maSriyyiin	Egyptian

Note that:

- If the place name from which the adjective is derived has the definite article al-, this is dropped when forming the adjective:
al-yaman → yamani
al-kuwait → kuwaiti
al-urdun → urduni (*Jordanian*)
- If it has the -ah feminine ending, this is also dropped, and there are certain anomalies with words ending in -a, which can omit this final vowel and add -i, or take the ending -aani, -aawi, or even use a completely different base.

These are best learned as they come, but here are a few common examples. The plurals are sometimes irregular:

Country	Masc.	Fem.	Plural	Translation
Ingiltéra	inglizi	ingliiziyyah	inglíz	English
amríika	amríki	amriikiyyah	amrlikáan	American
faránsa	faransáawi*	faransiyyah	faransiyyiin	French
dubáy	dibawi	dibawiyyah	dibawiyyiin	from Dubai
al-mághrib	maghribi	maghribiyyah	magháar(i)bah	Moroccan

* or faránsi

(c) :arabi (*Arab, Arabic*) has the irregular plural :arab

Insight

These adjective formations are not restricted to countries of origin. Almost all personal names in the Gulf end in such an attributive adjective formed from the name of a person's tribe or family, e.g. khamiis bin Hamad al-baTTaashi (i.e. *Khamis bin [son of] Hamad of the Battash tribe*).

You can improve your reading by trying to spot the Arabic letter **س** – which is how this ending -i is spelled in Arabic – at the end of names on business cards or shop signs. It won't always be there, but there is a very good chance that it will.



- (d) This adjectival ending can be added to ordinary nouns, as for instance in dialogue 3 we have:
 islaami (*Islamic*) from islaam
 miilaadi from miilaad (AD, referring to the birth of Christ)

The adjective used for the Islamic year hijri illustrates the dropping of the feminine ending of the base noun hijrah.

In this category fall also the 'non-primary' colours, which are adjectives formed from natural objects, usually fruits or flowers:

- ward (*roses*) → wardi (*pink*)
 burtugaal (*oranges*) → burtugaali (*orange*)
 banafsaj (*violets*) → banafsaji (*violet*)

There are more examples in the exercises at the end of the unit. As a final illustration, the Arabic name for the Kingdom of Saudi Arabia is: al-mámlakah al-:arabíyyah as-sa:uudíyyah (lit. *the Kingdom the Arab the Saudi*) where both *Arab* and *Saud* become adjectives to agree with *Kingdom*.

2 The past continuous/habitual

You have already learned that there are only two main verb tenses in Arabic, the present and the past. The future is merely the present with the prefix b(a)-. These three will get you through most situations, but there are one or two more possibilities, the main one being that used to express continual or habitual action in the past. This shade of meaning is not always immediately apparent in English. For instance, when you say *he was doing*, *he used to do*, etc., the words show that you intend a continuous/habitual meaning. However, if you consider *he worked in the oil company for three years*, *she lived most of her life in London*, the bare past tense verb gains its continuous aspect from the context. In Arabic, however, the simple past tense has a sort of 'sudden death' instantaneous action. This can be softened into a continuous or habitual happening simply by using the verb string: kaan (past tense) + main verb (present tense). The kaan here as usual puts the whole sentence in the past. Examples of this construction are given below.

kaan is a TYPE B1 verb. For convenience, here is its past tense in full:

Singular		Plural	
I was	kunt	we were	kunna
you (m.) were	kunt (same as above)	you were	kuntu
you (f.) were	kunti		
he was	kaan	they were	kaanu
she was	kaanat		

as-sanah l-maaDHyah kunt adrus at-taarikh al-islaami fi jaami:at al-kuwait *Last year I studied (was studying) Islamic history in (at) Kuwait university.*

as-saa:ah kam kaanu yiruuHuun al-maktab? *What time did they go (used to go) to the office?*

kunt aHibb al-kurah kathiiir, laakin al-Hiin afaDHDHil at-tanis *I used to like football a lot, but now I prefer tennis.*

umm-i kaanat tiTbukh akil ladhiidh *My mother used to cook delicious food.*

Tábakh, yiTbukh (A)	to cook
ladhiidh	delicious

3 Adverbs

Adverbs are words which describe *how*, *when* or *where* the action of verb takes/took place, and in English you usually form them by adding the ending -ly, as in *quickly*, *formerly*.

Arabic has two ways of forming adverbs:

- Using the suffix -an, as in Tab(a):an (lit. *naturally*) jiddan (*very*) aHyáanan (*at times*). In this unit you have máthalan (*for example*) from máthal (*an example*).
- Using a preposition + noun construction, as the English *with ease* = *easily*. The Arabic preposition used is usually bi-. In this unit we have had bi-DH-DHAbT (*with exactness, exactly*) and another common one is bi-sur:ah (*with speed, quickly*).

tamriinaat (Exercises) تمرينات

- 1 Here are two types of Arabic adverbs:
 haadhi T-Tayyaarah tiruuH al-qaahirah mubaasharatan *This plane goes directly to Cairo.*
 aHmad yitkallam bi-sur:ah *Ahmed speaks quickly.*

Fit the correct adverbs from the box into the gaps in the sentences below. Only one will make real sense.

bi-suhuulah	daayman
fawran	bi-sur:ah
jiddan	mathalan
abadan	Tab:an
bi-DH-DHabt	aHyaanan

- (a) _____ naruUH nazuur al-:aa'ilah yoom al-jum:ah
 (b) inta min Abu Dhabi? na:am. titkallam :arabi? _____ !
 (c) tishuuf t-tilifizyuum kathiiir? laa _____
 (d) as-sayyaarah al-marsaidis al-jadiidah jamiilah _____
 (e) :amm-i saalim kaan _____ yishrab finjaan gahwah as-saa:ah khamsah S-SubaH
 (f) akh-i S-Saghiir ya:raf ingliizi w faransaawi w almaani. yit:allam al-lughaat al-ajnabiyyah _____
 (g) sulaimaan yisuug _____ . haadha khaTar
 (h) ithnain w ithnain arba:ah, laa? aywah _____
 (i) aHibb ar-riyaaDHaat. al-kurah wa t-tanis _____
 (j) aT-Tayyaarah as-saa:ah thamaanyah w nuSS, laazim naruUH al-maTaar _____

finjaan (fanajiin)	(small coffee) cup
almáani	German
ájnabi (ajáanib)	foreign
saag, yisúug (B1)	to drive
kháTar	danger
suhúulah	ease

ábadan	never
daayman	always

- 2 These are examples of adjectives formed from nouns.
 ad-diin al-islami *the Islamic religion*
 al-lughah l-:arabiyyah *the Arabic language*

In the following sentences, change the nouns in brackets into adjectives, remembering to make them agree with the thing they are describing.

- (a) faaTimah (kuwait), laakin tiskun fii dubay
 (b) huwwa Taalib (isbaanya) min madriid
 (c) al-khaTT al-(:arab) jamiil jiddan
 (d) maa a:raf al-lughah al-(faransa)
 (e) kaan al-gabaayil al-(:arab) yiskunuun fii jaziirat al-:arab gabil DHuhaar al-islam
 (f) al-:aaSimah al-(:umaan) isim-ha masqaT
 (g) maa aHibb al-loon al-(ward)
 (h) al-qur'aan al-kariim maktuub bi-l-lughah al-(:arab)
 (i) fiih Tullaab (gaTar) kathiiirin fii jaami:at landan
 (j) maa ariid gumaash (banafsaj), ariid (burtugaal)
 (k) al-bank al-(waTan) gariib min as-suug
 (l) akbar markaz (tijaarah) fii dubay huwwa suug al-ghurair

gabiilah (gabáayil)	tribe
:aaSimah (:awáasim)	capital (city)
maktuub	written
gumáash (agmishah)	cloth, material
wáTan (awTáan)	nation, homeland
suug al-ghurair	Al Ghorair Centre in Dubai

- 3 Change the bold verbs in the following sentences to past continuous/habitual.

Example:

aHmad raaH isbaanya fi S-Saif (*Ahmed went to Spain in the summer.*) → kaan aHmad yiruuH isbaanya fi S-Saif (*Ahmed used to go to Spain in the summer.*)

- (a) la:abt goolf
- (b) ukhti fariidah darasat al-lughah l-ingliiziyyah
- (c) ishtaghalna fii sharikah fi l-baHrain
- (d) waSal al-baaS as-saa:ah tis:ah
- (e) biil yitkallam :arabi zain
- (f) aT-Tullaab darasu taarikh al-:arab
- (g) raaHat as-suug as-saa:ah kam?
- (h) agra l-qur' aan al-kariim
- (i) wain sakantu fii abu Dhabi?
- (j) ruHna l-baHar fi S-Saif

QUICK VOCAB

dárras, yidárris (A) *to teach*
dáras, yidrus (A) *to study*

4 Bilal asks Suleiman about the fundamental beliefs of Islam and the main festivals. Listen to the conversation on the recording, or read the transcript, and answer the questions below.

CD 2, TR 4, 2:52



QUICK VOCAB

ahámm *more/most important*
khaSiiSah (khaSáa'IS) *characteristic, feature*
asáas (úsus) *basis, fundamental belief*
áHad *formal Arabic for waaHid one*
laa iláaha ílla l-lláah *'There is no God but Allah, and*
wa muHámmadun *Muhammad is the Apostle of God'.*
rasúul Al-láah *The Muslim creed.*

kálimah (-aat) *word*
:álam (a:láam) *flag*
sa:úudi *Saudi*
aish ghair? *what else?*
Sálla, yiSálli (C) *to pray, say one's prayers*
fájir *dawn*
mághrib *Sunset*
:isha *evening prayer (about an hour after sunset)*
ittijáah *direction; facing, in the direction of*
al-giblah` *the direction of prayer, facing Mecca*
:iid (a:yáad) *eid, religious festival*
al-fiT(i)r *the breaking of fast*
al-áDHHa *the sacrifice (of an animal)*
sámi:, yisma: (A) *to hear*
Saam, yiSúum (B₁) *to fast*
Tuul *throughout (before an expression of time)*
má:na *meaning*
al-wáaHid *one, a person*
fáTar, YifTur (A) *to break a fast; have breakfast*
Soom *fast, fasting*
al-Hajj *the pilgrimage*
móosam (mawáasim) *season*
al-ká:bah *the Kaaba, holy shrine in Mecca*
mubáasharatan *directly*

QUICK VOCAB



- What is the basic fundamental belief of Islam?
- Where do you commonly see it written?
- How many times per day do Muslims pray, and at what approximate times?
- What is the *gibiah* or *qiblah*?
- How many main Islamic festivals are there?
- What is marked by Eid al-Adha?
- What is observed during the month of Ramadan?
- What is marked by Eid al-Fitr?
- What sacred shrine do Muslims visit during the pilgrimage?

al-khaTT al-árabi (Arabic script) الخط العربي

In this unit we shall look at another 'pair' of consonants, *s* and *sh*, the latter having three dots above it. The pronunciation is the English *s* as in *bits* (not as in *bins*), and *sh* as in *shin*.

Both these letters are joiners, so there are four forms of each:

Name	Initial	Medial	Final	Separate	Pronunciation
siin	س	س	س	س	s
shiin	ش	ش	ش	ش	sh

The meaningful part of these letters is the three little spikes, looking like a rounded English *w*, with the ligatures and final flourishes. They are written on the line (except for the final flourishes), and are classed as small letters.

Insight

In fact, these letters have such a low profile that, in many styles of handwriting and calligraphy (for instance, on shop signs), the three little spikes are ironed out, and the letters are reduced to a long line, which the eye has to pick up as a letter

from the context. For example, the proper name Hassan—which has, of course, only one *s* in Arabic is written:

حسن

but will often look more like this:

حـن

with only the length of the stroke between the ح and the ن telling us that there is an *s* in there.

As with the only other letter which has three dots above it (ث) these are often written on the shiin in the form of an upside-down *v* or a French circumflex accent ^ (see alphabet section).

Below are some words you already know which include these letters. Try to transcribe them according to the system used in this book. (Remember, no short vowels or doubled letters are shown!)

سنة	-٦	سيارة	-١
سنة	-٧	مدرس	-٢
مباشر	-٨	سالم	-٣
ساخن	-٩	خمسة	-٤
سليمان	-١٠	شمس	-٥

Test yourself

This test covers the main vocabulary, phrases and language points given in Unit 10. If you are not sure about your answers, go back

to the dialogues and exercises for some revision, before going on to Unit 11. For the answers, see the Key to the exercises.

Change the verb from the past tense to the past continuous in the following sentences:

- 1 akh-i akal bargharaat kull yoom
- 2 ishtaghalt fii sharikah kabiirah fii dubay
- 3 sabaH-naa fi l-baHr fi l-fujairah
- 4 saafarat ila miSr kull sanah
- 5 zurt waalidai-k fii nyuu york?
- 6 la:abuu tanis fi-l-misa
- 7 akal-naa samak ladhiidh fi l-maT:am al-lubnaani
- 8 muHammad waSSal awlaad-uh fii sayyarat-uh
- 9 al-awlaad darasu al-lughah l-ingliiziyyah fii jaami:at qaTar
- 10 ishtarait fawaakih fi-s-suug

11

الصحة

aS-SiHHah Health

In this unit you will learn how to

- Say you don't feel well
- Ask for a chemist or doctor
- Buy remedies

New words and phrases

CD 2, TR 5

Listen to the recording.

Hiwaar 1 (Dialogue 1) حوار ١

CD 2, TR 5, 0:14

Bill Stewart is not feeling well, and he goes to a chemist in Dubai.

Chemist	kaif mumkin asaa: id-ak?
Bill	:ind-i waja: fii baTn-i. :ind-ak dawa Hagg haadha?
Chemist	Saar l-ak aishgadd :ind-ak haadha l-waja:?

Bill	min awwal ams
Chemist	:ind-ak ishaal?
Bill	na:am, shwayyah.
Chemist	:ind-i haadhi l-Hubuub hina. hiyya mufiidah jiddan.
Bill	kam marrah fi l-yoom laaziin aakhudh-na?
Chemist	khudh Habbah waaHidah arba: marraat fi l-yoom li muddat khamsat ayyaam. ishrab maay kathiir w laa taakul fawaakih wala akil magli
Bill	shukran

wája:(awjáa:)	<i>ache, pain</i>
báT(i)n	<i>stomach</i>
dáwa (adwiyah)	<i>medicine (incl. weedkiller, chemicals)</i>
min	<i>from, since</i>
isháal (pronounced is-háal)	<i>diarrhoea</i>
Hábbah (Hubúub)	<i>pill</i>
mufiid	<i>effective, beneficial</i>
kam márrah	<i>how often, how many times</i>
ákhadh, yáakhudh (A irreg.)	<i>to take</i>
laa táakul	<i>do not eat</i>
fáakihah (fawáakih)	<i>fruit</i>
wála	<i>or, nor (lit. and not)</i>
mágli	<i>fried</i>

- (a) How long has Bill felt ill?
 (b) How often does Bill need to take the pills?
 (c) For how many days should he take them?
 (d) What advice does the chemist give him?

mulaaHaDHaat (Notes) ملاحظات

- 1 min (from) + period of time = since
 2 ishaal (diarrhoea)
 The s and the h here are two separate letters, not the single letter shiin.

Hiwaar 2 (Dialogue 2) حوار ٢

CD 2, TR 5, 1:04

Kamil in Doha is going to work but he doesn't look well. His wife Rayyah is worried about him.

Rayyah	aish Haal-ak?
Kamil	al-Hagiigah, ana ta:baan shwayyah.
Rayyah	aish fii-k?
Kamil	:ind-i waja: al-asnaan
Rayyah	min mata?
Kamil	ibtada min yoomain, laakin ams bi l-lail Saar al-waja: shadiid, wa l-Hiin yooja:-ni kathiir
Rayyah	laish maa khabbart-ni? laazim tiruuH :ind Tabiib al-asnaan
Kamil	SaHiiH, laakin al-Hiin niHna waajid mashghuuliin fi l-maktab, w maa :ind-i wagt. akhadht asbriin, w in shaa' Al-laah yikuun aHsan ba:d shwayyah
Rayyah	al-mafruuDH tiruuH fawran gabiit maa yiSiir awHash w yikuun laazim yigla: ta-k sinn-ak!
Kamil	laa tit:abiin nafs-ich. huwwa laa shay.
Rayyah	idha kaan laa shay, kaif shakl-ak mariiDH kidha? ana battaSil fit Tabiib as-asnaan al-Hiin aakhudh maw:id

al-Hagiigah	<i>the truth, actually</i>
ta:baan	<i>tired, ill</i>
aish fii-k?	<i>what is wrong with you? (lit. what is in you?)</i>
sinn (asnáan)	<i>tooth</i>
wája: al-asnaan	<i>toothache</i>
máta	<i>when? (in questions only)</i>
ibtáda, yibtádi (C)	<i>to begin, start</i>
ams bi-l-lail	<i>last night</i>
shadiid	<i>violent, acute</i>
wája:, yooja: (A)	<i>to hurt, give pain</i>

laish	why
Tabiib al-asnaan	dentist (lit. doctor [of] the teeth)
SaHiiH	right, correct
mashghúul	busy
wag(i)t	time
asbriin	aspirin
al-mafrúuDH	lit. that which is required, should be done
áwHash	worse
gála:, yigla: (A)	pull out
tá:ab, yit:ab (A)	to tire
laa tit:abiin nafs- ich	don't worry (lit. don't tire yourself (fem.))
laa shay	nothing
idha, idha kaan	if
shák(i)l (ashkáal)	appearance; shape, type, kind
maríiDH (márDHa)	ill; sick person, patient
máw:id (mawa:iid)	appointment; plural. schedule, operating hours

- (a) When did Kamil begin to feel worse?
 (b) Why doesn't he want to go to the dentist?

mulaaHaDHaat (Notes) ملاحظات

- 1 ta:baan (lit. tired)
This word is commonly used as a euphemism for *ill*, when the complaint is not severe. The real word for *ill* is *maríiDH*.
- 2 wája:, yooja: (to give pain)
Remember that a type A verb whose past begins with a w smooths this out in the present which becomes yooja:.
- 3 tiruuH :ind Tabiib al-asnaan
The :ind here implies *at the house/place of* (French *chez*). In everyday English you talk about 'the dentist's', 'the doctor's' meaning the same thing.

- 4 yikuun
Here are two examples of *yikuun* putting the rest of the sentence into the future: *yikuun aHsan* (*it will be better, you'd better*), *yikuun laazim* (*it will be necessary, you will have to*). See Unit 8.
- 5 (al-)mafrúuDH (used with or without the article) literally means some thing that *is required of you, imposed upon you*.

Insight

In Gulf Arabic *mafrúuDH* is a stronger form of *laazim*. If one person says *laazim*, someone who agrees with him will often reply *aywa mafrúuDH*.

- 6 gabil maa (before)
For this *maa* before verbs, see grammar points. It is not the negative *maa*.
- 7 yigla: la-k sinn-ak
The preposition *li* or *la* means *to* or *for*, and is often used in Gulf Arabic after a verb, as here, to imply a sense of immediate personal involvement. English *will pull your tooth out for you* gives much the same flavour. See also grammar points.
- 8 laa tit:abiin nafs-ich (masc. laa tit:ab nafs-ak)
This means either literally *don't trouble yourself* or, jocularly, *don't get into a state*. It is another example of the negative imperative.
- 9 idha
Very often followed by *kaan*, *:idha* is probably the most common word for *if* in Gulf Arabic. You have also come across *law* in the phrase *law samaHt* (*please, if you permit*).
- 10 aakhudh maw:id (I'll make an appointment)
English says *make*, Arabic says *take*.

- 11 **ana ta:baan** (fem. **ta:baanah**) *shwayyah* (*I don't feel very well*)
This is the easiest way to say you are unwell, although there is a word in Arabic for *feeling*, **Háasis** (fem. **Háassah**):

ana Haasis nafs-i ta:baan lit. *I am feeling myself ill.*

- 12 **aish fii-k** or **aish bii-k** (fem. **fii-ch/bii-ch**) (*What is wrong with you?*)
There are three ways to say what is wrong with you:

- (a) **:ind-i waja: fii . . . -i** (*I have a pain in my . . .*)
(b) You can use the verb **yooja:** (*to hurt, give pain*):
. . . -i **yooja:-ni** (*my . . . hurts (is hurting) me*).
(c) With some common ailments - especially toothache - use the possessive construction:
ind-i waja: al-asnaan *I have pain [of] the teeth.*

Insight

There is a special word for a *headache*, **Sudáa:**, the verb from which is often used figuratively when referring to problems or difficulties:

haadha yiSadda:-ni *That gives me a headache.*

Hiwaar 3 (Dialogue 3) حوار ٣

CD 2, TR 5, 2:16

Rayyah telephones the dentist's surgery.

Receptionist	SabaaH al-khair, haadhi :iyaadat ad-doktoor maHmuud al-badawi
Rayyah	ariid aakhudh maw'id Hagg zooj-i
Receptionist	khallii-ni ashuuf . . . mumkin yiiji yoom al-arba:ah al-gaadim as-saa:ah :asharah w ruba:ʔ ad-doktoor faaDHi . . .

Rayyah	laa, haadha maa yinfa:.. yiguuf inn-uh bi waja: kathiir wa l-mafruuDH inn-uh yiiji fii asra: wagt mumkin. maa fii maw'id faaDHi :ind ad-doktoor al-yoom?
Receptionist	haadha Sa:b . . . ad-doktoor mashghuul jiddan al-yoom, :ind-uh marDHa kathiiriin. nashuuf . . . mumkin yiiji as-saa:ah sittah al-misa? fiih iHtimaal yikuun laazim yintaDHir shwayyah
Rayyah	n-zain, bakhabbir-uh. shukran jaziilan.
Receptionist	:afwan, ma:a s-salaamah.

khálla, yikhálli (C)	<i>to let leave</i>
khallii-ni ashúuf	<i>let me see</i>
fáaDHi	<i>free, empty</i>
náfa:, yinfa: (A)	<i>to be suitable, useful</i>
fii ásra: wagt múmkin	<i>as soon as possible</i>
Sá:(a)b	<i>difficult</i>
nashúuf . . .	<i>let's see</i>
jaa, yiiji (C irreg.)	<i>to come</i>
iHtimáal	<i>possible, lit. possibility</i>
intáDHar, yintáDHir (A)	<i>to wait</i>

- (a) When does the receptionist first suggest Kamil comes?
(b) What has been the problem today?
(c) What might he have to do?

mulaaHaDHaat (Notes) ملاحظات

- 1 **ad-doktoor** (*doctor*, borrowed from English)
The 'official' word for *doctor* is **Tabiib**, from the Arabic root **Tibb** (*the science of*) *medicine*. **Hakiim** (lit. *wise man*) and **dakhtar** (a corruption of *doctor*) are also heard. **doktoor** only can also be used as a title, when it always takes the definite article: **ad-doktoor :aziiz as-saalimi** (*Dr Aziz al-Salimi*). A dentist is referred to simply as **doktoor** although the formal word is **Tabiib al-asnaan** (*doctor [of the] teeth*).

2 jaa, yüji (to come)
This irregular verb is given in full in the verb tables. Its imperative ta:áal (fem. ta:áali, plural ta:áalu) (come!) derives from a completely different root.

3 (fiih) iHtimaal (lit. there is a possibility)
Whereas mumkin, or its verbal equivalent yimkin, can be used both for ability and possibility, iHtimaal, which originally means it is conceivable that, can only be used for the latter, i.e. something that might happen.

muu mumkin yüji as-saa:ah khamsah	He can't come at five o'clock.
mumkin or iHtimaal yikuun fiih maTar baakir	It could/might rain tomorrow.

ta:biiraat haammah (Key phrases) تعبيرات هامة

CD 2, TR 5, 3:50

Asking what's wrong with someone

kaif Haal-ak, shloon-ak	How are you?
ana muu bi-khair, ana ta:baan	I'm not very well.
aish fii-k, aish bii-k	What's wrong with you?

Describing your ailments

:ind-i Suda:	I have a headache.
:ind-i zukaam	a cold.
:ind-i Humma	a fever
:ind-i waja: al-asnaan	toothache.
:ind-i fluu	flu.
:ind-i ishaal	diarrhoea.
(ana) akuHH	I have a cough (lit. I cough)
:ind-i waja: fii bal:uum-i/bal:uum-i yooja:-ni	I have a sore throat.

:ind-i waja: fii baTn-i/baTn-i yooja:-ni	I have a stomach-ache.
:ind-i waja: fii DHahr-i/DHahr-i yooja:-ni	I have back-ache.
:ind-i waja: fii :ain-i/:ain-i tooja:-ni	My eye is sore.
:ind-i waja: fii rjuul-i/rjuul-i tooja:-ni	My legs are aching.

iid or yad (iidain)
rijl (rujúul)

hand, arm
foot, leg

Insight

iid (hand) and rijl (foot) can refer to the whole upper and lower limbs respectively. These words are feminine as are most parts of the body which come in pairs, such as :ain (eye) above.

Saying how you feel

ána bardáan (f. bardáanah)	I feel cold.
niHna bardaaniin	We feel cold.
ána maríiDH	I'm ill.
ána ta:báan	I'm tired, unwell.
ána Háasis inn-i múmkin azúu:	I feel sick (lit. I am feeling that I shall vomit).
ráas-i yidúukh	I feel dizzy, faint (lit. my head is spinning).

zaa:, yizúu: (B1)

to vomit

Wounds, cuts and stings

ta:awwárt fii uSbu:-i	I have cut my finger.
ta:awwárt fii iid-i	I have cut my hand/arm.
kasárt iid-i	I have broken my arm.
rijl-i maksúurab	My leg is broken.
ladagbat-ni naHlah	I have been stung by a bee (lit. a bee stung me).
ladagh-ni :agrab	I have been stung by a scorpion

ta:áwwar, yit:áwwar (A)
 káasar, yíksir (A)
 maksúur
 náHla (náHal)
 :ágrab (:agáarib)

Saying how long you have felt ill

min ams
 m:n aS-SubaH
 min yoomain
 min usbuu:

Asking for help

laazim aruuH :ind aT-Tabiib
 ariid aruuH :ind Tabiib al-asnaan
 laazim aruuH aS-Saydaliyyah
 laazim nawaddii-h l-mustashfa
 aHsan awaddii-ch al-:iyaadah

to be wounded
 to break
 broken
 bee
 scorpion

since yesterday
 since this morning
 for two days
 for a week

I need to go to the doctor's.
 I want to go to the dentist.
 I need to go to the chemist.
 We have to take him to the hospital.
 I'd better take you (fem.) to the clinic.

wádda, yiwáddi (C)

Medicines and remedies

:ind-ak dawa Hagg waja:
 al-bal:uum?
 :ind-i Hubuub Hagg Sudaa:
 khudh (fem. khudhi, pl. khudhu)
 Habbah waaHidah/Habbatain/
 thalaath Habbaat
 gafshah waaHidah
 marrah waaHidah/marratain/
 thalaath marraat
 gabil maa tiruuH tinaam

to take to, deliver

Do you have anything for a sore throat?
 I have pills for a headache.
 Take one/two/three pills.
 One spoon(ful).
 Once/twice/three times.
 Before going to bed (lit. sleep).

kullí saa:ah/saa:atain/thalaath
 saa:aat
 aS-SubaH/aDH-DHuhur/al-misa
 gafshah waaHidah gabil al-akil
 khamsah mililitir ba:d al-akil

Every hour/two hours/
 three hours.
 In the morning/at noon/in
 the evening.
 One spoonful before meals.
 5 mls after meals.

núqaT naHwíyyah (Grammar points) نطق نحوية

1 Imperatives

These, you remember, are special parts of the verb used for giving orders, or telling people to do something. In this unit you have met a negative imperative, telling someone *not* to do something. In this case, use the negative *laa* (*not*), which is also the word for *no*, followed by a simple present tense verb.

laa tit:abiin nafs-ich Don't trouble yourself (to a woman).
 laa titkallam bi-sur:ah kidha Don't speak quickly like that (to a man).
 laa tiruuHuun yoom as-sabt Don't go on Saturday (plural).

2 gabil and ba:d

When these words are used before a verb, they must be followed by the word *maa*. This is meaningless in English, and has nothing to do with the negative *maa* (*not*).

Examples:

Before a noun: ba:d al-ghada after [the] lunch
 but, before a verb: gabil maa tinaam before you [go to] sleep

3 khallfi-ni ashuuf let me see (lit. leave-me I-see)

This verb string or phrase has an imperative (+ pronoun suffix) followed by the main verb in the present tense. Remember that all words ending in a vowel lengthen and stress this when a prefix is added.

Insight

In many parts of the Gulf, verbs of the khalli type lose their final vowel in the (masculine) imperative, in which case this phrase would be **kháll-ni**. You need only be aware of this for listening purposes, as you will be understood whichever variety you use.

4 The preposition li-/la- (to, for)

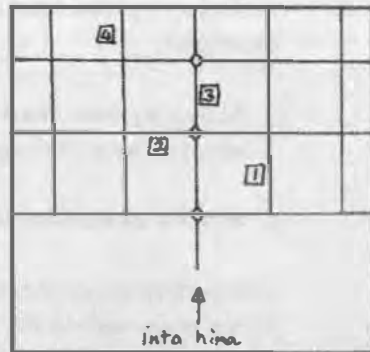
This little word is frequently used with pronoun suffixes and sometimes changes or omits its vowel:

li	to/for me (the vowel is pronounced long: l-i; sometimes also lí-yya)
l-ak	to you (masc.)
l-ich	to you (fem.)
l-uh	to him
la-ha	to her
la-na	to us
la-kum	to you (plural)
la-hum	to them

tamriinaat (Exercises) تمرينات

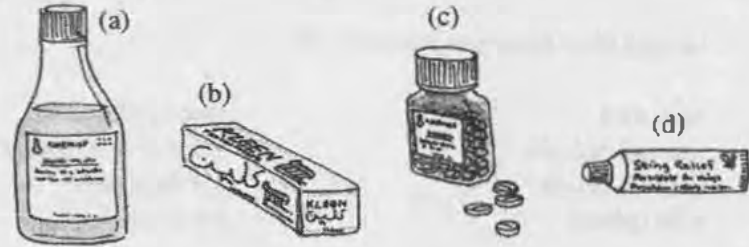
CD 2, TR 5, 4:27

- 1 The street map below has four places marked on it. Four people are trying to get to the doctor, the dentist, the clinic and the hospital, so listen to the instructions they are given, or read the transcript, and make a note of which number is which place.



CD 2, TR 5, 5:14

- 2 You overhear four Kuwaitis asking the chemist for the following items. Listen to the recording or read the transcript, and match the people up with the appropriate remedies below.



márham
ládghat náHlah
ma:júun al-asnán

cream (medical)
bee-sting
toothpaste

- 3 You are not well and go into a pharmacy. How do you tell the chemist that you:
- have a headache
 - have hurt your leg
 - feel dizzy
 - have cut your hand
 - have a sore throat
- 4 There must be something wrong at this office – nearly half the employees are getting their relatives to call in to say that they are sick on Saturday morning!
- What is wrong with them?
 - How long have they had the symptoms?
 - What have they done about it?
- (a) faaTimah raagidah l-yoom. :ind-ha zukaam min thalaathat ayyaam. akhadhat asbriin
- (b) as:ad mariiDH. :ind-uh waja: fi l-baTn min ams, fa raaH :ind ad-doktoor fi S-SabaaH. ad-doktoor a:Taa-h dawa, fa in shaa' Al-laah yikuun ahwan baakir

- (c) Hasan ta:baan. :ind-uh Suda: w Humma min yoomain, wa gult l-uh aHsan yirgad li ghaayat maa tiruuH :ann-uh l-Humma
 (d) khawla maa tigdar tiiji sh-shughul al-yoom. gaalat inn-uh :ind-ha waja: fi DH-DHahar min awwal ams, w laazim ristariiH Tuul al-usbuu: w taakhudh Hubuub Hagg al-waja:
 (e) laazim nawaddi walad-na Haamid al-mustashfa. :ind-ma kaan yil:ab wiyya akhuu-h aS-SabaaH DHarab :ain-uh. hiyya waarimah jiddan, w laazim aT-Tabiib yishuuf-ha

ráagid (adj.)	<i>in bed (lit. lying down)</i>
a:Táa-h	<i>(he) gave him</i>
áhwan	<i>better (from an illness)</i>
rágad, yírgad (A)	<i>to lie down, stay in bed</i>
li gháayat maa	<i>until (with a verb)</i>
tirúuH :ánn-uh	<i>goes from him, leaves him</i>
gádar, yígdar (A)	<i>to be able</i>
inn-uh	<i>that</i>
istaráaH, yistariiH (B1)	<i>to rest, relax, take one's ease</i>
Tuul al-usbúu:	<i>all week, the whole week, throughout the week</i>
:ind-ma	<i>when, while</i>
wiyya	<i>with, together with</i>
akhúu-h	<i>his brother</i>
DHárab, yíDHrab (A)	<i>to hit, strike, knock</i>
wáarim	<i>swollen</i>

- 5 You are staying with a friend, Aisha, but she thinks you don't look very well today. Fill in your half of the conversation.

Aisha	kaif Haal-ich?
inti	Say actually you don't feel very well
Aisha	aish fiil-ch?
inti	Say you have a headache
Aisha	salamt-ich!
inti	Ask if she has anything for it
Aisha	na:am, khudhi haadhi l-Hubuub ma:a shwayyat maay

Insight

salámt-ak/-ich (lit. *your welfare*). Said to someone who says they are ill. The reply is Al-laah yisal(l)m-ak/-ich.

➔ CD 2, TR 5, 5:43

- 6 Listen to the recording, or read the transcript, of the conversation between two Saudis, and answer the questions below.

Sákhrah (Sukhúur)	<i>rock</i>
aT-Tawáari'	<i>casualty, emergency</i>
:aks eksrai	<i>x-ray photograph</i>
iftákar, yiftákir (A)	<i>to think, consider</i>
áwwal	<i>(at) first</i>
HaTT, yiHúTT (B2)	<i>to put, place</i>
ribáaT (rúbaT)	<i>bandage</i>
gádar, yígdar (A)	<i>to be able</i>
másha, yímshi (C)	<i>to walk</i>

- (a) What is the matter with him?
 (b) How did he get to hospital?
 (c) Has he broken any bones?
 (d) How does it feel now?

الخط العربي (Arabic script) al-khaTT al-:árabí

In this lesson, you will learn two more pairs of letters, distinguished only by one dot placed above the second member of each. These letters are of medium size. All are joiners and show the usual ligatures and final flourishes.

Name	Initial	Medial	Final	Separate	Pronunciation
Saad	ص	ص	ص	ص	S
Daad	ض	ض	ض	ض	D

Taa'	ط	ط	ط	ط	T
DHaa'	ظ	ظ	ظ	ظ	DH

Insight

In writing the second pair, Taa' and DHaa', the bottom 'egg shape' is produced first, and the upright 'stick' added later at the next lift of the pen in the same way as we dot our i's and cross our t's.

These four letters are often called the 'emphatic' letters, as they have a powerful sound produced by greater tongue tension and more violent release of breath.

Note: In the Gulf, D and DH are both pronounced the same, (i.e. like an emphatic dh). (See alphabet section.)

The following exercise is of the crossword clue type (not very subtle). Remember, there are no short vowels or double letters, and ة at the end of a word is always the (feminine) ending -ah. Also, the al- in many Arabic place names is frequently omitted in English.

Write down the consonants you recognize, check them for potential long vowels and you should get the right answer.

Clues:

- 1 City in southern Iraq
- 2 Internal part of the body
- 3 Common Arab male first name
- 4 One of the United Arab Emirates

Arabic words

- ١- البصرة
- ٢- بطن
- ٢- صالح
- ٤- ابو ظبي

Clues:

- 5 Someone attending an institute of higher learning
- 6 Fast means of international transport
- 7 Capital of the largest country in Arabia
- 8 Healer
- 9 Former leader of a Northern Arab state
- 10 Method or style of writing
- 11 Where you would go to catch a 6
- 12 A more down-to-earth means of transport

Arabic words

- ٥- طالب
- ٦- طائرة
- ٧- الرياض
- ٨- طبيب
- ٩- صدام
- ١٠- خط
- ١١- مطار
- ١٢- باص

Test yourself

This test covers the main vocabulary, phrases and language points given in Unit 11. If you are not sure about your answers, go back to the dialogues and exercises for some revision, before going on to Unit 12. For the answers, see the Key to the exercises.

Match the questions below with the appropriate replies. Example:

kaif Haal-ak?

ana ta:baan shwayyah

1 aish fii-k?

(a) mumkin kaan al-akl fi l-maT:am maa zain

2 Saar la-k gaddaish w-inta ta:baan?

(b) aakhudh l-ak maw:id bukraH S-SubH

3 :ind-ak dawa Hagg zukaam?

(c) khudh Habbatain arba:ah marraat fi l-yoom ma:a maa'

- | | |
|--|---|
| 4 aakhudh al-Hubuub kam marrah fi l-yoom? | (d) umm-ii Saar la-haa usbuu:ain fi l-mustashfa |
| 5 ana mariiDH, mumkin :ind-ii fluu | (e) laazim tiwaddii-h l-mustashfa bi-sur:ah |
| 6 :ind-ii waja: al-asnaan, wa laazim aruuH :ind Tabiib al-asnaan | (f) a:Tii-haa haadha l-marham |
| 7 ibn-ii rijl-uh maksuurah | (g) yoomain |
| 8 kaan yizuu: bi-l-lail wa :ind-uh ishaal | (h) :indii waja: fii baTn-i |
| 9 kaif Haal waaldai-k? | (i) :ind-ii haadhii l-Hubuub Hagg az-zukaam |
| 10 zoojat-ii ladaghat-haa naHlah fii yad-haa | (j) laazim taakhudh asbriin wa-tirgad |

الإجراءات الرسمية al-ijraa'áat ar-rasmíyyah Official procedures

In this unit you will learn how to

- Find a bank cashpoint
- Cash travellers' cheques and change money
- Buy stamps, send letters and parcels
- Deal with government departments and embassies

New words and phrases

CD 2, TR 6

Listen to the recording.

Hiwaar 1 (Dialogue 1) حوار ١

CD 2, TR 6, 0:19

Mark, a visitor to Saudi Arabia, wants to get some cash. He stops a passer-by.

Mark	:afwan, mumkin tisaa: id-ni min faDHI-ak?
rajjaal	Tab:an. b-aish asaa: id-ak?
Mark	laazim aruuH bank
rajjaal	fiih bank hinaak, gariib
Mark	laazim yikuun bank fii-h makiiinat Sarf. ayy bank aruuH?
rajjaal	aaa. idhan ... laazim tiruuH al-bank al-:arabi fii shaari: al-malik khaalid. fii-h makiiinat Sarf yaakhudh kuruut maal bank min kull shaki.
Mark	shukran jaziilan



bank (bunúuk)	<i>bank</i>
makiiinat Sarf	<i>cash machine</i>
malik	<i>king</i>
kart (kurúut)	<i>card</i>
kurúut maal bank	<i>bank cards</i>

- What does Mark ask for?
- What exactly does he want?
- What is the name of the bank he is directed to?

mulaaHaDHaat (Notes) ملاحظات

- ayy, (fem. ayyah) (*which*)
This comes before the noun and agrees with it in gender:

ayy bank	<i>Which bank?</i>
ayyah sayyaarah	<i>Which car?</i>

- al-malik khaalid (*King Khaled*)
With Dr. and other titles you must use the definite article.

- kull is used before the noun for *each, every, all*. See Grammar points.

Hiwaar 2 (Dialogue 2) حوار ٢

CD 2, TR 6, 1:09

Tony has been in Jeddah on business, and he has come to Taif for a couple of days. He needs to change money, and finds his way to the First Saudi Bank.

Tony	as-salaamu :alai-kum.
Káatib	w :alai-kum as-salaam. asaa: id-ak bi shay?
Tony	ariid aSraf chaik siyaaHi
Káatib	Tab:an, ayyah :umlah?
Tony	doolaaraat
Káatib	kam doolaar?
Tony	khams miyyah. aish si:r ad-doolaar al-amriiki al-yoom?
Káatib	laHDHah min faDHI-ak ... (<i>consulting his computer screen</i>) si:r ad-doolaar al-amriiki thalaathah riyaalaat w khamsah w sab:iin halalah. jawaaz as-safar law samaHt.
Tony	tafaDHDHal
káatib	shukran ... waggi: hina min faDHI-ak
Tony	(<i>signs</i>) tfaDHDHal
káatib	min faDHI-ak khudh haadhi l-waragah li S-Sarraaf hinaak, w huwwa ya:Tii-k al-mablagh.
Tony	shukran
káatib	:afwan

Sáraf, yíSraf (A)	<i>to cash, change money</i>
chaik (-aat)	<i>cheque</i>
chaik siyaaHi	<i>travellers' cheque</i>
:umlah (-aat)	<i>currency</i>
doolaar (-aat)	<i>dollar</i>
si:r (as:áar)	<i>price, exchange rate</i>

wáragah (awráag)	<i>(sheet of) paper</i>
Sarráaf (-iin)	<i>cashier; money changer</i>
máblagh (mabáaligh)	<i>sum, amount of money</i>

- (a) How much does he want to change?
- (b) What does the clerk ask for?
- (c) What does Tony have to do after showing his passport?

mu'laaHaDHaat (Notes) ملاحظات

1 Money

The general term is *filúus* (the plural of *fil*, the smallest division of many Arab currencies), or *baizáat* which dates back to the days of the rupee in the Gulf and is still used as a thousandth part of a riyal in Oman (sing. *baizah*).

The two best known foreign currencies in the Gulf are the US dollar, and the *jináih* (-aat) *starliini* (*the pound sterling*).

2 Changing money

The verb *Saraf, yiSraf* can be used for either to cash or to change. It is usually assumed that you want to change into the local currency, so this need not be specified. If you want some other currency, simply add *ariid* (*I want*) plus the currency name, or better *:umlah* plus the nationality adjective of the currency.

<i>ariid riyaalaat</i>	<i>I want riyals.</i>
<i>ariid :umlah sa:uudiyah</i>	<i>I want Saudi currency.</i>

ma:luumaat thaqaafiyah (Cultural tips) معلومات ثقافية

There are plenty of banks in the Gulf, but their opening hours are rather brief, generally about 8 am until noon (11 am on Thursdays and closed all day Friday). A clerk will effect your transaction on paper, but if you are withdrawing money, you will have to collect this from the cashier.

Exchange rates are not sacred, so unless you have an established relationship with a certain bank and are sure you are getting the best deal (ask!) it is often worth shopping around, especially if you intend to exchange a significant amount.

An alternative to the banks are the money-changers (*Sarraafin*, same as cashiers) who have offices in the souks of most large Gulf towns. These are perfectly legal operations, and you can sometimes get a better rate. They also have the advantage of being open for much longer hours, including evenings.

Hiwaar 3 (Dialogue 3) حوار ٣

CD 2, TR 6, 2:14

Eleanor has gone to the post office in Muscat to buy stamps for the letters and postcards she and Mike have written.

Eleanor	<i>al-buTaa'agah li ingilterra bi-kam min faDHI-ak?</i>
káatib	<i>miyyah w khamsiin baizah</i>
Eleanor	<i>wa r-risaalah?</i>
káatib	<i>idha kaan al-wazn agall min :asharah ghraam, miitain baizah, w min :asharah li-ghaayat :ishriin ghraam thalaath miyyah w khamsiin baizah.</i>
Eleanor	<i>zain, a:Tii-ni arba:ah Tawaabi: bi-miitain baizah, w ithna:shar bi-miyyah w khamsiin min faDHI-ak.</i>
káatib	<i>arba:ah bi-miitain, w ithna:shar bi-miyyah w khamsiin. haadha kull-uh riyaalain w sitt miyyat baizah.</i>
Eleanor	<i>tfaDHDHal (she gives him three riyals)</i>
káatib	<i>arba: miyyat baizah. tfaDHDHali.</i>

buTáagah (-aat)	<i>postcard</i>
risáalah (rasáayil)	<i>letter</i>
wazn (awzáan)	<i>weight</i>
agáll min	<i>less than</i>

ghraam (-aat)	<i>gramme</i>
li gháayat ...	<i>up to ...</i>
Táabi: (Tawáabi:)	<i>stamp</i>
bi	<i>(here) to the value of, at</i>
kúll-uh	<i>all of it, all together</i>
báagi	<i>change, remainder of something</i>
ághla	<i>more expensive</i>

True or false?

- (a) al-buTaagah aghla min ar-risaalah bi-khamsiin baizah.
 (b) kaanat :ind-ha arba: rasaayil wazn-ha agall min :asharah ghraam
 (c) kaan al-baagi sitt miyyat baizah

mulaaHaDHaat (Notes) ملاحظات

- If (see Grammar points.)
- ghraam (*gram*) + plural ghraamaat
 This is often left in the singular, just like kíilo (*kilo(metre), kilo (gram)*).

Hiwaar 4 (Dialogue 4) حوار ٤

↔ CD 2, TR 6, 3 : 11

Mike needs a local driving licence, so he goes to the Ministry of Transport in Abu Dhabi.

Mike	law samaHt. ariid laisan maal siwaagah
muwaDHDHaf	haadha maa min hina. hina wizaarat al-muwaaSalaat. laazim tiruuH :ind ash-shurTah, daa'irat al-muruur.
Mike	wain-ha daa'irat al-muruur?
muwaDHDHaf	hina gariib, fii nafs ash-shaari:
Mike	shukran.

At the Traffic Department, he looks for the right desk.

Mike	Sabaah al-khair. aakhudh laisan maal siwaagah min hina?
muwaDHDHaf	na:am
Mike	aish tiriid min awraag?
muwaDHDHaf	jiib al-laisan al-dawli maal-ak, w Suuratain maal jawaaz, w mablagh khamsiin dirham
Mike	:ind-i hina. (<i>gives him the papers</i>) tfaDHDHal
muwaDHDHaf	(<i>examines the papers and fills out a form</i>) min faDHI-ak waggi: hina (<i>Mike signs</i>). law tiiji ba:d bukrah, yikuun al-laisan jaahiz in shaa' Al-laah w mumkin taakhudh-uh
Mike	shukran jaziilan. fii amaan Al-laah
muwaDHDHaf	fii amaan al-kariim

láisan (layáasin)	<i>licence</i>
laisan maal siwáagah	<i>driving licence</i>
muwaaSaláat	<i>communications, transport</i>
shúrTah	<i>police</i>
dáa'irah or dáayirah (dawáayir)	<i>(government) department</i>
murúur	<i>traffic</i>
jaab, yijiib (B1)	<i>to bring, get, hand over</i>
dáwli	<i>international</i>
law tiiji	<i>if you come</i>

- (a) Where does Mike have to go to get his licence?
 (b) Where is it?
 (c) What papers does he need?
 (d) When will his licence be ready?

mulaaHaDHaat (Notes) ملاحظات

- laisan
 The proper word for *licence* is rúkhSat siyáagah (*driving permit*), but this adaptation of the English word is very current (along with its real Arabic plural formation).

a:Tii-ni jawaaz as-safar min faDHI-ak *Give me your passport please.*
 waggi: hina *Sign here.*
 taakhudh al-mablagh min :ind aS-Sarraaf *You will get (take) your money (the sum) from the cashier.*

Asking about posting an item

al-buTaagah li amriikah bi-kam? *How much is a postcard to the USA?*
 ar-risaalah li l-mámlakah l-muttáHidah bi-kam? *How much is a letter to the United Kingdom?*
 aT-Tard li urubba bi-kam? *How much is a parcel to Europe?*

qv

al-mámlakah l-muttáHidah Tard (Turúud) *the United Kingdom parcel, package*

Asking for stamps

Taabi:ain bi-miitain fils min faDHI-ak *two stamps at 200 fils please*
 thalaathah Tawaabi: bi-riyaal (waaHid) *three stamps at one riyal*

Note that waaHid *one* here is optional, and, if used, must come after the noun as usual.

ariid Taabi: (waaHid) bi miyyah w khamsiin fils *I'd like one stamp at 150 fils.*

núqaT naHwiyyah (Grammar points) نقط نحوية

1 *Each, every and all*

These are all expressed by the single word **kull** (also pronounced *kill*), which never changes.

For *each* and *every* use it before an indefinite singular noun:

kull yoom	<i>every day</i>
kull sanah	<i>every year</i>

kull bank fii-h makúinat Sarf	<i>every bank has a cash machine.</i>
kull waaHid laazim yiSraf miyyat doolaar	<i>each one must change \$100.</i>

Insight

kull sanah (or :aam, another word for *year*) w inta bi-khair is the Arabic felicitation for any annual event (birthdays, Eids, etc.), usually *Happy . . .* (birthday, Christmas etc.) in English. The literal meaning is *every year and (may) you (be) well.*

There are two ways to use **kull** for *all*:

- (a) Follow it by a plural noun with either the definite article or a suffix pronoun:

kull al-bunuuk maftuuHah yoom al-ithnain
All the banks are open on Monday(s).

kull-hum kaanu mashghuuliin ams
They were all busy yesterday.

- (b) Put the plural noun first, and then follow it with **kull** + the agreeing suffix pronoun referring back to the noun:

al-bunuuk kull-ha maftuuHah *The banks are all open (lit. the banks all [of] them [are] open).*

al-ghuraf kull-ha maHjuuzah *The rooms are all booked (lit. the rooms all [of] them [are] booked).*

maHjúuz *booked, reserved*

qv

Insight

Remember that the plurals of non-humans are considered feminine singular in Arabic, hence the *-ha (her)* suffix used in the above examples to refer to *banks* and *rooms* respectively. For humans you use *-hum (them)*:

al-muwaDHDHafin kull-hum mawjuudiin *The officials are all here.*

2 *If*

The three words for *if* (idha, in and law/loo) are used virtually interchangeably in colloquial Gulf Arabic. The last suggests a lesser (or even zero) chance of the condition being fulfilled, but is also used in the common polite phrase law samaHt (*please, if you please, if you would permit*).

A strange thing about *if* sentences in Arabic is that the verb is often, though not always, put in the past tense (even though the action hasn't happened yet, or might never happen).

All three words are often followed by kaan with no particular change in meaning. Here are a few examples:

- idha jaa rashiid khabbirii-h :an barnaamij bukraH *If Rashid comes, tell him about tomorrow's programme.*
- in kaan :ind-ak chaikaat siyaaHiyyah laazim tiSraf-ha *If you have travellers' cheques, you'll have to cash them.*
- law kaan sawwa kidha, kaan aHsan *If he had done this, it would have been better.*
- loo kunt :araft haadha, maa ruHt *If I had known this, I wouldn't have gone.*
- idha tiruuH ash-shaarjah, laazim tizuur al-matHaf al-jadiid *If you go to Sharjah, you should visit the new museum.*

And the classic:

in shaa' Al-laah lit. *if God wished, (i.e. wishes)*

tamriinaat (Exercises) تمرينات

- 1 You want to post some mail home. How would you ask the cost of the following:
 - (a) a letter to the USA?
 - (b) a postcard to Australia?
 - (c) a parcel to the Emirates?
 - (d) a letter to Saudi Arabia?

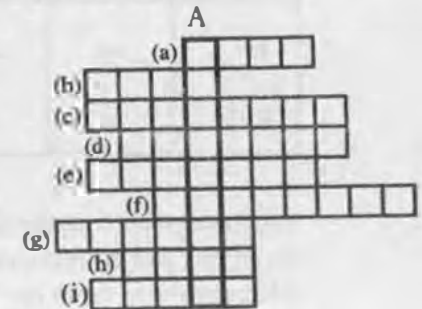
2 Now how would you ask for the following stamps:

- (a) three at 150 fils
- (b) one at two dinars
- (c) five at one dirham
- (d) 20 at half a riyaaal
- (e) six at 200 baizas



3 Each line of the puzzle represents one of the words below in Arabic. They must be entered in the correct order to reveal in column A another word a tourist might need at the bank.

- cheque
- stamp
- letter
- postcard
- exchange rate
- bank
- dollar
- credit card
- moneychanger



CD 2, TR 6, 5:02

4 You are on holiday in Dubai, and you ask a friend where to go to change some money. You complete your side of the conversation.

Sadliig-ak	ayyah :umlah :ind-ak?
inta	Say sterling pounds.
Sadliig-ak	tiriid tiSraf kam?
inta	Say £250.
Sadliig-ak	aHsan tiruuH :ind aS-Sarraafiin fi s-suug
inta	Ask why.

Sadiig-ak	mumkin taakhudh si:r aHsan.
inta	Ask which one of them you should go to.
Sadiig-ak	illi :ala l-yisaar jamb al-baab. huwwa :ind-uh aHsan si:r

qv illi who, the one who, which

al-khaTT al-:arabi (Arabic script) الخط العربي

This time you have :ain and ghain, again distinguished by one dot above the second letter:

Name	Initial	Medial	Final	Separate	Pronunciation
:ain	ع	ع	ع	ع	:
ghain	غ	غ	غ	غ	gh

To distinguish a nucleus form here requires some imagination, so it's better just to remember that the medial and final forms have a different shape from the initial and separate ones.

For the sounds, refer to the section on the alphabet at the beginning of the book and, more importantly, listen to native speakers and emulate them. Here are some examples in words you already know:

عندي	:ind-i	I have
يعني	ya:ni	that is, um . . .
صغير	Saghiir	small
غالي	ghaali	expensive

This is a good opportunity to look at one of the most common forms for first names in Arabic. The names of God (Allah) are said to

number 99, and an age-old naming formula is to precede one of these divine epithets with the word :abd (Arabic عبد), *worshipper (of)*.

The popular English abbreviation 'Abdul' does not exist in Arabic.

The name Abdallah or Abdullah meaning *worshipper of Allah* has an irregular spelling, with the alif of the long a-vowel in Arabic being missed out: عبد الله (:abd al-laah).

The same thing occurs in another common name :abd ar-raHmaán (عبد الرحمن) Abd ul-Rahman which features the same omission of the alif to mark the long -aa.

Match up the following pairs. The Arabic names all begin with عبد الله, and the divine attributes of Allah are given in transcription, along with their approximate meanings.

- | | |
|---|----------------|
| A ar-raHiim (<i>the Merciful</i>) | ١- عبد العزيز |
| B an-naaSir (<i>the Victorious</i>) | ٢- عبد الغانم |
| C aS-Sabuur (<i>the Patient One</i>) | ٣- عبد الجليل |
| D al-waaHid (<i>the One</i>) | ٤- عبد المنعم |
| E al-majiid (<i>the Magnificent</i>) | ٥- عبد الناصر |
| F al-ghaanim (<i>the Bestower of the spoils of war</i>) | ٦- عبد الواحد |
| G al-jaliil (<i>the Majestic</i>) | ٧- عبد الصبور |
| H al-:aziiz (<i>the Noble</i>) | ٨- عبد المجيد |
| I ar-raHmaan (<i>the Compassionate</i>) | ٩- عبد الرحيم |
| J al-mun:im (<i>the Giver of blessings</i>) | ١٠- عبد الرحمن |

Test yourself

This test covers the main vocabulary, phrases and language points given in Unit 12. If you are not sure about your answers, go back to the dialogues and exercises for some revision, before going on to Unit 13. For the answers, see the Key to the exercises.

Put *kull each, every, all* and an appropriate suffix pronoun if necessary in the following sentences:

- 1 _____ waaHid mumkin yit:allam lughah jadiidah
- 2 aT-Turuq fi l-imaaraat _____ jayyidah
- 3 an-nisaa' _____ Tabakhuu akl Hagg al-:iid
- 4 a:Ta Taariq _____ al-awlaad filuus
- 5 niHna _____ ta:baaniin

Can you do the following?

- 6 Ask where you can change \$200.
- 7 Say you want to cash a traveller's cheque.
- 8 Ask how much it costs to post a letter to America.
- 9 Ask for 5 stamps at 3 dirhams and 2 stamps at 50 fils.
- 10 Ask if this bank has a cash machine.

13

الى أين؟ li-wain? Where to?

(Note: the written word for *where* is different from the spoken.)

In this unit you will learn how to

- Tell people to do things
- Take a taxi
- Book and buy bus tickets
- Hire a vehicle
- Buy petrol
- Deal with car problems

New words and phrases

↻ CD 2, TR 7

Listen to the recording.

Hiwaar 1 (Dialogue 1) حوار ١

↻ CD 2, TR 7, 0:16

Janet, a solicitor, is taking a taxi across Kuwait to the office of a client. The driver is not sure exactly where to go and Janet is not too

happy about his driving, as he is chatting to her and not watching the traffic.

Janet	khudh baal-ak! min faDHI-ak, khalli baal-ak :ala T-Tariig
sawwaag at-taksi	maa fiih mushkilah
Janet	khaffif as-surah. laa tisuug bi-sur:ah kidha. haadha huwwa sh-shaari: . . . laa, liif yisaar fi sh-shaari: ath-thaani
sawwaag at-taksi	haadha hina? inti mit'akkidah?
Janet	aywa. (he drives past the street) fawwatt-uh! irja: shwayyah. (he reverses) haadha huwwa, fi l-i:imaarah al-kabiirah al-baiDHa hinaak. zain. waggiff hina :ind al-baab.
sawwaag at-taksi	(stopping the car) hina maDHBuuT?
Janet	na:am zain. (getting out) ana aruuH awaddi risaalah hina w arja: ba:d khamas dagaayig. khallii-k fi s-sayyaarah, laa tisiir makaan.
sawwaag at-taksi	zain. bantaDHir hina.

baal	<i>attention</i>
khudh baal-ak	<i>take care, be careful</i>
khalli baal-ak :ala	<i>pay attention to, watch</i>
khaffaf, yikhaffif (A)	<i>to lighten, reduce</i>
sur:ah	<i>speed</i>
mit'akkid	<i>sure</i>
raja; yirja: (A)	<i>to return, come back, go back</i>
:imaarah (-aat)	<i>apartment building, block</i>
waggaf, yiwaggif (A)	<i>to stop</i>
baab (biibaan)	<i>door</i>
maDHBuuT	<i>exact, correct</i>
saar, yisliir (B1)	<i>to go (common alternative to raaH, yiruuH)</i>

- (a) Why does Janet complain about the taxi driver's speed?
 (b) Where does she tell him to stop?
 (c) Where does she tell him to wait?

mulaaHaDHaat (Notes) ملاحظات

- fawwatt-uh (you've passed it)**
When verbs ending in -t take a suffix beginning with t-, the letter must be clearly doubled in pronunciation.
- haadha huwwa (that's it)**
- laa tisiir makáan (don't go [any] place)**
This dialogue contains some imperatives or commands, telling someone to do or not to do something. These are dealt with in full in the grammar section later in this Unit.

Hiwaar 2 (Dialogue 2) حوار ٢

40 CD 2, TR 7, 1:20

Nasir, a Saudi student in Riyadh, is going to visit his brother who works in Doha. He can't afford to fly, so he goes to the bus station to enquire about the bus service to Doha.

Nasir	fiih baaS yiruuH ad-dooHa min faDHI-ak?
kaatib	laa, maa fiih baaS yiruuH mubaasharatan. laazim tiHawwil fi l-hufuuf
Nasir	maa yikhaalif. at-tadhkarah bi-kam?
kaatib	dhihaab bass aw dhihaab w iyaab?
Nasir	dhihaab w iyaab
kaatib	miyyah w khamsah w :ishriin riyaal
Nasir	al-baaS yiTla: as-saa:ah kam?
kaatib	as-saa:ah thamaanyah bi DH-DHAbT.
Nasir	zain, w mata yooSal ad-dooHa?
kaatib	yooSal al-hufuuf as-saa:ah ithna:shar aDh-Dhuhur, w al-baaS li d-dooHa yooSal as-saa:ah sab:ah w khams dagaayig al-misa.
Nasir	a:lii-ni tadhkarat dhihaab w iyaab Hagg baakir min faDHI-ak.

Háwwal, yiHáwwil (A)
maa yikháalif
tádhkarah (tadháakir)
dhiháab
dhiháab w iyáab

to change
that's OK, it doesn't matter
ticket
single (ticket, lit. going)
return (ticket, lit. going and
coming back)
to leave, depart, go out
to arrive

Tála:, yiTla: (A)
wáSal, yóoSal (A)

- (a) Can you go direct from Riyadh to Doha?
 (b) How much is a return ticket?
 (c) When does the bus arrive in Doha?



mulaaHaDHaat (Notes) ملاحظات

- fiih baaS yiruuH (*is there a bus that goes*)
 No word for *that* or *which* is required in Arabic. This type of sentence is dealt with in Unit 14.
- maa yikhaalif (*it doesn't matter*)
 You also frequently hear the Egyptian Arabic import maa :aláish with the same meaning, or the modified form maa :alái-h.

Hiwaar 3 (Dialogue 3) حوار ٣

CD 2, TR 7, 2:24

Charlie and Stella are on holiday in Dubai, and they want to rent a car for a few days with some friends they have made in the hotel, so that they can see a little more of the Emirates. First they talk to Muhammad at Reception in their hotel.

- Charlie** :ind-na fikrah nasta'jir sayyaarah :ala shaan naruuH khaarj dubay Hatta nashuuf al-balad shwayyah. ta:raf sharikah zainah mumkin nasta'jir min :ind-hum?
- Muhammad** khali-ni afakkir. . . fiih naas kathiiriin min hina raaHu :ind sharikat al-:aaSimah, laakin ba:DH-hum gaalu inn as:aar-hum ghaalyah shwayyah. laish maa tiruuH sharikat sayyaaraat al-khalij fii shaari: al-waHdah. haadhi sharikah mashhuurah, w as:aar-hum ma:guulah.
- Charlie** nzain, shukran. baruuH as'al-hum.
- Charlie and Stella go to Gulf Cars.*
- al-baayi:** SabaaH al-khair
- Charlie** SabaaH an-nuur, nariid nasta'jir sayyaarah. aish min sayyaaraat-kurn munaasibah Hagg l-jabal?
- al-baayi:** intu kam nafar?
- Charlie** arba:at anfaar
- al-baayi:** al-aHsan yikuun sayyaarah fii-ha dabal. :indi toyoota landkraizir, sayyaarah naDHiifah mumtaazah, tisiir ayy makaan.
- Charlie** fii-ha kandaishan?
- al-baayi:** Tab'an, as-sayyaaraat maal-na kull-ha fii-ha kandaishan
- Charlie** w al-ijjaar kam fi l-yoom?
- al-baayi:** thalaath miyyah w khamsiin dirham. tiriiduun-ha li muddat aish?
- Charlie** nariid-ha min yoom al-khamiis aS-SabaaH li ghaayat yoom as-sabt aS-SabaaH idha kaan mumkin.

al-baayi:	zain. a:Tii-kum si:r makhSuuS. sitt miyyat dirham li l-muddah kul!-ha
Charlie	haadha ma:a t-ta'miin?
al-baayi:	na:am, w thalaath miyyat kiilomitr majjaanan
Charlie	zain. mumkin tiwaddii s-sayyaarah :ind-na fi l-fundug aw laazim najii najiib-ha min hina?
al-baayi:	nawaddii-ha l-fundug. maa fii mushkilah.

fikrah (afkáar)	<i>thought, idea</i>
kháarij	<i>outside</i>
Hátta	<i>in order to, so that</i>
bálad (biláad)	<i>country (see notes)</i>
naas	<i>people</i>
al-khalíij (al-:árabí)	<i>the (Arabian) Gulf</i>
mashhúur	<i>famous, well known</i>
ma:gúul	<i>reasonable</i>
sá'al, yís'al (A)	<i>to ask</i>
báayi:	<i>salesman</i>
munáasib	<i>suitable, convenient</i>
náfar (anfáar)	<i>individual, person</i>
dábal	<i>4-wheel drive</i>
naDHíif	<i>clean, in good condition</i>
mumtáaz	<i>excellent, super (petrol)</i>
makhSúuS	<i>special</i>
ta'miin	<i>insurance</i>
majjáanan	<i>free, gratis</i>

- (a) Why do Charlie and Stella want to hire a vehicle?
 (b) What suggestion does the car hire man make?
 (c) Is insurance included in the rate?

mulaaHaDHaat (Notes) ملاحظات

- 1 **ba:DH (some)**
 This is used before a plural noun with the definite article.

- 2 **sharikat al-:aaSimah (Capital Company, lit. Company [of the] Capital)**

The names of trading companies in the Gulf are often composed of phrases like this (possessives) followed by **li (for)**, then the name of their commercial activity:

sharikat aHmad ash-shanfari li bai: as-saa:aat *Ahmed al-Shanfari Watch Company (lit. company [of] Ahmed al-Shanfari for [the] sale [of] watches).*

- 3 **inn (that)**

The use of **inn** is very common after verbs such as **gaal (to say)**, **khabbar (to tell, inform)** and **iftákar (to think, consider, be of the opinion that)**. This differs from the verb in the text **yifakkir**, which means *to think* in the sense of *to devote thought to*.

iftakart inn-ha waSalat ams khallii-ni afakkir *I thought she arrived yesterday. Let me think.*

- 4 **balad**

The meaning of this word has to be interpreted from the context. It can mean *town, village or country*. Its plural **biLaad** can mean *towns, villages or (singular) country, nation state* and this again has a further plural form **buldaan** which can only mean *countries, nations, states*.

- 5 **al-aHsan yikuun (the best thing would be to)**

This is the present tense of **kaan** in its usual meaning *will be, would be*.

- 6 **dabal (4-wheel drive)**.

This apparently comes from *double*, although the term is not used in this context in English. Gulf Arabic has many words (mainly technical) borrowed from English (and other languages) like **kandaishin (air conditioning)**, also **ai sii (AC)** and the proper Arabic word **takyiif**, and **fáinri (refinery)**.

- 7 **kam nafar . . . arba:at anfaar (How many persons? . . . Four people)**
 This word is only used when counting individuals.

8 al-iijáar (the hire, rent)

On a taxi you might see a slightly different word, li-l-ujrah (for hire).

ma:luumaat thaqaafiyah (Cultural tips) معلومات ثقافية

In some Gulf countries bus services are very sporadic, mainly transporting foreign workers to and from the cities, but in others there is a well-established bus network with a frequent service.

Taxis are either service, or standard. Service means that the taxi runs along a (roughly) prescribed route and will pick up people if there are spare seats and charge a (roughly) standard fare. If you want the taxi solely for yourself or your party, you must specify this by saying ariid ingáij – another quaint borrowing presumably from English engage. This is, of course, more expensive and you should agree the fare with the driver before getting into the car:

tiruuH . . . (name of destination) bi-kam? (How much to . . . ?)

ta:biiraat haammah (Key phrases) تعبيرات هامة

CD 2, TR 7, 4:13

Telling someone to do something

tfaDHDHal	Come in! Sit down! Take (what I am offering you)!
rfaDHDHal istariiH	Sit down, relax.
ta:aal hina	Come here!
ijlis or ig:ad	Sit down!
khaffif as-sur:ah	Go slower.
ruuH bi-sur:ah	Go fast, quickly.
waggif as-sayyaarah hina	Stop the car here.
khallii-k fi s-sayyaarah	Wait/stay (lit. leave yourself) in the car.

Asking about going somewhere

inta faaDHi/mashghuul? Is this taxi (lit. 'you' meaning the driver) free/busy?

tiruuH fundug aS-SaHra bi-kam min faDHI-ak? How much to the Sahara Hotel please?

waddii-ni l-maTaar min faDHI-ak Take me to the airport, please.

Asking about bus or train tickets

kaif aruuH ash-shaarjah min faDHI-ak? How do I get to Sharjah please? thalaath tadhaakir dhihaab w iyaab ila madiinat al-kuwait Three return tickets to Kuwait City.

tadhkarah waaHidah li r-riyaadh, daraja uula One first-class ticket to Riyadh.

tadhkaratain li l-hufuuf darajah thaanyah Two second-class tickets to Hofuf.

úula fem. of áwwal (first)

Asking about bus and train times

awwal baaS li abu DHabi s-saa:ah kam? When is the next (lit. first) bus to Abu Dhabi?

awwal giTaar li l-hufuuf yiTla: as-saa:ah kam? When does the next train to Hofuf leave?

yooSal as-saa:ah kam min faDHI-ak? When does it arrive, please? al-baaS yiTla: min wain? Where does the bus leave from?

giTáar train

Hiring a vehicle

ariid asta'jir sayyaarah fii-ha dabal I would like to hire a 4WD vehicle. kam al-iijáar li yoom waaHid/yoomain/usbuu:? How much is the rental for a day/two days/a week?

mumkin adfa: bi l-kart? Can I pay by credit card?

tfaDHDHal al-laisan maal-i Here is my driving licence

haadha s-si:r ma:a t-ta'miin? *Does this price include insurance?*
 at-tanki matruus? *Does it have a full tank? (lit. is the tank full?)*
 mumkin aakhudh as-sayyaarah min al-maTaar? *Can I collect the car from the airport?*
 mumkin tiwaddii-ha l-fundug maal-i? *Can you deliver it to my hotel?*
 as-saa:ah kam laazim arajji:-ha? *What time must I return it?*

QV

dáfa; yidfa: (A)	to pay
tánki	tank (car)
matrúus	full
rájja; yirájji: (A)	to return something, give it back

Buying petrol

:abbi-ha :aadi *Fill it up with regular.*
 ariid :ishriin laitir mumtaaz *I want 20 litres of premium.*
 ariid khamsah galoonaat bi-duun raSaaS *5 gallons of lead-free.*
 ariid daizil bi khamasta:shar diinaar *15 dinars' worth of diesel.*

(Petrol is sold by the gallon in the UAE but by the litre elsewhere.)

QUICK VOCAB

banziin	petrol
:ábba; yi:ábbi (C)	to fill
:áadi	regular (petrol)
láitir, lítir (-aat)	litre
galóon (-aat)	gallon
raSaaS	lead (metal)
dáizil	diesel



Problems with the car

fiih shúshah gariibah min hina? *Is there a petrol station near here?*
 wain agrab garaaj/warshah maal sayyaaraat? *Where is the nearest garage/car workshop?*
 as-sayyaarah maal-i kharbaanah *My car is broken down.*
 :ind-i banchar *I have a puncture.*
 mumkin tichayyik at-taayraat? *Can you check the tyres please?*
 aftakir inn al-laitaat kharbaanah *I think the lights are broken.*
 mumkin tiSalliH l-i s-sayyaarah l-yoom min faDHI-ak? *Can you repair the car for me today please?*

shúshah/maHaTTat banziin	filling station
ágrab	nearer, nearest
wárshah (-aat)	workshop
bánchar	puncture
chayyák, yicháyayik (A)	to check
biráik	brakes
taayr (-aat)	tyre
áayil	(engine) oil
lait (-aat)	light (of a car)
Sállah, yiSállih (A)	to repair

QUICK VOCAB

núqaT naHwiyyah (Grammar points) نقط نحوية

1 Imperative verbs: how to form them

The imperative form of the verb is used when you want to tell someone to do something, and it is easy to form in Arabic. Verbs in this book are given in the *he*-form, with the past tense followed by the present: *raaH, yiruuH (to go)*. (The verb type given in brackets after the verb doesn't matter in this connection.)

First isolate the present stem of the verb by removing the *yi-* prefix from the present tense: *yiruuH* gives *ruuH*.

If the word resulting from this process does not begin with two consonants, you have the masculine singular imperative form, as here: **ruuH** (go!).

However, if it does begin with two consonants, you have to add a helping vowel prefix, usually *i-* as in: **intaDHir**, **yintaDHir** (to wait).

Removing the *yi-* gives **ntaDHir**, which begins with two consonants (**n** and **t**), so you have to supply an initial *i-*: **intaDHir** (wait!).

Insight

The term 'beginning with two consonants' must be interpreted as two Arabic consonants. Combinations of English letters used to represent one Arabic consonant must be regarded as one and not two. The combination letters used in this book are: **th**, **kh**, **dh**, **sh**, **DH**, **gh** and occasionally **ch**.

For example the verb **khabbar**, **yikhabbir** yields **khabbir**. This begins with one Arabic consonant, and therefore is the correct imperative form and does not require any helping initial vowel.

A few common verbs vary slightly from these rules in forming the imperative. These are:

- (a) verbs whose past tense begins with **w**.
The present tense of these begins with **yoo-** and the imperative is formed by dropping the **y-**. The two most common verbs of this type are:
waSal, **yooSal** (to arrive); imperative **ooSal**
wagaf, **yoogaf** (to stop); imperative **oogaf**
- (b) two common verbs which have a shortened imperative:
akal, **yaakul** (to eat); imperative **kul** (the **yaa-** is dropped)
akhadh, **yaakhudh** (to take); imperative **khudh**
- (c) the verb **jaa**, **yijji** (to come) which has an imperative totally unrelated to the verbal form: **ta:aa!**.

2 Gender

The form obtained by the above method is the masculine singular imperative, i.e. used when you are telling one male to do something. If you are talking to a woman, add **-i** to the masculine form (if it doesn't have one already, in which case one absorbs the other):

ruuH to a man	ruuHi to a woman	(go!)
intaDHir	intaDHiri	(wait!)
khudh	khudhi	(take!)

khalli from **khalla**, **yikhalli** (to leave) is the same for both because it already has a final **-i**.

For the plural, men or women, add a final **-u**, again omitting any final vowel present: **ruuHu**, **intaDHiru**, **khudhu**, **khallu** (from sing. **khalli**, final **-i** dropped).

Insight

The above are the base forms and will always be understood, but you will hear slightly different versions in different areas of the region. The golden rule is to imitate the native speakers around you.

3 Negative imperatives

The above forms are not used when you are telling someone not to do something. In this case use **laa** + the ordinary present form of the verb.

kul	<i>Eat!</i>
laa taakul/taak(u)li/taak(u)lu	<i>Don't eat!</i>

tamriinaat (Exercises) تمرينات

CD 2, TR 7, 5:07

- 1 You are on business in Dubai and decide to hire a car. In the car hire office you overhear an Emirati asking the car rental assistant

some questions about renting a car. What three questions does he ask? Listen to the recording, or read the transcript.

- 2 You need to buy fuel and have stopped at a service station. How would you ask the attendant for the following in Arabic?
 - (a) fill up with diesel
 - (b) 15 litres of premium
 - (c) RO5 of regular?

- 3 Your car needs attention. How would you ask the attendant:
 - (a) to check the oil and water
 - (b) if he can mend a puncture for you?
 - (c) if he can repair it today?

- 4 Look at the bus timetable opposite and say if the following statements are true or false.
 - (a) al-baaS yiTla: min masgaT as saa:ah thamaanyah wa nuSS iS-SubaH
 - (b) yooSaI dubay gabil as-saa:ah waaHidah w nuSS ba:d aDH-DHuhur
 - (c) muu mumkin naHaSSil akil fii SuHaar
 - (d) fii shahar ramaDHaan al-kariim al-baaS min masgaT yooSaI burj aS-SaHwa as-saa:ah :asharah S-SubaH
 - (e) si:r tadhkarat dhihaab w iyaab miyyah w khamsiin dirham

HáSSal, yiHáSSil (A)
shahar ramaDHaan al-kariim

get, find, obtain
the holy month of
Ramadan
Sahwa Tower

burj aS-SaHwa

- 5 Saif, an Omani, wants to take a taxi from Muttrah to Muscat. He has to go to the main post office. Fill in the missing words of his side of the conversation with the taxi driver, choosing an appropriate word from the box.

Oman - Dubai Express

Daily Timetable

Muscat, Puni Bus Station	dep	0730	1830
Seeb International Airport		0755	1855
Sahwa Tower		0800	1700
Mabaitah BP Station		0810	1710
Barka Roundabout		0830	1730
Musannah Roundabout	f	0845	f 1745
Khutayah Roundabout	f	0930	f 1830
Sohar Roundabout	f	0945	f 1845
Sohar - Shell Station R	arr	1005	1905
Sohar - Shell Station R	dep	1020	1920
Shinas Jumeil	f	1100	f 2000
Wajajah - Border Post	arr	1125	2025
Dubai, Dhata Car park	arr	1325	2225
			*
Dubai, Dhata Car park	dep	0730	1730
Wajajah - Border Post	arr	0900	1900
Shinas Jumeil	f	1010	f 2010
Sohar - Shell Station R	arr	1050	2050
Sohar - Shell Station R	dep	1105	2105
Saham Roundabout	f	1125	f 2125
Khutayah Roundabout	f	1140	f 2140
Musannah Roundabout	f	1225	f 2225
Barka Roundabout		1240	2240
Mabaitah Shell Station		1300	2300
Sahwa tower		1310	2310
Seeb International Airport		1315	2315
Muscat, Puni Bus Station	arr	1340	2340

R - refreshment stop

f - flag stop, bus stops on request only, timings approximate

HR - in the holy month of Ramadan departs at 1930 and runs 2 hours later through

Fares :

	Adult RO	Single Dhs
Muscat - Dubai	9	85
Muscat - Sohar	5	-
Sohar - Dubai	4	35

Return Fare Muscat - Dubai 16 150

FAMILY FARE
(upto 2 adults and 2 children) 36 350

Saif inta _____?
 sawwaag at-taksi laa, ana faaDHI
 Saif mumkin tiwaddii-ni _____, min faDHI-ak?
 sawwaag at-taksi haadha bi riyaalain

The taxi is rather slow, and Saif is impatient

Saif ruuH _____ min-faDHI-ak
 sawwaag at-taksi muu mumkin aruuH bi-sur:ah, fiih sayyaaraat
 kathiirah fi T-Tariig

They arrive and Saif is only going to be a few minutes.

Saif _____ fi s-sayyaarah, ana barja: ba:d shwayyah
 sawwaag at-taksi zain, ana bantaDHir hina

Saif has more business in Muscat.

Saif ruuH _____ wa _____ yisaar hina
 sawwaag at-taksi yisaar, zain
 Saif _____ as-sayyaarah hina. kam tiriid?
 sawwaag at-taksi riyaalain min-faDHI-ak

siidah	waggif
khallii-k	maktab al-bariid
liff	bi-sur:ah
mashghuul	

6 The sign inside the circle, in the photograph opposite, says:

للأجرة

مسقط/١٨٨٨

مسقط

- (a) Does the sign in the top half of the circle say: Taxi/Al-Bourj Taxis/For Hire?
 (b) Is the number of the taxi: 1888/7771/1777?
 (c) Is the taxi registered in: Muscat/Muttrah/Oman?



الخط العربي (Arabic script) al-khaTT al-:árabí

The pair of letters to learn in this unit are faa' and qaaf. These are both joiners and fairly simple to write. This time they both have dots, one and two respectively. They are identical in all forms except the final and the separate, in which the faa' has its final flourish or tail on the line, but the qaaf has a more curved tail extending below the line.

Name	Initial	Medial	Final	Separate	Pronunciation
faa'	ف	ف	ف	ف	f
qaaf	ق	ق	ق	ق	g

Here are another ten words to try:

- ١ - نفر
- ٢ - فندق
- ٣ - قبل
- ٤ - فرنسا
- ٥ - فلوس
- ٦ - غرفة
- ٧ - مسقط
- ٨ - رقم
- ٩ - دقيقة
- ١٠ - قريب

Test yourself

This test covers the main vocabulary, phrases and language points given in Unit 13. If you are not sure about your answers, go back to the dialogues and exercises for some revision, before going on to Unit 14. For the answers, see the Key to the exercises.

Can you provide the correct form of the imperative verbs in the following sentences? The verbs are given for you in the past tense *he* form. You will need the following new vocabulary:

iksbráis	express
wájabah (-aat)	meal
khafiif	light

- 1 yaa Sadiiq-l (akhadh) haadha l-filuus
- 2 yaa faaTimah, (jaa) hin bi-sur:ah
- 3 (jalas) hinaak min faDHI-kum
- 4 laa (takallam) ingliizi, yaa maryam
- 5 laa (:abba) haadhi s-sayaarah daizal

You and a friend want to travel by bus from Doha to Abu Dhabi tomorrow. Complete your half of the conversation with the bus clerk.

- 6 *Say good morning. Ask if there is a bus to Abu Dhabi tomorrow afternoon.*
kaatib na:am, al-iksbrais as-saa:ah khamsah w-nuSS
- 7 *Ask what time it gets to Abu Dhabi.*
kaatib yooSal as-saa:ah tisa:a illa thilth bi l-lail
- 8 *Ask if it stops anywhere so that you can buy food.*
kaatib na:am, yoogaf fii ruwais w mumkin tiHaSSil wajaabaat khafiifah hinaak fii maHaTTat al-banziin
- 9 *Ask how much a single ticket costs.*
kaatib Hida:ashar riyaal
- 10 *Say you'd like two single tickets.*
kaatib ithnain wa-:ishriin riyaal, min faDHI-ak

14

في البيت

fi l-bait

In this house

In this unit you will learn how to

- Talk about where you live
- Talk about renting a flat or house
- Get things made for you

New words and phrases

CD 2, TR 8

Listen to the recording.

Hiwaar 1 (Dialogue 1) حوار ١

CD 2, TR 8, 0:14

Salim and his wife Amal are considering renting a larger flat in Dubai than the one they live in at present. They have been to see one, and they are discussing it with Salim's parents Abdel Aziz and Suad.

Abdel Aziz	guuli aish ra'y-ich fi sh-shaggah
Amal	:ajabat-na kathiir. hiyya akbar min ash-shaggah illi nasta'jir-ha l-Hiin bi kathiir.
Abdel Aziz	wain-ha?
Salim	al:imaarah jamb :imaarat-na. ash-shaggah fi d-door ar-raabi:, w fiih shaggatain kamaan fii nafs ad-door
Saud	fii-ha kam ghurfah?
Salim	fiih majlis w ghurfat akil, w thalaath ghurfat noom, w maTbakh w Hammaamain, w Saalah kabiirah
Abdel Aziz	wa l-iijaar kam fi sh-shahar?
Salim	al-iijaar thalaath aalaaf dirham, ya:ni akthar mimma nadfa:uh l-Hiin bi-khams miyyah, w idha akhadhnáa-ha, laazim nadfa: iijaar shahrain muggadam
Abdel Aziz	wa aish bitsawwuun?
Salim	banfakkir shwayyah. muu laazim nakhabbar SaaHib al-milk al-Hiin

májlis (majáalis)	<i>sitting, reception room</i>
ghúrfat (ghúraf) akil	<i>dining room</i>
ghúrfat (ghúraf) noom	<i>bedroom</i>
máTbakh (maTábikh)	<i>kitchen</i>
Sáalah	<i>hall</i>
mugaddam	<i>in advance</i>
SáaHib al-milk	<i>landlord</i>

- Which floor is the flat on?
- How many rooms are there apart from the hall?
- How much will they have to pay in advance?

mulaaHaDHaat (Notes) ملاحظات

- akbar ... bi kathiir (lit. *bigger by much*), i.e. much bigger. Note the same construction relating to the higher rent, *more than by*.

2 ghurfat noom (lit. *room of sleep, bedroom*) and ghurfat akil. (lit. *room of food*).

These are two more examples of the possessive construction showing the hidden t.

3 mimma

Short for min maa (*than what*).

ma:lumaat thaqaafiyah (Cultural tips) معلومات ثقافية

Although traditional Arab houses are still to be seen in villages, homes in the Gulf cities are mainly in apartment blocks either built on new ground or on the sites of traditional buildings which have sadly been demolished.

The apartments in these buildings are basically western style, with furniture in the taste of the area, and plenty of mirrors and ornaments. More affluent families live in detached houses or villas.

Hiwaar 2 (Dialogue 2) حوار ٢

CD 2, TR 8, 1:40

Abdel Aziz and Suad are wondering now about the furnishing of the flat.

Abdel Aziz	ash-shaggah mafruushah?
Salim	laa. yikuun laazim najiib al-athaath maal-na. w iHtimaal yikuun laazim nashtari karaasi jadiidah Hagg al-majlis. huwwa majlis kabiir waasi: w al-karaasi illi tind-na al-Hiin Saghiirah
Suad	aish fiih min ajhizah kahrabaa'iyyah?
Amal	fiih ghassaalah, thallaajah w Tabbáakhah jadiidah. SaaHib al-milk jaab waaHidah jadiidah li-ann as-sukkaan illi min gabil kassarúu-ha

Salim	fiih takyiif markazi, w fiih marwaHah fi l-majlis Hagg ash-shita
Abdel Aziz	wa s-sayyaarah maal-ak, wain tiHuTT-ha?
Salim	taHit. fiih garaaj kabiir taHt al-imaarah, w fiih miS:ad yiwáSSil-ak foog li sh-shaggah.

mafrúush	<i>furnished</i>
aatháath	<i>furniture</i>
jiháaz (ájhizah)	<i>appliance, piece of equipment</i>
káhrab(a)	<i>electricity</i>
kahrabáa'i	<i>electrical</i>
ghassáalah (-aat)	<i>washing machine</i>
thalláajah (-aat)	<i>refrigerator</i>
Tabbáakhah (-aat)	<i>cooker</i>
wáasi:	<i>spacious</i>
li'ánn	<i>because</i>
kássar, yikássir (A)	<i>to break, smash</i>
márkazi	<i>central</i>
marwáHah (maráawiH)	<i>fan</i>
HaTT, yiHúTT' (B2)	<i>to put</i>
táH(i)t	<i>underneath, below, downstairs</i>
garaaj	<i>garage</i>
foog	<i>above, upstairs</i>
wáSSal, yiwáSSil (A)	<i>to transport, take</i>

True or false?

- They don't need to buy new chairs
- There is a new fridge
- There is a fan in the living room only
- There is a lift in the building

mulaaHaDHaat (Notes) ملاحظات

- The general word for *furniture* is aatháath. Other items you might have in a house are:

maiz (amyáaz)	<i>table</i>
sariir (saráayir)	<i>bed</i>
raff (rufúuf)	<i>shelf</i>
kábat (-aat)	<i>cupboard, wardrobe</i>
miráayah (-aat)	<i>mirror</i>
lámBah (-aat)	<i>lamp</i>
lóoHah (-aat)	<i>(framed) picture</i>
mighsalah	<i>washbasin/sink</i>
shárshaf (sharáashif)	<i>sheet</i>
barnúuS (baraniis)	<i>blanket</i>
sitáarah (satáayir)	<i>curtain</i>
zooliyyah (zawáali)	<i>carpet</i>
SáH(a)n (SuHúun)	<i>plate</i>
giláas (glaasáat)	<i>glass</i>
Sufriyyah (Safáari)	<i>pan</i>
gáfshah (gfáash)	<i>spoon</i>
sikkiin (sakaakiin)	<i>knife</i>
chingáal (chanagiil)	<i>fork</i>

- 2 yikuun laazim (*it will be necessary, will have to*).
Remember that yikuun always has a future or potential meaning.

Insight

marwaHah is the Arabic word for *fan* but one frequently hears the Indian word *pánkah* for a *ceiling fan*.

Hiwaar 3 (Dialogue 3) حوار ٣

CD 2, TR 8, 2:45

Amal and her mother are in a furnishing store ordering curtains for the new flat. They have been looking at materials, and Amal has decided what she would like. She has taken in another pair for the shop to copy.

Amal	haadha l-akhDHar hina gumaash mumtaaz. yijab-ni. al-mitir bi-kam?
SaaHib al-maHall	haadha waajid zain. al-mitir bi thalaathiin dirham, wa t-tafSiil khamsah w :ishriin.
Amal	haadha kathiir. mumkin tisawwii-li takhfiiDH?
SaaHib al-maHall	zain, a:Tii-ch takhfiiDH :ishriin fi l-miyyah. arba:ah w :ishriin dirham, w :ishriin Hagg at- tafSiil
Amal	zain, nariid-ha haadha sh-shakil. (<i>She shows him the old pair</i>) mumkin tisawwii-ha mithil haadhi?
SaaHib al-maHall	mumkin tikhaalli waaHidah :ind-na Hatta na:raf shakl-ha bi DH-DHabt?
Amal	haadha l-magaas illi ariid-uh Hagg al-majlis, w ariid haadha l-gumaash al-azrag Hagg ghurfat an-noom. haadha guTun, faa?
SaaHib al-maHall	ai na:am, guTun
Amal	mata yikuun jaahiz?
SaaHib al-maHall	mumkin ... yoom al-arba:a al-gaadim
Amal	mumkin tisawwi as-sataayir al-khaDHRah awwal? yimkin yoom as-sabt?
SaaHib al-maHall	mmmm ... haadha Sa:b shwayyah. zain, nakhallaS al-khaDHra yoom as-sabt, wa th-thaanyah yoom al-arba:a
Amal	shukran

tafSiil	<i>making, fashioning (esp. with material)</i>
takhfiiDH	<i>discount</i>
haadha sh-shák(i)l	<i>this form, shape; like this</i>
magáas	<i>size</i>
gúTun	<i>cotton</i>
khállas, yikhállis (A)	<i>to finish, complete something</i>

- (a) How much discount does Amal get for the material?
(b) What colour has she chosen for the bedroom?
(c) When will the living-room curtains be ready?

mulaaHaDHaat (Notes) ملاحظات

1 SaaHib al-maHall

Larger shops are called maHáll (-aat). The word dukkáan (dakaakiin) is applied to smaller enterprises, stalls in the market, etc.

2 :ishriin fi l-miyyah 20 in the hundred, i.e. 20%

3 khaDHra (green)

Remember the adjectives for the basic colours change their form slightly in the feminine; ázrag behaves in the same way, fem. zárga.

ma:luumaat thaqaafiyyah (Cultural tips) معلومات ثقافية

Whereas we, in the UK or the States, buy most of our clothes and furnishings ready made, people in the Middle East are accustomed to having things made for them, often at extremely low prices, by an army of craftsmen.

Tailors will measure you and make you a suit in a couple of days, dressmakers can make a dress overnight, and curtains similarly can be made up in a day or two.

There is a huge choice of materials from all over the world, and because the cost of making-up is so low, while imported clothes and furnishings are relatively expensive, many people are happy to have some garments made for them. However, the quality of workmanship varies tremendously, and the best tailors are found by personal recommendation.

ta:biiraat haammah (Key phrases) تعبيرات هامة

Asking about renting a villa or flat

nariid nasta'jir shaggah/bait *We would like to rent a flat/a house.*
al-bait/ash-shaggah mafruush/-ah? *Is the house/flat furnished?*

fiih kam ghurfah? *How many rooms are there?*

al-iijaar ma:a l-kahraba? *Is the electricity included in the rent?*

al-iijaar kam? *How much is the rent?*

idha akhadhna l-filla, laazim nadfa: iijaar shahar migaddam? *If we take the villa, will we have to pay one month's rent in advance?*

fillah (filal)

villa

Talking about where you live

naskun fii shaggah/filla

We live in a flat/villa.

namlik-ha/nasta' jir-ha

We own/rent it.

fii-ha sab: ghurfah

It has seven rooms

:ind-na . . .

We have a . . .

majlis

living-room

ghurfat akil

dining-room

maTbakh

kitchen

Hammaam

bathroom

ghurfat noom

bedroom

Saalah

hall

garaaj

garage

Hadiigah

garden

málak, yimlik (A)

to own

Hadiigah (Hadáayig)

garden

Asking someone to make something for you

mumkin tifaSSil l-i badlah/lubsah/sataayir? *Can you make a suit/dress/pair of curtains for me?*

mumkin tisawwi waaHid mithil haadha? *Can you copy this for me? (lit. make one like this).*

ariid-uh agSar/aTwaI/akbar/aSghar shwayyah *I want it a bit shorter/longer/bigger/smaller.*

mumkin tikhalliS-uh yoom al-khamiis? *Can you finish it by Thursday?*
mata yikuun jaahiz? *When will it be ready?*

fáSSal, yifáSSil (A)

to make, fashion, tailor

badlah (-aat)

(man's) suit

lúbsah (-aat) or fustáan (fasatfín)
ágSar

(lady's) dress
(shorter)

núqaT naHwiyyah (Grammar points) نقط نحوية

Which, what, whose, etc.

We are not referring to the question words here, but the *which* featuring in sentences such as. 'The book which I ordered came in the post today'. These words are called relative pronouns.

To express such sentences in Arabic, you must distinguish between definite and indefinite concepts. A definite concept in English is one either preceded by *the, this, that*, etc., (the book) or the name of a person or place (Jack, Muhammad, Abu Dhabi).

- (a) If the concept is *definite*, the word for *which, that, who* etc. is *illi*
(b) If it is *indefinite*, no word at all is used.

Insight

illi does not change for gender, etc., and there are no different words for *whom, whose* or *which*.

In both cases, the part of the sentence after English *which*, etc. must be able to stand on its own, like a complete utterance.

Definite concept

ash-shaggah illi nasta'jir-ha l-Hiin

*The apartment which
we are renting now
(the apartment which
we-rent it now).*

ad-doktoor illi yishtaghal fii dubay

*The doctor who works in
Dubai (the doctor who
he-works in Dubai).*

ar-rajjaal illi nasta'jir shaggat-uh

*The man whose apartment
we rent (the man who
we-rent his apartment).*

al-muhandis illi :ind-uh bait jamb
bait-na

*The engineer who has a
house next to ours (the
engineer who with-him
a house next to our
house).*

Indefinite concept

shaggah nasta'jir-ha l-Hiin

*An apartment which
we are renting now
(apartment we-rent it
now).*

doktoor yishtaghal fii dubay

*A doctor who works in
Dubai (a doctor he-
works in Dubai).*

rajjaal nasta'jir shaggat-uh

*A man whose apartment
we rent (a man we-rent
his apartment).*

Hurmah :ind-ha thalaath banaat

*A woman who has three
daughters (a woman
with-her three
daughters).*

Húrmah (Hariim) woman

The plural is the source of English 'harem'; also mára (niswáan) is used (note irregular plural).

tamriinaat (Exercises) تمرينات

CD 2, TR 8, 4:28

- 1 Listen to these four 'people talking about where they live in Bahrain. Make notes about their homes and the rooms they have, and check your answers in the Key to the exercises.

- shájarah (ashjáar) tree
- looz almonds
- zuhúur flowers
- was(a)T middle, centre

- 2 Now it's your turn. How would you say that you lived in the following:
- A small flat with living-room, one bedroom, kitchen and bathroom?
 - A villa with lounge, dining-room, four bedrooms, two bathrooms, kitchen and garage?
 - A house with a large living-room, two bedrooms, bathroom and kitchen?
- 3 You are moving house. Look at the following words and decide which items will go into which rooms of the house. We have given you suggestions in the Key to the exercises.

- thallaajah sariir sittah karaasi
- tilifizyoon baraniiS
- fuwaT kabat
- maiz Tabbaakhah

- fi l-majlis
 - fi l-maTbakh
 - fii ghurfat an-noom
 - fi l-Hammaam
 - fi ghurfat al-akil
- 4 You intend to rent a flat while you are working in Doha. The agent takes you to see one. Ask him the relevant questions below, trying at first not to look at the dialogue or Key phrases for help.
- Ask how many rooms it has.
 - Ask if it is furnished.
 - Ask how much the rent is.
 - Ask what electrical appliances are included.
 - Ask how much money you will have to pay in advance if you take the flat.

5 This wordsearch puzzle contains 14 articles which you will find around the house. Clues are written for you in English.

- furniture
- bed
- table
- chair
- carpet
- telephone
- lamp
- cupboard
- fridge
- washing machine
- spoon
- knife
- shelf
- plate

g	t	s	i	k	k	i	i	n	a
h	h	S	n	r	u	s	H	m	i
a	a	a	n	a	r	r	n	b	r
y	l	H	s	u	m	i	o	h	a
y	l	n	k	s	l	i	o	a	t
i	a	j	a	i	a	r	f	h	h
l	a	m	b	a	h	a	i	s	a
o	j	r	a	f	f	s	l	f	a
o	a	H	t	i	S	t	i	a	t
z	h	s	l	n	z	a	t	g	h

6 You have a favourite shirt but it is wearing out, so you go to the souk and choose some material for a new one. You take it to the tailor and ask him to copy your old shirt. Fill in your side of the conversation, using Dialogue 3 as a guide.

inta Say you like this red material here. Ask how much it costs per metre.

SaaHib ad-dukkaan haadha guTun khaaliS. al-mitir bi khamsah w :ishriin dirham

inta Tell him that's a lot. Ask if he can give you a discount.

SaaHib ad-dukkaan n-zain. a:Tii-k takhfiiDH -- :ishriin dirham al-mitir

inta Say yes, you'll take it.

Now you go to the tailor, and tell him you want a shirt like this one

inta (Show him your old shirt) Ask him if he can copy this shirt for you.

khayyaat maa fiih mushkilah. agiis-ak.

The tailor measures you.

inta Tell him you want it a bit longer than the old one.

khayyaat zain

inta Ask if he can make it for you quickly.
khayyaaT yikuun jaahiz yoom al-aHad al-misa in shaa'
 Al-laah
inta Tell him that's fine.

kháaliS pure
khayyáaT (-iin or khayaayiiT) tailor
gaas, yigiis (B1) to measure
gamiiS (gumSáan) shirt

al-khaTT al-árabí (Arabic script) الخط العربي

Our final two letters are the Arabic equivalents of *k* and *h*. These two are not related in shape in any way, and neither has any dots. Both join to the letter on either side, so have the usual four forms. There are no pronunciation difficulties.

Name	Initial	Medial	Final	Separate	Pronunciation
kaaf	ك	ك	ك	ك	k
haa'	ه	ه	ه	ه	h

kaaf is quite a tall letter. It is best to write the main part of the letter first, then come back to do the 'tail' at the top, or the little squiggle inside at the first lift of the pen, like dotting *i*'s and crossing *t*'s in English. Note also that, while the first two forms lean to the left, the final and separate forms are vertical.

The haa' is more difficult, as the forms seem to bear little or no relation to each other. It is quite small! – and you have already met its final form in Unit 2 in the guise of the 'hidden *t*' of the feminine ending where it acquires two dots above it. You have also met its initial form in the currency word درهم *dirham* and its plural دراهم *diraahim*. Have another look at some bank notes!

There is one final character, the so-called hamzah. Not technically regarded as a letter of the alphabet, it is counted among the 'signs' used for the short vowels and so on. However, unlike them, it is usually represented in written Arabic. Its sound is a glottal stop (like the *t* in the Cockney version of such words as *bottle*). The rules for writing it are complex and it is a common spelling mistake in Arabic. However, so that you can recognise it, the general rules for writing it are given in the alphabet section at the beginning of the book.

Here are some words with *k* and *h* in them for you to transliterate:

- ١- هلة
- ٢- كرسي
- ٣- مملكة
- ٤- مشهور
- ٥- شهر
- ٦- دكان
- ٧- كهرباء
- ٨- هواء
- ٩- فكرة
- ١٠- تذكرة

Insight

In 7 and 8 the endings are pronounced simply as -a (instead of written -aa') in spoken Arabic.

Test yourself

This test covers the main vocabulary, phrases and language points given in Unit 14. If you are not sure about your answers, go back to the dialogues and exercises for some revision. For the answers, see the Key to the exercises.

Are these sentences definite or indefinite? Join them, using an appropriate relative pronoun if necessary. Example:

This is house. I live in it. haadha huwa l-bait illi askun fihi

- 1 Bring the book. I bought it yesterday.
- 2 This is the apartment. I rented it.
- 3 I don't like the dress. You bought it.
- 4 A film. I saw it on Friday.
- 5 The town is beautiful. I live in it.
- 6 A large apartment. It has four bedrooms.
- 7 The plates are on the table. It is in the kitchen.
- 8 Give me a key. It opens this door.
- 9 The tailor in the market. His prices are reasonable.
- 10 A student can speak Arabic. He reads this book!

Key to the exercises

Unit 1

Translations of dialogues

Dialogue 1

- | | |
|----------------|--|
| Jim | Hello. |
| Khaled | Hello. |
| Jim | How are you? |
| Khaled | Praise be to God well. And you, how are you? |
| Jim | Well, praise be to God. What's your news? |
| Khaled | Praise be to God. |
| Eleanor | Hello. |
| Khaled | Hello. |
| Eleanor | How are you? |
| Khaled | Praise be to God. And you, how are you? |
| Eleanor | Praise be to God. |

Dialogue 2

- | | |
|-----------------------|------------------|
| Muhammad | Good morning. |
| Khaled | Good morning. |
| Muhammad | Welcome. |
| Khaled | Welcome to you. |
| Muhammad | How are you? |
| Khaled and Jim | Praise be to God |
| Muhammad | Goodbye. |
| Khaled | Goodbye. |

Dialogue 3

- | | |
|-----------------|-------------------|
| Jack | Hello. |
| Muhammad | Hello. |
| Jack | What's your name? |

Muhammad	My name is Muhammad. And you?
Jack	My name is Jack.
Muhammad	Where are you from?
Jack	I'm from England. And you?
Muhammad	I'm from Dubai.
Jack	Welcome.
Muhammad	Welcome to you.
Jack	Good evening.
Faridah	Good evening.
Jack	What's your name?
Faridah	My name is Faridah. And you?
Jack	My name is Jack. Where are you from?
Faridah	I'm from Abu Dhabi. Are you from America?
Jack	No, I'm from England.
Faridah	Welcome.
Jack	Welcome to you.

Dialogue 4

Jack	Hello.
Yasin	Hello. Do you know Arabic?
Jack	Yes I know Arabic. Where are you from?
Yasin	We are from Bahrain. Are you from America?
Jack	No, I am from England. He is from America.
Yasin	Welcome.
Ken	Welcome.

Questions

- 3 (a) Dubai. (b) Abu Dhabi. (c) America.
 4 (a) Do you know Arabic? (b) Bahrain. (c) America.

Exercises

- 2 (a) :alái-kum (b) al-Hámdu (c) aish (d) ísm-i (e) masáa'
 (f) Háal-ak (g) sáhlán (h) min
 3 as-salaamu: alai-kum/kaif Haal-ich?/bi-khair, al-Hamdu li-l-laah. aish akhbaar-ich?
 4 masaa' an-nuur/ahlan bii-ch/al-Hamdu li-l-laah/fii amaan Al-laah
 5 (a) masaa' al-khair/masaa' an-nuur/kaif Haal-ak?/al-Hamdu li-l-laahbi-khair, wa inta kaif Haal-ak?/al-Hamdu li-l-laah

(b) masaa' al-khair/masaa' an-nuur. kaif Haal-ak?/al-Hamdu li-l-laah. wa inta kaif Haal-kum?/al-Hamdu li-l-laah bi-khair
 (c) SabaaH al-khair/SabaaH an-nuur. kaif Haal-ich?/al-Hamdu li-l-laah. aish akhbaar-kum?/al-Hamdu li-l-laah. wa inti aish akhbaar-ich?/al-Hamdu li-l-laah

- 6 wa :alai-kum as-salaam/ana ism-i . . . , wa inta aish ism-ak?/ana min . . . , wa inta min wain?/ahlan wa sahlan
 7 (a) inta min as-sa:uudiyah? (b) niHna min ash-shaarjah
 (c) humma min landan? (d) laa, huwwa min ingilterra wa hiyya min al-kuwait (e) inti min al-imaaraat? (f) na:am, ana min abu DHabi
 8 (a) How are you? (b) Abu Dhabi (c) Oman (d) aish ism-ich?
 (e) inti min wain? (f) Do you speak English?

Test yourself

1f, 2h, 3i, 4j, 5a, 6g, 7c, 8e, 9d, 10b

Unit 2

Translations of dialogues

Dialogue 1

Bill	Good morning.
taxi driver	Good morning.
Bill	The Sheraton hotel please.
taxi driver	O.K., God willing.
Bill	Is the hotel far from the airport?
taxi driver	No, it's near. Only ten minutes, no more.
Bill	Thanks.
taxi driver	You're welcome.

Dialogue 2

Bill	Good morning.
Mahmoud	Good morning. How are you?
Bill	Well, praise God. And you?
Mahmoud	Praise God.
Bill	(If you) please, is there a bank near here?

- Mahmoud** Yes there is, the National Bank. Do you know Rashid Street?
- Bill** No, I don't (know).
- Mahmoud** OK. Go out of the door and turn left, then go straight ahead and take the first street on the right. The bank is on the left.
- Bill** Thanks very much.
- Mahmoud** Don't mention it.
- Dialogue 3
- Bill** Please, which way is the market?
- man** The market is that way, on the left
- Bill** And which way is the museum?
- man** The museum is in Dubai, not here. This is Deira. Go straight ahead, turn right, and the museum is after the bridge.
- Bill** Thanks.
- man** Don't mention it.
- Dialogue 4
- Bill** Good evening.
- Shopkeeper** Good evening.
- Bill** Is this the road to Ras al-Khaimah?
- shopkeeper** Yes. Go straight on from here, pass the hospital, then turn right at the second round-about – no, the third round-about, before the school. Then turn left, after that go straight ahead.
- Bill** Is it far from Dubai?
- shopkeeper** By God . . . 90 kilometres from here.
- Bill** OK. Many thanks. Good bye.
- shopkeeper** Goodbye.

Questions

- 1 (a) no, it's near (b) ten minutes 2 (a) if there is one nearby (b) left (c) first on the right 3 (a) left (b) museum (c) in Dubai, past the bridge 4 (a) afternoon/evening (b) straight ahead (c) third

Exercises

- 1 (a) iii (b) ii (c) v (d) i (e) iv 2 (a) háadhi (b) haadhóol (c) háadha (d) háadha (e) háadhi
- 3 (a) Post office. On the right (b) Sea View Hotel. Go straight, then turn left. (c) The port. At the end of the road. (d) The university. After the third round-about (e) The bus station. Take the 2nd street on the right, and the bus station is on the left.
- 4 (a) khudh; (b) íTla; (c) fáwwit; (d) liff (e) ruuH.
- 5 (a) duwwáar al-burj min wain min fádHI-ak? (b) kaif arúuH al-múina min fádHI-ak? (c) kaif arúuH ábu DHábi min fádHI-ak? (d) máT:am al-khalíij min wain min fádHI-ak?
- 6 (a) al-mustashfa :ala l-yamiin (b) maHaTTat al-baaS siidah (c) khudh thaalith shaari: :ala l-yisaar (d) :ajmaan khamsah kiilo(mitr) min ash-shaarjah (e) liff yamiin, w maktab al-bariid :ala l-yisaar (f) liff yisaar :ind ad-duwwaar
- 7 (a) at-tilifoon (b) al-matHaf (c) markaz ash-shurTah (d) abu DHabi
- 8 Across 1 jaami: 6 miina 8 maHaTTat al-baaS 10 maTaar 13 markaz tijaari 15 duwwaar 16 fundug 17 saa:ah
Down 2 madrasah 3 mustashfa 4 jaami:ah 5 matHaf 7 maT:am 9 Saydaliyyah 11 jisir 12 gala:ah 14 suug

Test yourself

1e, 2i, 3h, 4g, 5b, 6a, 7j, 8d, 9c, 10f

Unit 3

Translations of dialogues

Dialogue 1

exchange

Which number do you want?

Bill

What is the phone number of the Gulf Trading Company please?

exchange

The number is 264501.

Bill

Thank you.

exchange

You're welcome.

Dialogue 2

Secretary Good morning. This is the Gulf Trading Company.
Bill Good morning. Is Abdel Aziz there please?
Secretary What is your name please?
Bill My name is Bill Stewart.
Secretary One moment, please.
Abdel Aziz Good morning Bill. Welcome to Dubai. How are you?
Bill Praise God. What's your news?
Abdel Aziz Praise God. How is the family?
Bill Well, praise God. And you, how is your family?
Abdel Aziz Well thanks. How can I help you?
Bill Can I come (to you) at the office?
Abdel Aziz Of course. Give me the phone number of the hotel and I'll ring you in five minutes.
Bill The number of the hotel is 281573.
Abdel Aziz And the room number?
Bill 726.
Abdel Aziz OK. I'll ring you in a little while.
Bill Goodbye.
Abdel Aziz Goodbye.

Questions

1 a) ayy rágam tiríid? b) 264501 2 a) 281573 b) 726 c) in 5 minutes

Exercises

- 1 (a) Dubai 3 – Bahrain 0 (b) Sharjah 7 – Fujairah 2 (c) Kuwait 4 – Abu Dhabi 4 (d) Jeddah 6 – Taif 2 (e) Doha 1 – Hofuf 0
2 (c) wrong, 207; (e) wrong, 231–450; (h) wrong, 872–660.
3

(a)
visitor aish rágam ghúrfat Husáin :íisa min fáDHI-ak?
clerk Husáin :íisa fii ghúrfah rágam khamastá:shar fi d-door al-áwwal.
visitor shúkran

b)
visitor aish rágam ghúrfat múuna ábu Háidar min fáDHI-ak?
clerk múuna ábu Háidar fii ghúrfah rágam miitáin khamsah wa thalaathíin fi d-door ath-thaani.
visitor shúkran
c)
visitor aish rágam ghúrfat ad-doktóor muHámmad al-wardáani min fáDHI-ak?
clerk ad-doktóor muHámmad al-wardáani fii ghúrfah rágam árba: miyyah wa thamaaniin fi d-door ar-ráabi.
visitor shúkran

- 4 (a) sá:b:ah (b) arba:tá:shar (c) sá:b:ah wa :ishríin (d) míyyah rís:ah wa :ishríin (e) khámsah wa arba:iin (f) thaláath míyyah sítrah wa sittíin (g) :ishríin (h) thamáanyah

Test yourself

- 1 kam rágam tilifóon al-fúndug?
- 2 rágam ithnáin sítrah árba:ah Sífr khámsah rís:ah
- 3 ibrahíim al-hussáin mawjúd min fáDHI-ak?
- 4 rágam al-ghúrfah thaláath míyyah w-:ásharah
- 5 15
- 6 97
- 7 234
- 8 ithná:shar
- 9 árba:ah w-khamsiin
- 10 sitt míyyah wáaHid w-thamaaniin

Unit 4

Translations of dialogues

Dialogue 1
Bill What time is it please?
Mahmoud It's eight o'clock now.

Bill	Exactly eight o'clock?
Mahmoud	Yes, exactly.
Bill	Thanks.
Mahmoud	Don't mention it.
guest	Where is the swimming pool please?
Mahmoud	There on the left. but it's closed now.
guest	What time does it open?
Mahmoud	It opens at nine. In half an hour.
guest	Thank you.
Mahmoud	You're welcome.
guest	What time does the restaurant close?
Mahmoud	Half past 11.
guest	Thanks.
Mahmoud	Don't mention it.

Dialogue 2

Abdel Aziz	Bill?
Bill	Yes, it's me. Abdel Aziz?
Abdel Aziz	Yes, how are you?
Bill	Well, praise God. And how are you?
Abdel Aziz	Praise God. What time are you coming to the office?
Bill	Is 11 o'clock OK.?
Abdel Aziz	Fine, but 11.30 would be better.
Bill	OK. So I'll see you at 11.30, God willing.
Abdel Aziz	God willing.

Questions

- (a) 4 hours (b) 9am (c) as-sáa:ah kam yiftaH? (d) 11.30pm
- (a) Come to the office (b) 11.00am (c) 11.30am

Exercises

- (a) 1.20 (b) 6.35 (c) 10.15 (d) 5.05 (e) 9.00pm
- (a) as-sáa:ah khámsah (b) as-sáa:ah :ásharah wa nuSS (c) as-sáa:ah thaláathah illa rúba: (d) as-sáa:ah wáaHidah wa nuSS wa kháms (e) as-sáa:ah sáab:ah wa thilth (f) as-sáa:ah ithná:shar illa :áshar
- (a) yoom al-khamiis (b) búkrah (c) yoom al-áHad (d) áwwal :ams

- (a) True (b) False (c) False (d) True (e) True
- (a) quarter to eight (b) at the shopping centre on the left (c) at 8am (d) in quarter of an hour
- 6

DHaif	as-sáa:ah kam min fáDHI-ak?
káatib	as-sáa:ah thaláathah w nuSS
DHaif	fiih Sarráaf garib min hina?
káatib	ná:am, fi s-suug :a l-yamiin
DHaif	yiftaH as-sáa:ah kam?
káatib	as-sáa:ah árba:ah, ba:d nuSS sáa:ah
DHaif	shúkran jaziilan
káatib	:áfwan

Arabic script

- 1 3/12/1952 2 19/11/2013 3 1/1/2000 4 28/2/1990 5 17/4/1880
- (a) sittá:shar wa khámsah wa thaláathiin dagiigah (b) thamantá:shar w khamastá:shar dagiigah (c) tís:ah wa khámsah wa :ishriin dagiigah (d) :ishriin wa khámsah wa khamsiin dagiigah (e) síttah wa khámsah wa arba:iin dagiigah (f) thalathá:shar wa :ishriin dagiigah (g) :ásharah wa tís:atá:shar dagiigah (h) arba:atá:shar wa síttah wa :ishriin dagiigah (i) wáaHidah wa iHdá:shar dagiigah (j) thaláathah wa :ishriin wa khám:sah wa khamsiin dagiigah

Test yourself

- as-sáa:ah kam?
- as-sáa:ah árba:ah wa-nuSS
- al-bank maftúuH? Laa, húwwa magfúul
- yoom al-áHad, yoom al-ithnain, yoom ath-thaláathah, yoom al-árba:ah, yoom al-khamiis, yoom al-júm:ah, yoom as-sábt
- b
- c
- a
- yíbanid/yígfil
- áji
- tíftaH

Unit 5

Translations of dialogues

Dialogue 1

- Matthew** Do you have batteries please?
shopkeeper Yes, I have (there are).
Matthew How much is this one?
shopkeeper This one is two riyals.
Matthew And this one?
shopkeeper This one is one and a half riyals.
Matthew Give me four of this kind.
shopkeeper Right. Do you want anything else?
Matthew No thanks.

Dialogue 2

- Peter & Sally** Hello.
shopkeeper Hello. How are you?
Peter Well, praise God.
shopkeeper What would you like?
Peter We just want to look.
Sally What is this called in Arabic please?
shopkeeper This is called a **khanjar**.
Peter Is this (of) silver?
shopkeeper Yes, silver. Old silver.
Sally And what is this called?
shopkeeper This is called a **mijmar**.
Sally How much is this small one?
shopkeeper Seven dirhams.
Sally And the big (one)?
shopkeeper Eleven dirhams. Do you want the big one?
Sally Yes ... but (it's) expensive.
shopkeeper No (it's) not expensive! (It's) cheap! OK, nine dirhams.
Sally OK, I'll take this (one) for nine dirhams.

Dialogue 3

- Sally** How much is this chain?
shopkeeper This one here?

- Sally** No, that one there.
Sally This one is short. Do you have a longer one?
shopkeeper Yes, this one is a bit longer.
Sally This one's better. How much?
shopkeeper Just a moment please ... This one is 230 dirhams. (That's) a lot!
Sally This is 22 ct gold. Is 200 OK?
shopkeeper No, (that's a lot). Let it (go) for 180.
Sally No, I'm sorry, (that's) not possible. Give me 190.
shopkeeper OK. 190 dirhams. Here you are.

Questions

- 1 (a) 2 riyals (b) 6 riyals
- 2 (a) to look around (b) the dagger (c) 7 dirhams
- 3 (a) 230 dirhams (b) it is 22ct gold (c) 190 dirhams

Exercises

- 1 (a) 2 riyals (b) 3 riyals 200 baiza (c) 90 riyals (d) 500 baiza (e) 7 dinars
- 2 (a) sittūn dirham (b) sab: míyyah w khamsiin baizah (c) :ásharah riyaaláat (d) diinaaráin (e) diináar w khamsiin fils (t) nuSS riyáal (g) thamantá:shar diináar (h) khamsah daráahim
- 3 (a) háadhi aish ism-ha bi l-:arabi? bi-kam hiyya? (b) háadhi aish ism-ha bi l-:arabi? bi-kam hiyya?
(c) háadha aish ism-uh bi l-:arabi? bi-kam huwwa? (d) háadha aish ism-uh bi l-:arabi? bi-kam huwwa?
(e) háadhi aish ism-ha bi l-:arabi? bi-kam hiyya?
- 4 fiih :índ-kum agláam?
a:Tii-ni waaHid aswad w waaHid aHmar
arúid :ilbat asbriin
maal sittah w thalaathiin
an-naDHDHáarah hináak bi-kam?
laa, haadha kathiir. kam tiriid?
- 5 (a) farúidah joo:áanah (b) ána :aTsháan (c) ínti ta:báanah?
(d) al-lúghah al-:arabíyyah muu Sa:bah (e) al-marsaidis
sayyáarah jáyyidah (f) :áayishah bint jamúlah

Test yourself

- 1 aríid ashúuf bass
- 2 :indak khanáajir, min fáDHI-ak?
- 3 laa, haadháak hína
- 4 haadha muub zain. :ind-ak waaHid aHsan?
- 5 húwwa gadiim?
- 6 húwwa bi-kam?
- 7 háadha wáajid gháali
- 8 khudh miitáin riyaaláin
- 9 má:a l-asaf, :ind-i miitáin w khamsiin bass.
- 10 zain, ákhudh háadha

Unit 6

Translations of dialogues

Dialogue 1

- Khaled** What would you like to drink?
Jim What do they have?
Khaled What drinks do you have?
shopkeeper We have tea, coffee, and orange and lime juice.
Jim I'll take coffee without milk, if possible.
Khaled And you, what do you want to drink?
Eleanor I prefer lime juice.
shopkeeper Lime with sugar?
Eleanor Yes.
Khaled And I'll take tea.
shopkeeper OK. One tea, one coffee and one lime juice.

Dialogue 2

- Salim** By God I'm hungry!
Mike Me too. Let's stop at this petrol station and buy some food. Maybe they have sandwiches.
Salim What kind of food do you have please?
shopkeeper We have sandwiches, eggs, cake and crisps.
Salim What kind of sandwiches do you have?

- shopkeeper** We have chicken, meat and egg with salad.
Salim What do you want to eat Mike?
Mike I'll take a chicken sandwich. Can you make me an egg sandwich without salad please?
shopkeeper Of course. And you (sir)?
Salim I'll take two meat sandwiches.
shopkeeper Anything else?
Salim Yes, give me a bit of cake as well.
shopkeeper Right. One chicken sandwich, two meat, one egg without salad and one cake. We'll make them now.
- Dialogue 3
- shopkeeper** The sandwiches are ready. Do you want anything to drink?
Salim What have you got (that's) cold?
shopkeeper There is milk, (fruit) juice, soda, cola, Seven Up and Masafi water.
Salim What do you want to drink Mike?
Mike Anything, but I don't like milk. What (kind of fruit) juice do you have?
shopkeeper We have orange, lime, mango, pineapple, banana.
Salim Can you give us an assortment for ten dirhams?
shopkeeper Yes, all right.
Salim How much is this all (together)?
shopkeeper That makes ten plus six plus nine and a half. That is 25 and a half.
Saalim Here you are.

Questions

- 1 (a) True (b) False (c) False
- 2 (a) nashtári shwayyat akil (b) eggs, cake, crisps (c) cake
- 3 (a) milk (b) a selection for 10 dirhams (c) 25 and a half dirhams.

Exercises

- 1 (a) 4 teas; (b) 2 orange juices, 1 lemon juice; (c) 1 chocolate milk, 1 laban; (d) 3 Coca Colas*, 1 orange juice; (e) coffee with milk and sugar

*"COCA COLA" is a registered trademark of The Coca Cola Company

- 2 (a) láHam (b) shíkar (c) aríid (d) akh
 3 (a) 5; (b) 4; (c) 3; (d) 1; (e) 2.
 4 (a) huwwa l-aghla (b) miitáin baizah (c) burtugaal, shamaam wa ananaas (d) sitt miyyat baizah (e) viimtoo, tang aw laimóon
 5 (a) 1 egg sandwich, 1 coffee (with milk) (b) 3 ice-creams, 1 orange juice, 1 laban (c) 1 chicken and chips, 1 chocolate milk (d) 4 fishburgers and chips, 1 apple juice, 2 orange juices, 1 coffee without milk (e) 1 burger, 3 cheeseburgers and chips, 1 orange juice, 3 colas
 6 aish :ind-kum min ákil?
 aish tiriidiin yaa júuli?
 fiih aish min sandwiichaata :ind-kum?
 ána maa aHíbb al-láHam. áakhudh sandwíich maal faláafil
 ána afáDHDHal al-láHam. a:Tíi-na wáaHid sandwíich faláafil
 w wáaHid láHam min faDhl-ak
 tiHibbiin Sálsat filfil áHmar? laa shukran, maa nariid-ha
 min fáDhl-ak, a:Tíi-na kaik w shibs kamáan
 haadha kull-uh kam?
 tfáDHDHal (al-filúus)
 (a) eggs, cake, falafel and crisps (b) red pepper sauce (c) 8 riyals
 7 (a) aHíbb-ha (b) afáDHDHal-ha bi-Halíib (c) maa aHíbb gáhwah bi-shíkar (d) ashkúr-kum, maa aríid gáhwah ai-Híin
 8 (a) tiriid táaku! shay? (b) tiriid dajáaj aw láHam? (c) asawwii-lak sandwíich (maal) dajáaj (d) tiriid Sálsat filfil áHmar?

Arabic script

- 1 (a) sáalim (b) saliim
 2 (a) muHámmad (b) maHmúud
 3 (a) sa:iid (b) sá:ad (c) su:áad (d) sa:úud
 4 (a) Hámad (b) Háamid (c) Hamiid
 5 (a) rashiid (b) ráashid
 6 (a) zaid (b) záayid
 7 (a) abu DHabi (b) :umáan (c) ash-sháarigah
 8 (a) :aziiz (b) :azzah
 9 (a) gaTar (b) al-baHráin (c) al-iráaq
 10 (a) jaddah (b) ar-riyáaDH (c) al-fujáirah

Test yourself

- 1 haa
 2 naa
 3 níi
 4 uh
 5 tiriiduun
 6 tiriidii
 7 tifaDHDHal
 8 asawwi
 9 tiriid
 10 naHíbb

Unit 7

Translations of dialogues

Dialogue 1

- Samira** How are the children?
Eleanor Well, thank God.
Samira How many children do you have now?
Eleanor Three, a boy and two girls.
Samira Only three?
Eleanor Yes, and you?
Samira We have seven, three boys and four girls.
Eleanor Good heavens!
Samira How old are the children?
Eleanor The boy is 12 and the elder girl is ten and the young girl is seven years (old).
Samira Where are they?
Eleanor They are staying with my (the) mother, because they have to go to school.
Samira The next time you must bring them to Oman
Eleanor I hope so.

Dialogue 2

- Interviewer** Where are you from?
Mohammad I am from Shuaib, but my family are living in Dubai.
Interviewer How long have you been in Al-Ain?
Mohammad I've been here thirteen months now.
Interviewer Do you like Al-Ain?

Mohammad	Yes, I like it a lot.
Interviewer	And what does your father work at?
Mohammad	My father is a company director in Dubai. My mother doesn't work.
Interviewer	Tell us a little about your family.
Mohammad	I have three brothers and two sisters. My eldest brother is married and works with my father. My brother Karim is an officer in the army, and my youngest brother is still studying. They are not married.
Interviewer	And your sisters?
Mohammad	Both of them are teachers. Nadia lives with us in the house in Dubai. Jamilah is married and lives in Abu Dhabi. Her husband is an official in the Ministry of Information. They have three children (boys).
Interviewer	Thank you Muhammad.
Dialogue 3	
Bill	How long have you been working here in the office with your father Salim?
Salim	A year now.
Bill	Do you live with your father?
Salim	No, we live in a flat near here. Father's house is a long way from the office. Because I am at work from early in the morning, and I some times have to work at night.
Bill	Do you see the family a lot?
Salim	Yes, I go to them every day.
Bill	Do you see them on Fridays?
Salim	Yes, we, I mean the whole family, usually go to visit my grandfather and grandmother on Friday.
Bill	Where do they live?
Salim	In Shuaib. My uncle and aunt live with them in the same house.

Questions

- 1 (a) true (b) false (c) true
- 2 (a) 13 months (b) 5 - 3 brothers, 2 sisters
(c) Nadia and Jamila (d) official in the Ministry of Information

- 3 (a) it is too far from work. (b) on Fridays (c) in Shuaib with the grandparents

Exercises

- 1 (a) student (f.) (b) shopkeeper in Dubai (c) work for a company (d) official in the Ministry of Education (e) teacher (f.) (f) doctor (m.)
- 2 (a) B (b) A (c) A (d) A (e) B (f) A (g) B (h) B
- 3 (a) bait (b) imaaraat (c) jaziirah (d) ikhwaan, akhawaat (e) shakhS, karáasi (f) mudarris, mudarrisaaat (g) ghurfah (h) duwwaarain
- 4 (a) waalidat-uh (b) waalidat-uh (c) ibn akhuu-h (d) ukht-uh (e) zoojat-uh (nuur) (f) ibn :amm-uh (g) ibn-uh (h) jaddat-uh
- 5 min wain intú?
ana min... intú saakiniin fi l-baHrain?
Saar l-i thalaathat ayyaam bass. aish shughul-kum? (e.g.) ana mudarris, ashtaghal fii madrasah
na:am ta:jib-ni kathiir
- 6 (a) 5 am (b) school (c) 1.30 (d) sleep for two hours (e) 12 midnight

Arabic script

- (1) bint (2) thaani (3) ta:baan (4) inta or inti (5) min (6) bait (7) laimoon (8) bi-duun (9) ya:ni (10) laban.

Test yourself

- 1 a-ii (m.), b-iii (m.), c-i (f.), d-iv (f.)
- 2 a akh, b waalidah or umm, c ammah, d walad or ibn, e zoojah
- 3 a awlaad, b bunuuk, c sayyaaraat kabiirah, d muhandisiin kuwaytiyyiin
- 4 c, b, d, a
- 5 Saar l-ii khams sanawaat
- 6 as-saa:ah sab:ah
- 7 as-saa:ah thamaaniyyah
- 8 as-saa:ah thintain
- 9 laa, maa aHibb
- 10 as-saa:ah asharah wa-nuSS

Unit 8

Translations of dialogues

Dialogue 1

- Clerk** Hello. Welcome.
Tony Hello. Do you have a room please?
Clerk For one person or two?
Tony For one, with a bath.
Clerk For how long?
Tony Two nights.
Clerk One minute please . . . Yes, there is a room.
Tony How much is it please?
Clerk 120 riyals with the service (charge).
Tony Fine. I'll take it.
Clerk Fill in this card please. Could you please give me your passport?
Tony Here you are. What time is breakfast please?
Clerk Breakfast is from 6.30 am in the restaurant, or you can order it in the room.
Tony Right.
Clerk Room number 514. This is the key. Come (here) Abdullah. He will help you with the cases.

Dialogue 2

- Youssef** Good morning. I am coming to Kuwait next month and I want to book a room please.
Clerk Right. On what date?
Youssef I want a single room, from Saturday the 8th of February until the 11th of February.
Clerk One moment . . . for four days then?
Youssef Yes, (that's) right.
Clerk Yes, OK. What time will you be arriving, God willing?
Youssef God willing, I will arrive on the 8th in the afternoon. Maybe it will be cold in Kuwait in the winter. Is there heating in the room?
Clerk No problem. All the rooms have heating and air-conditioning and colour TV.

Dialogue 3

- Tony** Hello. This is room 514. There's a problem.
Clerk What's the problem? I hope we'll be able to help you.
Tony I need more towels in the bathroom, and the air-conditioning is out of order; it doesn't work.
Clerk We're very sorry. I'll get in touch with hotel services and they will send someone right away to repair it, and he'll bring towels.
Tony OK. Thanks.

Questions

- (a) single with bath (b) two nights (c) passport
- (3) single (b) on the 8th in the afternoon (c) cold
- (a) not enough towels, air-conditioning not working (b) send someone to bring towels and repair the air-conditioning

Exercises

- (a) have reserved, double room, two nights, with bath (b) have reserved, single room, one night, without bath (c) have not reserved, one double and two singles, one night, with bath (d) have not reserved, two double rooms, three nights, with bath
- (a) iii (b) iii (c) ii
- (a) 22-24 October (b) 13-19 May (c) 10-17 December
- (a) ithnain li khamsah maars (b) tis:ah li sitta:shar yuulyo (c) waaHid li thamaaniyah sabtambar/shahar tisa:ah
- (a) al:-asha s-saa:ah kam? (b) al-maT:am yiftaH as-saa:ah kam? (c) mumkin aTlub al-ghada fi l-ghurfah? (d) wain al-miS:ad?
- SabaaH an-nuur. :ind-ak ghurfah min faDHI-ak?
li shakhS waaHid
bi dushsh
thalaath layaali
al-ghurfah bi kam min faDHI-ak?
al-ghurfah wain min faDHI-ak?
shukran jaziilan. fii amaan Al-laah
- (a) 64 (b) mini bar, colour TV, direct dialling abroad (c) Arab, Italian and Indian (d) 24 hours (e) at the poolside (f) parties and conferences

Arabic script

1F 2G 3D 4J 5I 6A 7C 8H 9E 10B

Test yourself

1i, 2c, 3j, 4g, 5f, 6h, 7a, 8e, 9d, 10b

Unit 9

Translations of dialogues

Dialogue 1

Interviewer

Tell me Muhammad, what are your hobbies?

Mohammad

I have many hobbies, of course. I like to play football. I hope to play in the university team this year. And I play games on my computer.

Interviewer

And do you do anything else?

Mohammad

I play tennis here in Al-Ain . . . and in the summer I go fishing with my brothers and my cousins.

Interviewer

Who taught you fishing?

Mohammad

Our grandfather taught us when we were young.

Interviewer

Farida, what do you do in your spare time? Do you like playing sports?

Farida

No, I don't like sports at all. Here in Al-Ain I read and go to the market with my friends, or I watch television or listen to music.

Interviewer

And what do you do when you go home to Abu Dhabi?

Farida

Er . . . the same thing.

Dialogue 2

Dr Jones

I liked Al-Ain a lot, and the students were very hard-working.

Interviewer

Do you mean that the students in England are lazy?

Dr Jones

Yes . . . some of them.

Interviewer

Dr Jones, can you tell us what you did in Al-Ain?

Dr Jones

The fact is, we did a lot of things. As you know, I am a history teacher, so I visited many forts and museums in the Emirates, and we – that is the family and I – made trips to Jebel Hafit and the sea. I bought a new camera in Dubai, and took a lot of pictures. Sometimes we watched the camel racing in the winter.

Interviewer

And what about sports?

Dr Jones

Yes, I played golf with a colleague, and we went swimming in the sea a lot, and in the holidays the children learnt diving, that is scuba, at Khor Fakkan.

Interviewer

Thank you very much, Dr Jones.

Dialogue 3

Salim

Where are you going in the summer holidays Mike?

Mike

We hope to go to England this year, so that we can visit the family. Last year we went to Oman.

Salim

Oman is a very beautiful country. Had you been there before?

Mike

No, that was the first time. Do you know Oman?

Salim

Yes, we went there two years ago. What did you do in Oman?

Mike

We travelled to Muscat by plane and stayed in a hotel by the sea. Afterwards we rented a car and toured a bit.

Salim

What did you think of it?

Mike

We liked it a lot. We went in the car to Dhofar in the south, and saw turtles and many birds and fishes and coconut palms. We spent the night in a tent in the desert, and the children enjoyed that very much.

Salim

How was the weather?

Mike

The first week the weather was very hot, but the second week it was cold and there was rain and some wind.

Salim

What a pity!

Mike

No, we English are used to wind and rain!

Questions

- (a) goes fishing (b) his brothers and cousins (c) going shopping
- (a) visiting forts and museums (b) golf and swimming (c) the children
- (a) England (b) two years ago (c) sleeping in a tent (d) wet and windy

Notes

- (a) Mountain of the Sun; (b) *the* (al-)

Exercises

- (a) I play squash. (b) I swim. (c) I go (play) bowling. (d) I go to the cinema. (e) I read.
- (a) (i) tiriid tiruuH tiSTaad samak? (ii) tiriid til:ab tanis? (iii) tiriid tiruuH as-suug? (i) na:am ariid aruuH aSTaad samak (ii) na:am ariid aruuH al:ab tanis (iii) laa, maa ariid aruuH as-suug (b) (i) tiriidiin til:abiin tanis? (ii) tiriidiin tishuufiin at-tilifizyoon? (iii) tiriidiin tiruuHiin tisbaHiin? (i) laa, maa ariid al:ab tanis (ii) na:am ariid ashuuf at-tilifizyoon (iii) laa, maa ariid aruuH asbaH
- (a) iv (b) iii (c) v (d) i (e) vi (f) ii
- (a) *False*, cloudy and windy 29° (b) *True* (c) *False*, sun 35° (d) *False*, thunder and lightning 19°
- (a) the programme (b) go on a trip with the children (c) because the weather is nice there (d) a fort and a hot spring (e) have a picnic, and the children could play (f) to take food and cold drinks (g) food and drinks (h) at a shop near the spring
- (a) In the North of the Gulf region there will be rain. Temperature in Kuwait 18°. (b) In Bahrain and Qatar there will be wind, and cloud, temperature 23°. (c) In the Emirates, sunny, 25° and in the Dhofar, sunny, 28°.
- al-akh min wain?
na:am, ruHt as-sanah l-maaDHiyah, ila dalhi
sawwait jawlah w Sawwart kathiir w ruHt as-suug na:am,
laakin min ba:iid. jamiilah jiddan!
hina fi l-khalij, maa fiih bard fi sh-shita

Arabic script

- (a) 10 (b) 8 (c) 9 (d) 1 (e) 2 (f) 6 (g) 3 (h) 4 (i) 5 (j) 7

Test yourself

- | | |
|-------------------|------------------------------------|
| 1 ishtarait | 6 ista'jaru, raaHu |
| 2 la:ab | 7 ruHna, zurna |
| 3 sabaHna | 8 saafaru, sawwu |
| 4 akalt | 9 ya:raf, yissawwii, ga:ad, kharaj |
| 5 naamat, shaafat | 10 raaH, shaafuu |

Unit 10

Translations of dialogues

Dialogue 1

- Bill** Could you tell me something about the history of the Arabs, my friend?
- Suleiman** Of course, what do you want to know?
- Bill** First of all, where are the Arabs originally from?
- Suleiman** The Arabs are originally from the Arabian Peninsula.
- Bill** You mean there were no Arabs in Egypt for instance?
- Suleiman** No, that was after the appearance of Islam.
- Bill** And what happened after the appearance of Islam?
- Suleiman** In the centuries after the appearance of Islam, the Arabs spread as far as China in the East and al-Andalus, that is Spain, in the West.
- Bill** So the Arab soldiers conquered many countries!
- Suleiman** Even now you see that the Arabs have many states.
- Bill** And in these states, all the people speak Arabic?
- Suleiman** Exactly. The Arabic language is the mother tongue of around 150 million of the population of the contemporary world.

Dialogue 2

- Bill** Can you tell me a little about the Islamic religion?
- Suleiman** Certainly. God revealed the Holy Koran to Muhammad the Apostle of God, prayers and peace be upon Him, in the first part of the 7th Century AD.
- Bill** The Prophet Muhammad was from Mecca wasn't he?
- Suleiman** Yes. (He was) born in Mecca, then emigrated to Medinah in the year 622 AD. We call this the Hijrah, and we calculate the date from that year.

Questions

- (a) the Arabian peninsula (b) they spread to other areas (c) 150 million
- (a) Mecca (b) 622 (c) it is the start of the Islamic calendar

Exercises

- (a) aHyaanan (b) Tab:an (c) abadan (d) jiddan (e) daayman (f) bi-suhuulah (g) bi-sur:ah (h) bi-DH-DHabT (i) mathalan (j) fawran
- (a) kuwaitiyyah (b) isbaani (c) :arabi (d) faransiyyah (e) :arab (f) :umaaniyyah (g) wardi (h) :arabiyyah (i) gaTariyyiin (j) banafsaji, burtugaali (k) waTani (1) tijaari
- (a) kunt al:ab goolf (b) kaanat ukhti fariidah tidrus al-lughah l-ingliiziyyah (c) kunna nashtaghal fii sharikah fi l-baHrain (d) kaan al-baaS yooSal as-saa:ah tis:ah (e) kaan biil yitkallam :arabi zain (f) aT-Tullaab kaanu yidrusuun taarikh al:arab (g) kaanat tiruuH as-suug as-saa:ah kam? (h) kunt agra l-qur'aan al-kariim (i) wain kuntu tiskunuun fii abu Dhabi? (j) kunna naruuH l-baHar fi S-Saif
- (a) There is one God. (b) On the Saudi flag. (c) Five: dawn, noon, afternoon, sunset and evening. (d) Direction of Mecca. (e) Two. (f) End of the pilgrimage. (g) Fasting. (h) End of fasting. (i) The Kaabah.

Arabic script

- 1 sayyaarah 2 mudarris 3 saalim 4 khamsah 5 shams 6 sanah
7 sittah 8 mubaashir 9 saakhin 10 sulaimaan

Test yourself

- | | |
|-------------------|--------------------|
| 1 kaan yaakul | 6 kaanuu yil:abuun |
| 2 kunt ashtaghal | 7 kunna naakul |
| 3 kunna nasbaH | 8 kaan yiwaSSil |
| 4 kaanat tisaafir | 9 kaanu yadrusuun |
| 5 kunt tazuur | 10 kunt ashtarii |

Unit 11

Translations of dialogues

Dialogue 1

- chemist** How can I help you?
- Bill** I have a pain in my stomach. Do you have any medicine for this?
- chemist** How long have you had this pain?
- Bill** Since the day before yesterday.
- chemist** Do you have diarrhoea?
- Bill** Yes, a bit.
- chemist** I have these pills here. They're very effective.
- Bill** How many times a day do I have to take them?
- chemist** Take one pill four times a day for five days. Drink a lot of water and don't eat fruit or fried food.
- Bill** Thank you.

Dialogue 2

- Rayyah** How are you?
- Kamil** Actually I'm not very well.
- Rayyah** What's wrong with you?
- Kamil** I've got toothache.
- Rayyah** Since when?
- Kamil** It began two days ago, but last night the pain became severe, and now it hurts (me) a lot.
- Rayyah** Why didn't you tell me? You'll have to go to the dentist's.
- Kamil** (You're) right, but we're very busy in the office at the moment, and I don't have time. I've taken aspirin and I hope it'll be better soon.

Rayyah	You should really go right away before it gets worse and he'll have to take your tooth out!
Kamil	Don't worry yourself. It's nothing.
Rayyah	If it's nothing, why are you looking ill like this? I'll phone the dentist now and make an appointment.
Dialogue 3	
receptionist	Good morning, this is Dr Mahmoud al-Badawi's clinic.
Rayyah	I want to make an appointment for my husband.
receptionist	Let me see ... can he come next Wednesday at 10.15? The doctor is free ...
Rayyah	No, that's no good. He says he is in a lot of pain, and he should really come as soon as possible. Does the doctor not have an appointment free today?
receptionist	That's difficult. The doctor is very busy today. He has a lot of patients. Let's see ... could he come at 6 pm? He might have to wait a little.
Rayyah	OK. I'll tell him. Thanks very much.
receptionist	Not at all. Goodbye.

Questions

- (a) since the day before yesterday (b) four times a day (c) five days (d) drink lots of water and avoid fruit and fried food
- (a) last night (b) they are busy at work/he has no time
- (a) next Wednesday (b) busy/too many patients (c) wait a little

Exercises

- (a) 3 hospital (b) 2 dentist (c) 1 doctor (d) 4 clinic
- (i) c (ii) d (iii) a (iv) b
- (a) :ind-i Suda: (b) ta:awwart fii rijl-i (c) raas-i yiduukh (d) ta:awwart fii iid-i (e) :indi waja: fi l-bal:uum
- (a) cold/3 days/aspirins, bed (b) stomach-ache/yesterday/doctor/medicine (c) headache/fever/2 days/bed (d) sore back/day before yesterday/bed/painkillers (e) swollen eye/this morning/hospital/doctor

- al-Hagiigah ana ta:baanah shwayyah :ind-i Suda: :ind-ich dawa Hagg-uh?
- (a) he hurt his leg (b) brother took him (c) no (d) still painful

Arabic script

- Basrah (al-baSrah) 2. stomach, belly (baTn) 3. Salih (SaaliH)
- Abu Dhabi (abu DHabi) 5. student (Taalib) 6. aeroplane (Tayyaarah) 7. Riyadh (ar-riyaaDH) 8. doctor (Tabiib) 9. Saddam (Saddaam) 10. script (khaTT) 11. airport (maTaar) 12. bus (baaS)

Test yourself

1h, 2g, 3i, 4c, 5j, 6b, 7e, 8a, 9d, 10f

Unit 12

Translations of dialogues

Dialogue 1

Mark	Excuse me, can you help me please?
passer-by	Of course. (With what) How(can) I help you?
Mark	I have to go to a bank.
passer-by	There's a bank there, near.
Mark	It must be a bank with a cash dispenser. What bank should I go to?
passer-by	Ah. Then ... you'll have to go to the Arab Bank in King Khalid Street. It has a cash dispenser which takes bank cards of all kinds.
Mark	Thank you very much.

Dialogue 2

Tony	Hello.
bank clerk	Hello. (Can) I help you with something?
Tony	I want to cash a traveller's cheque.
bank clerk	Certainly, what currency?
Tony	Dollars.

bank clerk How many dollars?
Tony 500. What's the rate for the American dollar today?
bank clerk One moment please. The rate for the American dollar is 3 riyals 75 halala. Your passport please.
Tony Here you are.
bank clerk Thank you . . . sign here please.
Tony There you are.
bank clerk Take this paper to the cashier there please and he will give you the (sum of) money.
Tony Thank you.
Bank clerk You're welcome.

Dialogue 3

Eleanor clerk How much is a postcard to England please?
Eleanor clerk 150 baisa.
Eleanor clerk And a letter?
Eleanor clerk If the weight is less than 10 grammes, 200 baisa, from 10 to 20 grammes 350 baisa.
Eleanor clerk Right. Give me four stamps at 200 baisa, and 12 at 150 please.
Eleanor clerk Four at 200 and 12 at 150. That's 2 riyals 600 baisa altogether.
Eleanor clerk Here you are.
Eleanor clerk 400 baisa change. Here you are.

Dialogue 4

Mike official If you please, I would like a driving licence.
Mike official That's not from here. This is the Ministry of Transport. You have to go to the police, the Traffic Department.
Mike official Where is the Traffic Department?
Mike official Near here, in the same street.
Mike official Thank you.
Mike official Good morning. Do I get a driving licence from here?
Mike official Yes.
Mike official What papers do I need?
Mike official Give (me) your international driving licence, two passport photos and (the sum of) 50 dirhams.

Mike official I have (them) here. There you are
Mike official Sign here please. If you come the day after tomorrow, hopefully the licence will be ready and you can collect it.
Mike official Thank you very much. Goodbye.
Mike official Goodbye.

Questions

- (a) for a bank (b) a cash machine (c) the Arab Bank.
- (a) \$500 (b) his passport (c) sign
- (a) F; (b) T; (c) F
- (a) the police traffic department (b) in the same street as the Ministry of Transport (c) his international licence, two passport photos and the fee (d) in two days

Exercises

- (a) bi-kam ar-risaalah li amriika (b) bi-kam al-buTaagah li-oSTraalya (c) bi-kam aT-Tard li-l-imaaraat (d) bi-kam ar-risaalah li s-sa:uudiyyah
- (a) thalaathah bi-miyyah w khamsiin fils (b) waaHid bi-diinaarain (c) khamsah bi-dirham waaHid (d) :ishriin bi-nuSS riyaal (e) sittah bi-miitain baizah
- (a) si:r (b) kart (c) buTaagah (d) Sarraaf (e) doolaar (f) risaalah (g) Taabi: (h) bank (i) chaik Column A: starliini
- jinaihaat starliini miitain w khamsiin jinaih laish?
 aruuH ayy waaHid min-hum?

Arabic script

A9 B5 C7 D6 E8 F2 G3 H1 I10 J4

Test yourself

- kull
- kull-haa
- kull-hum
- kull
- kull-naa
- wain mumkin aSraf miitain doolaar?
- ariid aSraf chaik siyaaHii
- ar-risaalah ila amriika bi-kam?

- 9 min faDHI-ak a:Tiini khamsa Tawaabi: bi thalaatha daraahim wa Taabi:ain bi khamsiin fils
 10 fiih makiinat Sarf fii haadha l-bank?

Unit 13

Translations of dialogues

Dialogue 1

- Janet taxi driver** Be careful! Please pay attention to the road (There's) no problem.
Janet Slow down. Don't drive fast like this. This is the street . . . no, turn left at the second street.
taxi driver This one here? Are you sure?
Janet Yes. You've passed it! Go back a bit. This is it, in the big white building. Right. Stop here at the door.
taxi driver Is this (here) right?
Janet Yes fine. I'm going to deliver a letter here and I'll come back in five minutes. Stay in the car (and) don't go anywhere.
taxi driver OK. I'll wait here.

Dialogue 2

- Nasir clerk** Is there a bus that goes to Doha please?
clerk No, there isn't a bus that goes direct. You have to change in Hofuf.
Nasir clerk It doesn't matter. How much is the ticket?
clerk Single or return?
Nasir clerk Return.
clerk 125 riyals.
Nasir clerk What time does the bus go?
clerk Eight o'clock exactly.
Nasir clerk Right, and when does it arrive in Doha?
clerk It gets to Hofuf at twelve noon, and the bus to Doha arrives at 7.05 in the evening.

Nasir

Give me a return ticket for tomorrow please.

Dialogue 3

Charlie

We have an idea to rent a car to go outside Dubai in order to see a bit of the country. Do you know a good firm that we can rent from?

Muhammad

Let me think. A lot of people from here have gone to the Capital Company, but some of them have said that their prices are a bit high. Why don't you go to the Gulf Car Company in Al-Wahdah Street? It's a well-known company, and their prices are reasonable.

Charlie

Good, thanks. I'll go and ask them.

car hire man

Good morning.

Charlie

Good morning, we want to rent a car. Which of your cars are suitable for the desert?

car hire man

How many people are you?

Charlie

Four (persons).

car hire man

The best would be a car with 4-wheel drive. I have a Toyota Land Cruiser, an excellent clean car that'll go anywhere.

Charlie

Does it have air-conditioning?

car hire man

Of course. All our cars have air-conditioning

Charlie

And how much is the rental per day?

car hire man

350 dirhams. How long do you want it for?

Charlie

We want it from Thursday morning until Saturday morning if possible.

car hire man

All right, I'll give you a special price. 600 dirhams for the whole period.

Charlie

Is that with insurance?

car hire man

Yes, and 300 km free.

Charlie

Fine. Can you deliver the car to us at the hotel or do we have to come and get it from here?

car hire man

We'll deliver it to the hotel. No problem.

Questions

- 1 (a) too fast (b) at the door (c) in the car
 2 (a) no (b) SR125 (c) 19.05

- 3 (a) to make a trip outside the town in the desert (b) to take a 4-wheel drive/Toyota Land Cruiser (c) yes

Exercises

- 1 (a) How much it costs to rent per day (b) Whether this includes insurance (c) If he can deliver it to the airport
 2 (a) :abbii-ha daizil min faDHI-ak (b) ariid khamasta:shar laitir mumtaaz (c) :aadi bi khamsah riyaalaat
 3 (a) chayyik al-aayil wa l-maay (b) mumkin tiSalliH l-i banchar? (c) mumkin tiSalliH-ha l-yoom?
 4 (a) false (b) true (c) false (d) false (e) true
 5 mashghuul
 maktab al-bariid
 bi-sur:ah
 khallii-k
 siidah
 liff
 waggif
 6 (a) For hire; (b) 1888; (c) Muscat.

Arabic script

- (1) nafar (2) fundug (3) gab(i)l (4) faransa (5) filuus (6) ghurfah
 (7) masgaT (8) rag(a)m (9) dagiigah (10) gariib

Test yourself

- 1 khudh
 2 ta:aali
 3 ijlisu
 4 titkallamii
 5 ti:abbii
 6 SabaaH al-khair. fiih baaS l-abu Dhabi bukraH ba:d aDH-DHuhr?
 7 yooSal abu Dhabi s-saa:ah kam?
 8 yoogaf fii makaan mumkin nashtari fii-h akl?
 9 tadhkarat dhihaab bi-kam?
 10 a:Tii-ni tadhkaratain dhihaab min faDHI-ak

Unit 14

Translations of dialogues

Dialogue 1

Abdel Aziz

Tell me what you think of the apartment

Amal

We liked it a lot. It's much bigger than the apartment we rent now.

Abdel Aziz

Where is it?

Salim

The building is next to our building.

The apartment is on the fourth floor, and there are two more apartments on the same floor

Suad

How many rooms are there in it?

Salim

There's a sitting room, and dining room, and three bedrooms, and a kitchen and two bathrooms and a large hall.

Abdel Aziz

And how much is the rent per month?

Salim

The rent is 3,000 dirhams, that is 500 more than we pay now. And if we take it, we have to pay two months' rent in advance.

Abdel Aziz

So what are you going to do?

Salim

We'll think a little. We don't have to tell the landlord now.

Dialogue 2

Abdel Aziz

Is the apartment furnished?

Salim

No, we'll have to bring our (own) furniture. And we'll possibly have to buy new chairs for the sitting room. It's a big, spacious sitting room, and the chairs we have now are small.

Suad

What kind of electrical appliances are there?

Amal

There's a washing machine, a fridge and a new cooker. The landlord got a new one because the previous tenants broke it.

Salim

There's central air-conditioning, and a fan in the sitting room for the winter.

Abdel Aziz

And where will you put your car?

- Salim** Downstairs. There's a big garage underneath the building and a lift that takes you upstairs to the apartment.
- Dialogue 3
- Amal** This green (stuff) here is excellent material. I like it. How much is it per metre?
- shopkeeper** This is very good. It's 30 dirhams per metre, and 25 for making it up.
- Amal** That's a lot. Can you give me a discount?
- shopkeeper** OK. I'll give you a 20% discount. 24 dirhams and 20 for making it up.
- Amal** Right. We want this pattern. Can you make them like these?
- shopkeeper** Can you leave one with us so that we (can) know its pattern exactly?
- Amal** This is the size I want for the sitting room, and I want this blue cloth for the bedroom. This is cotton, isn't it?
- shopkeeper** Yes, cotton.
- Amal** When will it be ready?
- shopkeeper** Possibly... next Wednesday.
- Amal** Can you make the green curtains first? Saturday maybe?
- shopkeeper** Mmm... that's a bit difficult. All right, we'll finish the green ones for Saturday, and the other ones for Wednesday.
- Amal** Thanks.

Questions

- (a) 4th (b) 8 (c) 6000 Dh
- (a) false (b) false (c) true (d) true
- (a) 20% (b) blue (c) Saturday

Exercises

- (a) beautiful apartment near the sea/living-room/small kitchen/two bed rooms/bathroom (b) villa/living room/dining room/three bedrooms/two bathrooms/big kitchen/garage/large

garden/almond trees/mango trees/lot of flowers. (c) very small apartment/living room/kitchen/one bedroom/bathroom. (d) flat near the middle of town/two bedrooms/living-room/dining-room/bathroom/kitchen.

- (a) askun fii shaggah Saghiirah fii-ha majlis, ghurfat noom waaHidah, maTbakh wa Hammaam (b) askun fii filla fii-ha majlis, ghurfat akil, arba: ghurfat noom, Hammaamain, maTbakh wa garaaj (c) askun fii bait fiih majlis kabiir, ghurfatain noom, Hammaam wa maTbakh
- (a) tilifizyoon, maiz, sittah karaasi (b) thallaajah, SuHuun, Tabbaakhah, kabat (c) baraniiS, kabat, sariir (d) fuwaT (e) SuHuun, maiz, sittah karaasi
- (a) fii-ha kam ghurfah? (b) hiyya mafruushah? (c) al-iijaar kam? (d) aish fii-ha min al-ajhizah l-kahrabaa'iyyah? (e) laazim adfa: kam mugaddam idha akhadht-ha?

5 Wordsearch:

aatháath	kabat
sariir	thallaajah
maiz	ghassalah
kursi	gafshah
zooliyyah	sikkiin
tilifoon	raff
lambah	SaHn

- haadha l-gumaash al-aHmar hina yi:jab-ni. al-mitir bi-kam? haadha kathiir, mumkin ta:Tii-ni takhfiiDH zain, aakhudh-uh mumkin tifaSSil l-i gamiiS mithl haadha? ariid-uh aTwal min haadha shwayyah mumkin tisawwii-h bi-sur:ah? zain, shukran.

Arabic script

- halalah
 - kursi
 - mamlakah
 - mashhuur
 - shah(a)r
 - dukkaan
 - kahraba
 - hawa
 - fikrah
 - tadhkarah
- Transcripts

Test yourself

- 1 jiiib al-kitaab illi ishtarait-uh ams
- 2 haadhi hiya sh-shiggah illi ista'jart-haa
- 3 maa ya:jib-nii l-fustaan illi ishtaraitii-h
- 4 film shuft-uh yoom al-jum:ah
- 5 al-madiinah illi askun fii-haa jamiilah
- 6 shiggah kabiirah fii-haa arba: ghuraf noom
- 7 aSuHuun :ala l-maiz illi fi l-maTbakh
- 8 a:Tiini miftaaH yiftaH haadha l-baab
- 9 al-khayyaaT fi s-suug illi as:aar-uh ma:guulah
- 10 Taalib yigra haadha l-kitaab ya:raf yitkallam :arabi

Transcripts

Unit 1

Exercise 8

Jack	áhlan wa sáhlan
Salma	áhlan biit-k
Jack	kaif Háal-ich?
Salma	al-Hámdu li-l-láah.
Jack	inti min wain? min ábu DHábi?
Salma	laa, ána min :umáan
Jack	áhlan wa sáhlan. aish ísm-ich?
Salma	ísm-i sálma
Jack	áhlan wa sáhlan bii-ch. titkallamiin ingliizi?
Salma	laa, :árabí

Unit 2

Exercise 3

(a) maktab al-bariid min wain? :ala l-yamiin (b) kaif aruuH fundug sii fyuu? ruuH siidah, ba:dain liif yisaar (c) al-miina min wain? aakhir ash-shaari: (d) al-jaami:ah min wain? ba:d ad-duwwaar ath-thaalith (e) maHaTTat al-baaS min wain? khudh thaani shaari: :a l-yamiin, w maHaTTat al-baaS :ala l-yisaar

Unit 3

Exercise 1

(a) dubay thalaathah – al-baHrain Sifir (b) ash-shaarjah sab: ah – al-fujairah ithnain (c) al-kuwait arba:ah – abu DHabi arba:ah (d) jiddah sittah – Taayif ithnain (e) ad-dooHa waaHid – al-hufuuf Sifir

Exercise 2

(a) :ásharah (b) síttah wa thalaathíin (c) miitáin wa sá:b:ah (d) tisa:ah míyyah wa iHdá:shar (e) ithnáin thaláathah wáaHid khámsah árba:ah Sífir (f) thaláathah árba:ah sá:b:ah thamáaniyah Sífir síttah (g) sába:ah tís:ah thamáaniyah wáaHid ithnáin khámsah (h) thamáaniyah sá:b:ah ithnáin síttah síttah Sífir

Unit 4

Exercise 1

(a) as-saa:ah waaHidah wa thilth (b) as-saa:ah sittah wa nuSS wa khams (c) as-saa:ah :asharah wa ruba: (d) as-saa:ah khamsah wa khams (e) as-saa:ah tisa:ah bi-l-lail

Unit 5

Exercise 1

(a) riyaaláin (b) thaláathah riyaaláat w miitáin baizah (c) tis:iin riyáal (d) khams miíyyat baizah (e) sá:b:ah danaaniir

Unit 6

Exercise 1

1 (a) arba:ah shaay (b) ithnain :aSiir burtugaal w waaHid laimoon (c) waaHid Haliib bi-chaklait w waaHid laban (d) thalaathah kóola w waaHid :aSiir burtugaal (e) gahwah bi shikar w Haliib

Exercise 5

(a) aish tiriidúun?
wáaHid sándwíich baiDH w wáaHid gahwah min faDHLak bi-shikar w Halíib ?
Halíib bass
(b) múmkin asáa:id-kum?
thalaathah ayskriim, waaHid :aSiir burtugaal w waaHid laban min faDHL-ak

(c) aish tiriid?

ariid dajáaj má:a baTáaTis w Halíib bi-chaklait min fáDHLak (d) múmkin asáa:id-kum?

árba:ah sámak má:a baTáaTis min fáDHLak má:a l-ásaf. maa :índ-na sámak. :índ-na báargar sámak bass n-zain. árba:ah bargaráat sámak má:a baTáTis... w wáaHid :aSiir tuffáaH, ithnáin (:aSiir) burtugáal w wáaHid gahwah bi-dúun Halíib

(e) SabáaH al-khair. aish tiriidúun ?

SabáaH an-núur. nariid wáaHid bárgar, wa thaláathah bargar bi-l jibin má:a baTáaTis min fáDHLak

tiriidúun tishrabúun shay?

a:Tii-na wáaHid :aSiir burtugáal wa thalaathah koola

Unit 7

Exercise 1

(a) ana Taalibah (b) ana SaaHib dukkaan fii dubay (c) ana ashtaghal fii sharikah (d) ana muwaDHDHaf fii wizaarat at-ta:liim (e) ana mudarrisah (f) ana Tabiib

Exercise 6

:aadatan aguum min an-noom as-saa:ah khamsah w aakul ar-riyuug. al-awlaad laazim yiruuHuun al-madrasah, w zoojat-i tiwaSSal-hum bi-sayyaarat-ha, w ana aruuH al-maktab. adaawim min as-saa:ah sab:ah li-ghaayat as-saa:ah waaHidah w nuSS. :aadatan aruuH al-bait, atghadda w ba:dain anaam saa:atain. as-saa:ah sittah tagriiban naruuh as-suug, aw nazuur al-:aa'ilah, aw nashuuf at-tilifizyoon. :aadatan nanaam as-saa:ah ithna:shar.

Unit 8

Exercise 1

(a) :índ-na Hajz li/ghurfah li shakhSain/lailatain/bi Hammaam (b) :índ-na Hajz/li ghurfah li shakhS waaHid/lailah waaHidah/hi-duun Hammaam (c) maa :índ-na Hajz/li ghurfah li shakhSain

w ghurfatain li shakhS waaHid/lailah waaHidah/bi Hammaam
(d) maa :ind-na Hajz/li ghurfatain li shakhSain/thalaath layaali/
bi Hammaam

Exercise 7

fundug lu' lu' at al-khaliiij fii-h takyiif kaamil. fii-h arba:ah w
sittiin ghurfah w khamsat ajniHah, kull-ha fiih Hammaam wa
miini baar wa tililfizyoon mulawwan w ittiSaal mubaashir
li-l-khaarij bi t-tilifoon. fiih thalaathah maTaa:im min awwal
darajah, bi T-Tabiikh al-:arabi, al-iTaali w al-hindi, w maqha
maftuuHa arba:ah w :ishriin saa:ah. fiih baarain, w mumkin
taakhudh mashruubaat aw sandwiich jamb al-masbaH. fiih
qaa:ah kabiirah li l-iHtifaalaat aw al-mu'tamaraat. fundug
lu'lu'at ash-sharg mathaali li-l-a:maal at-tijaariyyah aw wagt
al-faraagh w yisudd kull Haajaat-kum.

Unit 9

Exercise 1

(a) al:ab skwaash (b) asbaH (c) al:ab booling (d) aruuH
as-siinima (e) agra

Exercise 6

(a) shamaal manTigat al-khaliiij yikuun fiih maTar. darajat
al-Haraarah fi l-kuwait thamanta:shar darajah. (b) fi l-baHrain
w gaTar yikuun fiih hawa w ghuyuum. darajat
al- Haraarah thalaathah w :ishriin. (c) fi l-imaaraat shams,
khamsah w :ishriin darajah, wa fii DHuhaar shams,
thamaaniyah w :ishriin darajah.

Unit 10

Exercise 4

Bill
Suleiman

aish ahamm khaSaa'is ad-diin al-islami?
asaas ad-diin al-islami inn-uh Al-laah aHad, w
muHammad rasuul-uh. niHna naguul: laa ilaaha

illa l-llaah wa muHammadun rasuul Al-laah.
haadha asaas ad-diin al-islami - wa haadhi
l-kalimaat maktuubah fii al-:alam as-sa:uudi.

Bill
Suleiman

w aish ghair?
al-muslim laazim yiSalli khams marraat fi l-yoom:
al-fajr, aDH-DHuhur, al-:aSar, al-maghrif wa
l-:isha ittijaah al-giblah

Bill
Suleiman

aish hiyya l-giblah?
al-giblah hiyya ittijaah makkah al-mukarramah.
w al-:yaad al-islamiyyah aish hiyya?

Bill
Suleiman

ahamm al-:yaad ithnain. :iid al-fiTr, w :iid al-aDHHa.
aywah,sami:t :an :iid al-fiTr. haadha ba:d shahar
ramaDHaan, laa?

Suleiman

bi DH-DHAbT. al-muslimiin laazim yiSuumu Tuul
shahar ramaDHaan, w kalimat 'fiTr' ma:naa-ha
inn al-waaHid yifTur, ya:ni yaakul ba:d as-Soom.

Bill
Suleiman

w aish huwwa l-Hajj?
al-Hajj inn-uh yiruuH makkah l-mukarramah fii
moosam al-Hajj w yizuur al-ka:bah. :iid
al-aDHHa ba:d moosam al-Hajj mubaashiratan.

Unit 11

Exercise 1

(a) ruuH siidah, fawwit ad-duwwaar ath-thaani, wa tishuuf
al-mustashfa :ala l-yamiin (b) :ind ad-duwwaar ath-thaani, liiff
yisaar. Tabiib al-asnaan :a l-yisaar. (c) khudh awwal shaari:
:a l-yamiin, ba:dain awwal shaari: :a l-yisaar, w aT-Tabiib :a
l-yisaar (d) ruuH siidah wa liiff yisaar :ind ad-duwwaar ath-
thaalith. khudh awwal shaari: :a l-yamiin, w al-:iyaadah :a
l-yisaar

Exercise 2

(i) :indak Hubuub Hagg Suda?: (ii) :indak marham Hagg
ladghat naHlah? (iii) ariid dawa Hagg waja: fi l-baTin (iv) fiih
ma:juun al-asnaan?

Exercise 6

Omar	aish Saar l-ak?
Nabil	ta:awwart fii rijli ams. DHarabt-ha :ala Sakhrah
Omar	aish sawwait?
Nabil	akh-i Hasan waddaa-ni l-mustashfa, :ind aT-Tawaar'
Omar	sawwaa l-ak :aks eksrai?
Nabil	na:am, :ala shaan aT-Tabiib kaan yiftakir awwal inn-ha maksuurah. ba:dain gaal laa w HaTT fii-ha ribaaT. laakin hiyya maa zaal tooja:-ni. fi l-awwal maa kunt agdar amshi!
Omar	salamt-ak yaa akhi!

Unit 13

Exercise 1

(a) al-iijáar kam fi l-yoom? (b) haadha bi t-ta'miin? (c) mumkin tiwaddii-aa l-maTaar?

Unit 14

Exercise 1

(a) :ind-i shaggah jamiilah gariibah min al-baHar. fii-ha majlis, maTbakh Saghiiir, ghurfatain maal noom w Hammaam.
(b) naskun fii filla. :ind-na majlis, ghurfat akil, thalaath ghuraf noom, Hammaamain wa maTbakh kabiir. fiih garaaj kamaan. wa fiih Hadiigah kabiirah fii-ha ashjaar maal looz w ambah, wa zuhuur kathiirah. (c) askun fii shaggah Saghiiirah jiddan. fii-ha majlis, maTbakh, ghurfat noom waaHidah wa Hammaam.
(d) :ind-na shaggah gariibah min wasT al-madiinah. :ind-na ghurfatain maal noom, majlis, ghurfat akil wa Hammaam. ma:a maTbakh Tab:an.

Grammar summary

This grammar summary is intended to be used as a quick reference, and does not cover all the language given in the course.

1 Definite and indefinite

In Arabic all nouns and adjectives are either *definite* or *indefinite*.

Definite

(a) A definite noun is specific, and can be

- A proper noun, e.g. *Cairo*, *Mohammed*.
- A pronoun such as *I*, *you*, *they*.
- Preceded by the word *al-* *the*, called the *definite article*.

al- never changes for gender or number, and is always attached to the following noun or adjective, e.g. *al-bait the house*.

(b) *al-* is always the same in *written* Arabic. In pronunciation, if the preceding word ends in a vowel or *-ah*, the *a* of *al-* is omitted, e.g. *al-qáhwah l-ladhiidhah the delicious coffee*.

(c) If the word begins with one of the following Arabic letters:

n	l	DH	T	D	S	sh	s	z	r	dh	d	th	t
---	---	----	---	---	---	----	---	---	---	----	---	----	---

the *l* of the *al-* is omitted in pronunciation, and the following letter is *clearly doubled*.

Pronounced after a consonant	Pronounced after a vowel
ar-rájul	r-rájul <i>the man</i>
ash-shams	sh-shams <i>the sun</i>
an-nuur	n-nuur <i>the light</i>

Indefinite

There is no *indefinite article*, or word for *a*, in Arabic. *bait* in Arabic means *a house*.

2 Nouns

Masculine and feminine

In Arabic, nouns are either masculine or feminine in gender. Nouns ending in *-ah* are usually feminine, but

- A few feminine nouns do not have this ending, e.g. **umm** *mother*.
- A handful of masculine nouns end in *-ah*, e.g. **khalīfah** *Caliph*.

Singular and plural

The plural of Arabic words should be learned at the same time as the singular. The plural in Arabic refers to more than two (2+). For two of anything, see the section on the dual below.

- The *external masculine* plural, used in words for male human beings, is formed by adding *-iin* to the singular noun, e.g. **mudárris** > **mudarrisiin** (m.) *teachers*.
- The *external feminine/neuter* plural, used for the plural of most females and some other nouns, is formed by dropping the *-ah* (if there is one) and adding *-aat* to the singular word, e.g. **mudárrisah** > **mudarrisáat** (f.) *teachers*.
- The *internal plural*, used mainly for males and for things, is formed by altering the internal vowels of the word and/or by adding prefixes or suffixes. Although there is no general relationship between the singular word-shape and the plural word-shape, short words are more likely to take an internal plural, e.g. **gálam** > **aglám** *pens*.
- All plurals of things are regarded in Arabic as *feminine singular* for the purposes of agreement of adjectives and verbs.

Dual

The *dual* must be used when talking about two of anything, and is mostly regular for both nouns and adjectives. It is formed by

adding an external suffix, similar to the masculine external plural, to the majority of nouns and adjectives.

Example	Suffix
bait <i>a house</i>	+ -áin = baitáin <i>two houses</i>

- If a word has the feminine *-ah* ending, this changes to *-at* and the suffix *-áin* is added to it, e.g. **sayyáarah** *a car* becomes **sayyaaratáin** *two cars*.
- Adjectives must take the appropriate masculine or feminine dual ending and also agree with the noun, e.g. **sayyaaratáin kabiiratáin** *two big cars*. It is not usually necessary to insert the word for *two*.

3 Adjectives

Agreement of adjectives

- Adjectives must agree in number, gender and definiteness with the nouns they describe, e.g.:
al-film al-mumtáaz *the excellent film*
jáami:ah jáyyidah *a good university*
- In most cases, the feminine of an adjective is formed by adding *-ah* to the masculine, e.g. **Tawúil**, **Tawúilah** *tall, long*.
- If there is more than one adjective, it is added after the first one, agreeing with it and the noun, e.g.
al-fúndug al-kabiir al-jadiid *the big new hotel*
hint jamúilah Saghúrah *a beautiful young girl*

Adjectives of nationality

Adjectives indicating nationality are formed by adding *-ii/-iyyah* to the name of the country, e.g. **miSr** *Egypt*, **miSrii/miSriyyah** *Egyptian*.

Where the name of a country ends in *-aa* or *-ah*, this is omitted before the ending is added:

briiTáanya *Britain*
briiTáanii/briiTaaníyyah *British*

If the Arabic place name has the word **al-** *the* in front of it, this is omitted from the nationality adjective.

al-úrdun *Jordan* **úrdunii/urduńiyyah** *Jordanian*

Singular and plural adjectives

The plurals of Arabic adjectives follow the same rules as nouns, adding the **-ín** (m.) or the **-áat** (f.) ending, or by means of internal plurals, which are given in the vocabulary with their singulars.

All plurals of things are regarded in Arabic as feminine singular, e.g. **aT-Túrug aT-Tawíilah** *the long roads*

Noun	Adjective
Male human beings	either internal plural if it has one or + -iin .
Female human beings	+ -áat
Things/abstracts	+ -ah (f. sing.)

The primary colours are an exception (see Unit 5).

Word order

The adjective comes after the noun. In sentences with verbs, the verb usually (but not always) comes first.

4 Pronouns

Subject or personal pronouns

Subject pronouns are always definite.

Singular	Plural
ána <i>I</i>	ńiHna <i>we</i>
ínta <i>you</i> (m.)	íntu <i>you</i> (both genders)
ínti <i>you</i> (f.)	
húwwa <i>he</i>	húmma <i>they</i> (both genders)
híyya <i>she</i>	

The English *it* is translated into Arabic as *he* or *she*, depending on the gender of the word to which it refers.

Possessive pronoun suffixes

There is no equivalent in Arabic to English *mine*, *yours* etc. The words *my*, *your*, *his* etc. are expressed in Arabic as *suffixes* joined on to the object which is possessed, e.g. **bait-hum** *their house*, **akh-ii** *my brother*

Singular	Plural
-i <i>my</i>	-na <i>our</i>
-ak <i>your</i> (m.)	-kum <i>your</i> (both genders)
-ich <i>your</i> (f.)	
-uh <i>his</i>	-hum <i>their</i> (both genders)
-ha <i>her</i>	

Object pronoun suffixes

Arabic uses the same pronoun suffixes as the possessive pronoun suffixes, with the exception of *me*, which is **-ni** after verbs.

The suffixes are added to the verb to express the *object* of the sentence, e.g.:

kallámt-uh ams *I spoke to him yesterday*
khabbár-ni náaSír *Nasser told me*

5 Saying to have

There is no verb *to have* in Arabic. Instead, this is expressed by using one of the prepositions **li-** *to/for*, or **:ind(a)** *with* (French *chez*) with a noun or pronoun, e.g. **li-l-wálad gálam** *the boy has a pen*.

The object of the English verb then becomes the subject of the Arabic sentence, e.g. *he has a car* **:ind-uh sayyáarah** (lit. *with him (is) a car*).

6 Verbs

Is/are sentences

There is no Arabic equivalent to the English *is/are*. Instead, a definite concept is simply followed by an indefinite one, e.g. **al-bait kabíir** *the house is big*.

Past tense

All Arabic verbs are derived from a root, usually a three-letter one, e.g. k-t-b which has the meaning of *writing*. Most verbs are formed from either a past or a present *stem*, with a standard set of *prefixes* and/or *suffixes*. The same prefixes and suffixes apply to every Arabic verb.

The Arabic past tense is used when the action of the verb is complete. To form the past tense, suffixes are added to the *he* form of the past stem, e.g. *katab* as follows:

Singular		Plural	
katáb-t	<i>I wrote</i>	katáb-na	<i>we wrote</i>
katáb-t	<i>you (m.) wrote</i>	katáb-tu	<i>you (m. + f.) wrote</i>
katáb-ti	<i>you (f.) wrote</i>		
kátab	<i>he wrote</i>	kátab-u	<i>they (m. + f.) wrote</i>
kátab-at	<i>she wrote</i>		

- If the subject is not stated as a noun, it is usually unnecessary to use a subject pronoun, since the suffix expresses the subject, e.g. *kátabat she wrote*.
- If the subject is a noun:
 - (a) The normal (but not exclusive) word order in Arabic is V-S-O:

1 Verb	2 Subject	3 Object/the rest
---------------	------------------	--------------------------

- (b) Verbs which come at the beginning of the sentence in Arabic can *only* have the *he* or *she* form, i.e. *always singular, never plural*, e.g. *zaar al-wúzara al-buyúut al-jadíidah the ministers visited the new houses*

Verb	Subject
<i>he</i> form for ...	1 One male being
	2 two or more male beings
	3 One object (grammatically m.)

<i>she</i> form for ...	1 One female being
	2 Two or more female beings
	3 One object (grammatically f.)
	4 Two or more of any object

(c) If the sentence has two verbs, the word order is V1-S-O-V2:

1 1st Verb	2 Subject	3 Object (if any)	4 2nd Verb
-------------------	------------------	--------------------------	-------------------

The 1st verb is in the *helshe* form, and the 2nd verb follows the subject and agrees fully with it, e.g. *raaH l-awláad ilaa s-siinamaa wa-shaafuu l-film the boys went to the cinema and watched the film*.

A verb which for any reason comes *after* its subject must agree fully in number and gender.

Saying *was* and *were*

Although there is no verb in Arabic for *is/are*, the verb *kaan* is necessary for *was/were*.

The suffix endings are the same past tense ones used on all Arabic verbs.

Singular		Plural	
kun-t	<i>I was</i>	kún-na	<i>we were</i>
kun-t	<i>you (m.) were</i>	kún-tu	<i>you (m. + f.) were</i>
kún-ti	<i>you (f.) were</i>		
kaan	<i>he was</i>	káan-u	<i>they (m. + f.) were</i>
káan-at	<i>she was</i>		

kaan usually comes first in the sentence, e.g. *kaan wáalid-ii mudárris my father was a teacher*.

Present tense

The Arabic present tense is used if the action of the verb is incomplete. To form the present tense, prefixes – and suffixes for some parts – are added to the present tense stem, e.g. *ktib*, as follows:

Singular		Plural	
á-ktib	<i>I write</i>	ná-ktib	<i>we write</i>
tí-ktib	<i>you (m.) write</i>	ti-ktib-úun	<i>you (m. + f.) write</i>
ti-ktib-iin	<i>you (f.) write</i>		
yí-ktib	<i>he writes, is writing</i>	yi-ktib-úun	<i>they (m. + f.) write</i>
tí-ktib	<i>she writes</i>		

A full explanation of how to find the present stem of the verb is given in the section on Arabic verbs.

Future tense

Spoken Arabic expresses what you will do in the future by placing the prefix **b-** before the present tense verb. Before a consonant, a helping vowel, usually **-i**, is added, and the vowels of the present tense prefixes **t(i)-**, **y(i)-** and **n(a)-** are omitted to smooth out pronunciation.

Present		Future	
a-sáwwi	<i>I do</i>	basáwwi	<i>I shall/will do</i>
ti-sáwwi	<i>you (m.) do</i>	bitsáwwi	<i>you will do</i>
ti-saww-iin	<i>you (f.) do</i>	bitsawwii-n	<i>you will do</i>
yi-sáwwi	<i>he does</i>	biysáwwi	<i>he will do</i>
		(or byisáwwi)	
ti-sáwwi	<i>she does</i>	bitsáwwi	<i>she will do</i>
na-sáwwi	<i>we do</i>	binsáwwi	<i>we will do</i>
ti-sawwúun	<i>you (pl.) do</i>	bitsawwúun	<i>you will do</i>
yi-sawwúun	<i>they do</i>	biysawwúun	<i>they will do</i>
		(or byisawwúun)	

Some dialects use the prefix **Ha-**. This works in the same way.

The past continuous/habitual

The past continuous is formed with **kaan** and the present tense verb. It is used to say what used to happen or what was habitual, e.g. *kunna narúuH s-suuq kull yoom. We used to go to the market every day.*

Arabic verbs

Arabic verbs have a basically simple underlying structure. There are no anomalies as in the English *go, went, or gone*. Arabic verbs all take the same prefixes and suffixes to form their tenses, of which there are only two, present and past (equivalent to English *I go, I am going* etc. and *I went, have gone, etc.*).

In the vocabulary boxes in this book, verbs are given in the 'he-form' of the present tense, followed by that of the past tense. There are two reasons for this. Firstly Arabic does not have what is called an infinitive form of the verb in (English *to go, to eat* etc). Secondly, the 'he-form' of the past is the simplest part of the Arabic verb, having neither prefixes or suffixes. So when you say *to write = kátab, yíktib* the Arabic words actually mean *he wrotel has written, he writes/is writing* (The verb type is given after this in brackets: see below.)

Verb terms

To help describe verbs there are three main terms: prefixes, suffixes and stems. The first two should be self-explanatory, being bits added to the beginning and end of words respectively. The stem of a verb is its main 'core' which comes between the prefixes and suffixes. A rough analogy in English is to say that *like* is the verb stem, occurring also with the suffixes *-d (liked)*, and *-s (likes)*.

Verb agreement

English verbs change very little for the purposes of agreement – in fact in the vast majority of verbs you only add an *-s* or *-es* for the he/she/it form of the present tense (e.g. *I/you/we/they want, but he/she/it wants*). Arabic, like French and German, has different verb parts for each person, and these also sometimes differ for gender.

Because of this, as you will have seen in the units, it is not usually necessary to use the personal pronoun with a verb, i.e. instead of *we went*, the *we*-form of the verb is usually sufficient.

Past tense

Begin with this because it is structurally simpler than the present tense: it only has suffixes attached to a stem. (Some verbs have two stems as described below, but ignore this for now.)

Here is an example, using **kátab** (*wrote*), past stem **katab**. The past tense suffixes for all Arabic verbs are in bold and separated by a space for clarity. Note how the accent (marked) shifts.

Singular			Plural		
<i>I wrote</i>	katáb	t	<i>we wrote</i>	katáb	na
<i>you (masc.) wrote</i>	katáb	t	<i>you (m. and f.) wrote</i>	katáb	tu
<i>you (fem.) wrote</i>	katáb	ti			
<i>he/(it) wrote</i>	kátab		<i>they (m. and f.) wrote</i>	kátab	u
<i>she/(it) wrote</i>	kátab	at			

Notes

- 1 *I* and *you* masc. singular are identical.
- 2 The *he*-form has no suffix in most verb types and consists merely of the stem. The original suffix for this form was *-a*, and it is useful to remember this as it occurs in some types of verbs (see below).
- 3 It is very useful in dealing with certain types of verbs which have more than one stem to note now which suffixes begin with a consonant (*I, we* and *you*), and which with a vowel (*she, they* and also including the dropped *-a* of the *he* form).
- 4 The *they*-ending *-u* is pronounced in some dialects as *-oo* or *-aw*, but you will always be safe if you say *-u*.
- 5 Some conservative dialects preserve the fem. plural *you* and *they*, using the suffixes *-tan* and *-an* respectively. You may hear this, but

for practical purposes it can be ignored. The distinction masc./fem. in *you* singular (*-t/-ti*) is, however, compulsory in all dialects.

Present tense

This consists of a stem (usually different from that of the past tense) with a prefix (all parts) and a suffix (some parts). The present stem is the *he*-form stripped of its prefix (usually *yi-*).

Here again are the forms from **katab** *write*, present stem **ktib**:

Singular				Plural			
<i>I write</i>		á	ktib	<i>we write</i>		ná	ktib
<i>you (masc.) write</i>		tí	ktib	<i>you (masc./fem.) write</i>		ti	ktib úun
<i>you (fem.) write</i>		ti	ktib íin				
<i>he/(it) writes</i>		yí	ktib	<i>they (masc./fem.) write</i>		yi	ktib úun
<i>she/(it) writes</i>		tí	ktib				

Notes

- 1 *You* masc. and *she* are identical.
- 2 Speakers of Gulf Arabic often alter or even omit the vowel of the prefixes *yi-* and *ti-* to what they apparently think goes better with the stem, so you hear *yu-*, *tu-*, *ya-*, *ta-* or *y-*, *t-*. This makes no practical difference, so stick to *yi-* and *ti-* till your ear becomes attuned. (*a-* and *na-* do not change so readily.)
- 3 Some dialects habitually omit the final *n* of the endings *-iin* and *-uun*. Again stick to the forms given till you begin to absorb local speech characteristics.
- 4 As in the past tense above, it is very useful to notice the nature of the suffixes – in this case whether there is one or not. This helps when dealing with verbs which have more than one stem.
- 5 As with the past tense, some ‘old fashioned’ dialects preserve the feminine plural forms. These also end in *-an*: *ti-ktib-an* (*you* fem.) and *yi-ktib-an* (*they* fem.).

Verb types

Arabic verbs can be classified in four types (some with slight variants), except for a couple which can be called irregular. These type classifications depend on how many stems the verb has (varying between two and four*). Here is a brief explanation of how the various types work, so that you can fit newly acquired verbs into their correct category.

*Some verbs use only one stem for both past and present, but these have been regarded as having two 'identical' stems.

Type A

These have two stems, one past and one present. In most cases the prefixes and/or suffixes are merely added to the stem. The example **katab** (*write*) has been given above. Here are a few more. The stems are set in bold the first time they occur, and a few sample parts given:

Past		Present		
Tálab	Taláb-t, Tálab-u etc	yi-Tlub ,	yi-Tlub-úun	<i>request, ask for</i>
:áraf	:aráf-t, :áraf-u	yi-raf ,	yi-raf-úun	<i>know</i>
khábbar	khabbár-t, khábbar-u	yi-khábbir ,	yi-khabbir-úun	<i>tell, inform</i>
sáafar	saafár-t, sáafar-u	yi-sáafir ,	yi-saafir-úun	<i>travel</i>
takállam	takallám-t	yi-takállam		<i>speak</i>
intáDHar	intaDHár-t	yi-ntáDHir		<i>wait, wait for</i>
ishtághal	ishtaghál-t	yi-shtághil		<i>work</i>

These verbs present no difficulties as you only need to add the prefixes or suffixes to the relevant stem.

Type A has two minor variants which occur with a few common verbs. In the present tense of **akal** (*eat*) and **akhadh** (*take*) the vowel of the present prefixes is always elided before the stems **aakul** and **aakhudh**, hence **áakul** (*I eat*), **y-áakul** (*he eats*), **n-áakhudh** (*we take*), **y-aakhudh-úun** (*they take*).

The other variant is with verbs whose past stem begins with w, two common examples being **wáSal** (*arrive*), and **wágaf** (*stop, stand*). Here the w of the present stems (**wSal** and **wgaf**) combines with the prefix vowel to give an oo sound: **y-óoSal** (*he arrives*), and **y-óogaf** (*he stops*). Both of the above variants are simply to assist easy pronunciation.

Type B

These verbs have two distinct past stems and one present stem. The first past stem is used for *he, she* and *they* (see remarks about suffixes in the introduction above) and the second for all other parts. There are two subdivisions of this type: those which change the internal vowel (B1) and those whose second stem adds -ai (B2). Examples:

B1

Past	Present	Meaning
raaH/ruH	ruuH	<i>go</i>

raaH (*he went*), **ráaH-at** (*she went*), **ráaH-u** (*they went*), but **ruH-t** (*I/you masc. went*), **rúH-ti** (*you fem. went*), **rúH-na** (*we went*), etc.

Present tense is always **ruuH**: **yi-rúuH** (*he goes*), **na-rúuH** (*we go* etc.) Four other types of vowelings occur with this class, e.g.:

Past stems	Present stem	
jaab/jib	jiib	<i>bring</i>
naam/nim	naam	<i>sleep</i>
araad/arad	riid	<i>want, wish</i>
iSTaad/iSTad	STaad	<i>hunt</i>

Note: Although some of the vowel changes seem slight, you must preserve the distinctions between long and short.

B2

Habb/Habbai	Hibb	<i>like, love</i>

Hább (*he liked*), **Hább-at** (*she liked*), **Hább-u** (*they liked*), but **Habbái-t** (*I/you masc. liked*), **Habbái-ti** (*you fem. liked*), **Habbái-na** (*we liked*) etc.; present **yi-Híbb** (*he likes*), **ti-Híbb** (*you masc./she likes*), etc.

marr/marrai	murr	passby
-------------	------	--------

Note again the two vowelling possibilities in the present are, **i** or **u**.

Type C

These have two stems each for both past and present.

Past tense: stem 1 for *he, she* and *they* (as B1 above) and stem 2 for all other parts.

In addition, the *he*-form takes a final **-a** (this is the restoration of the original suffix for this part, now dropped in all other types of verb).

Present tense: stem 1 for parts without a suffix, stem 2 for all other parts. (The second present stem is always the same as the first with the final vowel dropped.)

<i>Past</i> saww/sawwai	<i>Present</i> sawwi/saww	<i>do, make</i>
-----------------------------------	-------------------------------------	-----------------

sáwwa (*he did*), **sáww-at** (*she did*), but **sawwái-ti** (*you fem. did*), **sawwái-tu** (*you plur. did*): in the present **yi-sáwwi** (*he does*), **ti-sáwwi** (*you masc./she does*), but **yi-sawwúun** (*they do*) etc.

Some examples:

mash/mashai	mshi/msh	<i>go, walk</i>
gar/garai	gra/gr	<i>read</i>
nas/nasii	nsa/ns	<i>forget</i>
ishtar/shtarai	shtara/shtar	<i>buy</i>
ibtad/ibtadai	btadi/btad	<i>begin</i>

Important note: For the sake of the sense, the *he*-form in the past tense has been given in the vocabularies with the added **-a**. This should be omitted in order to determine the stem.

Irregular verbs

There are only two verbs in Gulf Arabic which can be said to be irregular. These are **ja** or **aja** (*to come*) and **bagha** (*to want, wish for*).

<i>Past Tense</i>			
<i>I came</i>	jiit	<i>we came</i>	jiina
<i>you (masc.) came</i>	jiit	<i>you (plural.) came</i>	jiitu
<i>you (fem.) came</i>	jiiti		
<i>he came</i>	ja	<i>they came</i>	ju
<i>she came</i>	jaat		

<i>Present Tense</i>			
<i>I come</i>	áaji	<i>we come</i>	náaji
<i>you (masc.) come</i>	tíiji	<i>you (plural.) come</i>	tíijúun
<i>you (fem.) come</i>	tíijíin		
<i>he comes</i>	yíiji	<i>they come</i>	yíijúun
<i>she comes</i>	tíiji		

This verb has an irregular imperative from an entirely different root:

ta:áal, ta:áal-i, ta:áal-u

bagha behaves like a normal Type C in the past, but does all sorts of strange things in the present, depending on where you are in the region. It can be summarised as a Type C of two different possible kinds:

Past:

bagh/baghai

Present:

bgha/bgh (e.g. **yíbgha, yibghúun**)

b(b)i/b(b) (e.g. **yíb(b)i, yib(b)úun**)

To avoid difficulties you can always use the synonym **aráad, yiríid**, as has been done in this book.

Glossary of language terms

Although this book is written in as plain language as possible, some linguistic or grammatical terms have been used. It is worthwhile becoming used to these as they are often a quick way to express a complex idea. Here is a list of the main ones used, with particular reference to their use in relation to Arabic.

Accent	See stress .
Adjectives	Adjectives describe a person or thing, e.g. A <i>huge</i> building, I am <i>tired</i> . In Arabic these have the same properties as the noun (q.v.) and must agree with it in number, gender and definiteness. So: if a noun is feminine, its adjective must be feminine; if a noun is definite, its adjective must be definite, if a noun is plural its adjective must be plural.
Adverb	Words which describe how (or sometimes when or where) the action of a verb occurs or has occurred. In English they usually end in <i>-ly</i> (He ran <i>quickly</i> up the stairs.). In Arabic they either end in <i>-an</i> or are phrases such as <i>with speed</i> , i.e. <i>quickly</i> .
Agreement	This grammatical term for describing changes in one word caused by another mainly applies to nouns + adjectives (q. v.), and verbs which must agree with their subjects (feminine subject requires feminine verb etc.).
Article	This refers to <i>a</i> or <i>an</i> (the <i>indefinite</i> article), and <i>the</i> (the <i>definite</i> article). Arabic does not have an indefinite article. To say <i>a book</i> you just say <i>book</i> , but it does have a definite article <i>al-</i> which is attached or prefixed to the following word.
Cardinal	See number .
Comparative	An adjective which compares two things. In English these end in <i>-er</i> or are preceded by the

Conjunctions	word <i>more</i> (she is <i>brighter/more intelligent</i> than him). See also superlatives . Words which join parts of sentences, such as <i>and</i> , <i>or</i> , <i>but</i> etc.
Consonant	The non-vowel letters: b, d, g, dh, DH etc. in this book.
Demonstrative	See pronoun .
Dual	A special form in Arabic to refer to <i>two</i> of anything, as opposed to one (singular) and more than two (plural).
Elision	Where part of a word, usually a vowel, is omitted to smooth speech.
Gender	Masculine or feminine. See noun and adjective .
Hidden 't'	The feminine ending of a noun <i>-ah</i> , which in certain contexts changes to <i>-at</i> .
Imperative	The form of a verb used when telling someone to do something.
Interrogative	Question words. See also pronoun .
Negatives	These are words used to negate or deny something: <i>no, not</i> etc. Arabic uses different words with nouns/adjectives and verbs.
Noun	A noun is the name of a person, thing, place or abstract concept, e.g. Hassan, boy, book, Dubai, economics. In Arabic a noun has three important properties: 1. It is either masculine or feminine. (There is no 'neuter', or <i>it</i> , which you use in English to describe inanimate objects or abstracts etc.) This is called gender (q.v.). 2. It is either singular (one only), dual (two only) or plural (more than two). English does not have a dual. This is called number . 3. It is either definite or indefinite. This is simply logical: the word refers either to an unspecified person, thing etc. or to a specific one. In English, indefinites are often preceded by <i>a</i> or <i>an</i> (the indefinite article), but this is omitted in Arabic. Definites often have <i>the, this, that</i> etc., or <i>his,</i>

Glossary of language terms

Although this book is written in as plain language as possible, some linguistic or grammatical terms have been used. It is worthwhile becoming used to these as they are often a quick way to express a complex idea. Here is a list of the main ones used, with particular reference to their use in relation to Arabic.

Accent	See stress .
Adjectives	Adjectives describe a person or thing, e.g. A <i>huge</i> building, I am <i>tired</i> . In Arabic these have the same properties as the noun (q.v.) and must agree with it in number, gender and definiteness. So: if a noun is feminine, its adjective must be feminine; if a noun is definite, its adjective must be definite, if a noun is plural its adjective must be plural.
Adverb	Words which describe how (or sometimes when or where) the action of a verb occurs or has occurred. In English they usually end in <i>-ly</i> (He ran <i>quickly</i> up the stairs.). In Arabic they either end in <i>-an</i> or are phrases such as <i>with speed</i> , i.e. <i>quickly</i> .
Agreement	This grammatical term for describing changes in one word caused by another mainly applies to nouns + adjectives (q. v.), and verbs which must agree with their subjects (feminine subject requires feminine verb etc.).
Article	This refers to <i>a</i> or <i>an</i> (the <i>indefinite</i> article), and <i>the</i> (the <i>definite</i> article). Arabic does not have an indefinite article. To say <i>a book</i> you just say <i>book</i> , but it does have a definite article <i>al-</i> which is attached or prefixed to the following word.
Cardinal	See number .
Comparative	An adjective which compares two things. In English these end in <i>-er</i> or are preceded by the

Conjunctions	word <i>more</i> (she is <i>brighter/more intelligent</i> than him). See also superlatives . Words which join parts of sentences, such as <i>and</i> , <i>or</i> , <i>but</i> etc.
Consonant	The non-vowel letters: b, d, g, dh, DH etc. in this book.
Demonstrative Dual	See pronoun . A special form in Arabic to refer to <i>two</i> of anything, as opposed to one (singular) and more than two (plural).
Elision	Where part of a word, usually a vowel, is omitted to smooth speech.
Gender	Masculine or feminine. See noun and adjective .
Hidden 't'	The feminine ending of a noun <i>-ah</i> , which in certain contexts changes to <i>-at</i> .
Imperative	The form of a verb used when telling someone to do something.
Interrogative Negatives	Question words. See also pronoun . These are words used to negate or deny something: <i>no</i> , <i>not</i> etc. Arabic uses different words with nouns/adjectives and verbs.
Noun	A noun is the name of a person, thing, place or abstract concept, e.g. Hassan, boy, book, Dubai, economics. In Arabic a noun has three important properties: 1. It is either masculine or feminine. (There is no 'neuter', or <i>it</i> , which you use in English to describe inanimate objects or abstracts etc.) This is called gender (q.v.). 2. It is either singular (one only), dual (two only) or plural (more than two). English does not have a dual. This is called number . 3. It is either definite or indefinite. This is simply logical: the word refers either to an unspecified person, thing etc. or to a specific one. In English, indefinites are often preceded by <i>a</i> or <i>an</i> (the indefinite article), but this is omitted in Arabic. Definites often have <i>the</i> , <i>this</i> , <i>that</i> etc., or <i>his</i> ,

	<i>her</i> . Names of people, places (words with capital letters in English) are automatically definite, e.g. Ahmed, Bahrain and so on. The concept of definiteness is very important in Arabic as it affects other words in the sentence. (Note: pronouns (q. v.) are always definite.)
Number	See noun and adjective .
Numbers	The numbers or numerals divide into two sets, <i>cardinal</i> (one, two, three, etc.) and <i>ordinal</i> (first, second, third).
Object	The object of a verb is the thing or person which the action of the verb affects. It contrasts with the subject (q.v.), e.g. <i>the dog</i> (subject) <i>chased the cat</i> (object).
Ordinal	See number .
Phrase	A phrase is a part of a sentence, not necessarily making sense on its own, but a useful term in describing features of a language.
Pitch	Pitch describes whether a word or part of a word is higher on the musical scale than another. It is mainly important in questions which, in Gulf Arabic, are often identical to statements except that the pitch rises towards the end of the phrase or sentence.
Plural	In Arabic more than two. See noun and adjective .
Possessive	When something owns or possesses something else. In English you either add <i>s</i> to the noun (Charlie's aunt), or use a possessive pronoun: <i>my</i> father, or the word <i>of</i> , e.g. the manager of the company.
Prefix	A short part of a word added to the beginning of a noun or verb. In English for example you have <i>un-</i> , <i>dis-</i> or <i>pre-</i> . In Arabic prefixes alter the meaning of a verb.
Prepositions	These are (usually) short words relating a noun to its place in space or time, e.g. English <i>in</i> , <i>on</i> etc. In Arabic a few common prepositions are prefixed to the word which follows them.
Pronouns	Short words used as substitutes for nouns (q.v.). The most important is the personal pronoun. For example the English pronoun <i>he</i> has

three distinct forms, *he*, *him* and *his* (in other pronouns such as *you* some of these forms have fused together). It will come naturally to you to say *he isn't at home* (not *him* or *his*), and also *I saw him* and *it is his house*. The first of these (*he*) is called a subject pronoun and these pronouns have equivalent words in Arabic. The other two (*him*, known as an object pronoun, and *his*, known as a possessive pronoun) share the same form in Arabic, and are not separate words, but endings or suffixes attached to their nouns. The personal pronouns are the most important, but there are other kinds such as demonstratives (*this*, *that* etc.), relatives (*who*, *which*, *that* in phrases like *the one that I like best*) and interrogatives *who*, *what* and *which* when used in questions like *who goes there?*

Relatives Sentence

See **pronoun**.
A sentence is a complete utterance making sense on its own, e.g. *he is in his room*. In English these must contain a verb (q.v.), but sentences with *is* and *are* do not have a verb in Arabic. For instance, the sentence above would be in Arabic: *he in his room*. See **verb**.

Stem Stress

Also called **accent**. This is the part or syllable of a word which is most emphasised, e.g. the first *o* in English *photograph*. In the first few units of this book, stress has been marked with the acute accent: -á, ú, etc., and it is also given in the vocabularies and glossaries.

Subject

The subject of a sentence is the person or thing which is carrying out the action. It can be a noun, pronoun or a phrase as in: *Bill* lives in Abu Dhabi, *he* works for the oil company, *the best picture* will win the prize.

Suffix

An ending attached to a word which alters its meaning.

Superlative

Applied to adjectives when they express the highest level of a quality. In English they end

in *-est* or are preceded by *most* (*he is the brightest/most intelligent boy in the class*). See also comparatives.

Tense
Verb

See verb.

A 'doing' word expressing an action (*he reads the newspaper every day*). Its most important features are:

1. *Tense*. This tells us when the action is/was performed. In Arabic there are only two tenses, present (*I go, am going*) and past (*I went, I have gone*). The future (*I shall go*) is the same as the present with a special prefix.

2. *Inflections*. This means that the prefix and/or suffix of the verb changes according to who is doing the action. In English, most verbs in, for instance, the present tense, undergo only one change: *I go, you go, they go* etc., but *helshelit goes*. In Arabic there is a different verb part for each person, singular and plural. The part of the verb which remains constant in the middle of all the prefixes and suffixes is called the 'stem'. This is an important concept in learning Arabic, and may be compared to the *go-* part of *goes* in the example above.

Note: a) that the verb *is/are* is omitted in Arabic, and b) the English verb *to have* is not a real verb in Arabic, but a combination of a *preposition* and a *pronoun* (q.v.).

Vowels

The sounds equivalent to *a, e, i, o, u* or combinations of them in English. Gulf Arabic has *a, i, u* and their long equivalents *aa, ii, uu*, and also *ai* occasionally *o* and *oo*. See also consonant.

Word order

In Arabic adjectives usually follow their nouns, e.g. *good man* becomes *man good*. Possessive pronouns are also suffixed to their nouns: *my book* becomes *book-my*.

Arabic-English glossary

Note: Nouns are given in the singular followed by plural in brackets, with *al-* included only in place names and other words where it is always present. The feminine and plural of adjectives is given only if they are irregular (i.e. not *-ah, -iin*). Verbs are given in the *he-*form of the past tense followed by the *he-*form of the present tense and the verb group shown in brackets. The order of entries does not take account of the symbols : and ', or distinguish between capital and small letters.

a:máal (pl.)	<i>business affairs</i>
á:Ta, yá:Ti (C)	<i>to give</i>
:áa'ilah (-aat)	<i>family</i>
:áadatan	<i>usually, generally</i>
:áadi	<i>regular (petrol)</i>
áakhir	<i>last, end</i>
:áalam	<i>world</i>
:aam (a:wáam)	<i>year</i>
:áaSifah (:awáaSif)	<i>storm</i>
:áASimah (:awáASim)	<i>capital (city)</i>
áayil	<i>(engine) oil</i>
ab	<i>father</i>
ábadan	<i>never</i>
:ábba. yi:ábbi (C)	<i>to fill</i>
:abd (:ibáad)	<i>worshipper</i>
abriil	<i>April</i>
ábu DHábi	<i>Abu Dhabi</i>
ábyaDH, f. báidHa (biidH)	<i>white</i>
:áfwan	<i>you're welcome, don't mention it; excuse me</i>
agáll	<i>less, least</i>
aghúsTos	<i>August</i>
:ágrab (:agáarib)	<i>scorpion</i>
ágrab	<i>nearer, nearest</i>
ágSar	<i>shorter, shortest</i>

áh(a)l *family, kinsfolk*
 ahámm *more/most important*
 áhlan wa sáhlan *welcome, hello*
 áHmar (f.) Hámra (Húmur) *red*
 áHsan *better, best*
 áhwan *better (from an illness)*
 áHyáanan *sometimes*
 :ain (:uyúun) *spring; eye*
 aish *what*
 aishgádd *how long, how much, what amount?*
 :ájab, yí:jab (A) *to impress, please (in the idiom to like)*
 ájnabi (ajáanib) *foreign, foreigner*
 ákal, yáakul (A) *eat*
 ák(i)l *food*
 ákbar *bigger, biggest*
 akh (ikhwáan/ ikhwah) *brother*
 ákhadh, yáakhudh (A) *to take*
 akhbáar (pl.) *news*
 ákhDHar f. kháDHra (khúDHur) *green*
 akiid *certain(ly)*
 :aks eksrai *X-ray photograph*
 al-'áan *now*
 al-ándalus *Arab Spain*
 al-baHráin *Bahrain*
 al-gharb *the West*
 al-gíblah *the direction of prayer, facing Mecca*
 al-Hagúigah *really, actually*
 al-Hámdu li-l-láah *praise (be) to God*
 al-Hiin *now*
 al-híjrah *the Hegirah*
 al-imaaráat al-:arabíyyah al-muttáHidah *the UAE*
 al-isláam *Islam*
 al-ká:bah *the Kaaba (holy shrine in Mecca)*
 al-khalíij (al-:árabí) *the (Arabian) Gulf*
 al-kuwáit *Kuwait*
 Al-láah *God, Allah*
 al-lail, bi l-lail *night, at night*
 al-lúghah al-:arabíyyah *Arabic, the Arabic language*

al-madíinah *Medinah*
 al-mámlakah l-muttáHidah *the United Kingdom*
 al-mukárramah *Holy (adjective used after Mecca)*
 al-munáwwarah *resplendent, illuminated (used after Medinah)*
 al-qáahirah *Cairo*
 al-qur'áan *the Koran*
 al-yáman *Yemen*
 al-yóom *today*
 :ála *on*
 :ála shaan *because, in order to*
 :álam (a:láam) *flag*
 :alf (aaláaf) *thousand*
 :állam, yi:állim (A) *to teach*
 almáani (almáan) *German*
 ám(i)s *yesterday*
 ámbah, hámbah *mango*
 :amm (paternal) *uncle*
 :ámmah (paternal) *aunt*
 amríika *America*
 :an *of, about*
 ána *I*
 ananáas *pineapple*
 ánzal, yúnzil (A) *to reveal, send down (literary usage)*
 ar-riyáaDH *Riyadh*
 aráad, yirúid (B1) *to want, wish*
 :árabí (:árab) *Arabic, Arab*
 :áraf yí:raf (A) *to know*
 árba:ah *four*
 arba:atá:shar *14*
 arba:iin *40*
 árkhah *cheaper, cheapest*
 áS(a)l (uSúul) *origin*
 :áS(i)r *late afternoon*
 as-sa:udíyyah *Saudi Arabia*
 aS-Siin *China*
 aS-Súb(a)H *(in the) morning, forenoon*
 asáas (úsus) *basis, fundamental belief*
 asbríin *aspirin*

áSfar (f.) Sáfra (Súfur) *yellow*
 áSghar *smaller, smallest*
 ash-sháarjah *Sharjah*
 ash-sharg al-áwsaT *the Middle East*
 :ásha *dinner, supper*
 :ásharah *ten*
 :aSiir *juice*
 ásra: *faster, fastest*
 áswad (f.) sóoda (suud) *black*
 aatháath (pl.) *furniture*
 :aTsháan *thirsty*
 áTwal *longer, longest*
 aw *or*
 awáa'il *the first, early part of*
 áwHash *worse, worst*
 áwwal *first*
 áwwal ams *the day before yesterday*
 áwwalan *firstly*
 áyDHan *also*
 ayskriim *ice cream*
 áywa *yes*
 ayy *which, any*
 ázrag (f.) zárga (zurg) *blue*

 ba:(a)dáin *afterwards, later, then*
 ba:d aDH-Dhúh(u)r *(in the) afternoon*
 ba:d *after*
 ba:d búkrah *the day after tomorrow*
 ba:DH *some*
 ba:iid (:an) *far (from)*
 baab (biibáan) *door, gate*
 báagi *change, remainder of something*
 báakir/búkrah *tomorrow*
 baal *attention*
 báarid *cold (of things)*
 baaS (-aat) *bus*
 baat, yibáat (B1) *to spend the night*
 baddáalah *telephone exchange*

bádlah (-aat) *suit (clothes)*
 bádri *early*
 báH(a)r *sea, beach*
 báíDHah (baiDH) *egg*
 bait (buyúut) *house*
 báitri (bayáatri) *battery*
 baizáat *money (Oman)*
 bálad (biláad) *town, village, country*
 banáfsaji *violet (colour)*
 bánchar *puncture*
 bándar *town on the coast, port*
 bánjari (banáajri) *bracelet*
 bank (bunúuk) *bank*
 bánnad, yibánnid (A) *to close*
 banziin *petrol*
 bard *cold (noun)*
 bardáan *cold (of a person)*
 bárg *lightning*
 bárgar bi l-jíbin *cheeseburger*
 bárgar sámak *fishburger*
 barnáamij (baráamij) *programme, plan of activity*
 barnúuS (baraniis) *blanket*
 barr *land, desert*
 bass *only, just, enough, that's all*
 báT(i)n *stomach*
 baTáaTis *chips, potatoes*
 báTTah (baTT) *duck*
 bi DH-DHábT *exactly*
 bi- *with, by, in*
 bi-dúun *without*
 bi-kháir *well*
 biláad (buldáan) (f.) *country*
 bint (banáat) *girl, daughter*
 biráik *brakes*
 booling *bowling*
 burtugáal *orange*
 burtugáli *orange (colour)*
 bustáan *garden, park*

buTáagah (-aat) *card, postcard*
buTáagah shakhSíyyah *identity card*

chaik (-aat) *cheque*
chaik siyáaHi *traveller's cheque*
chakláit *chocolate*
cháyyak, yicháyyik (A) *to check*
chingáal (chanagiil) *fork*

dáa'irah (dawáayir) *(government) department*
dáawam, yidáawim (A) *to keep office hours*
dáayman *always,*
dábal *4-wheel drive*
dáfa:, yídfa: (A) *to pay*
dagúgah (dagáayig) *minute*
dáirah *Deira (the commercial quarter of Dubai)*
dáizil *diesel*
dajáajah (dajáaj) *chicken*
dállah (dlaal) *coffee pot*
darájah (-aat) *degree, class, step*
dáras, yídrus (A) *to study*
dárras, yidárris (A) *to teach*
dáwa (adwiyah) *medicine*
dáwlah (dúwal) *state, country, nation*
dáwli *international*
DHáabiT (DHubbáaT) *officer*
DHáh(a)r *back*
dháhab *gold*
DHaif (DHuyúuf) *guest*
DHárab, yíDHrab (A) *to hit, strike, knock*
DHarb *multiplication*
dhiháab *going, single (ticket)*
dhiháab w iyáab *return (ticket)*
DHúh(u)r *noon*
DHuhúur *emergence, appearance*
diin (adyáan) *religion*
disámbar *December*

doktóor (dakáatrah) *doctor*
dooláar (-aat) *dollar*
door (adwáar) *floor, storey*
dráiwil (draiwiliyya) *driver*
dubáy *Dubai*
dukkáan (dakaakiin) *(small) shop*
duwwáar (-áat) *roundabout*

fa *so*
fáaDHi *free, empty*
fáakihah (fawáakih) *fruit*
fádDHDHah *silver*
fádDHDHal, yifádDHDHil (A) *to prefer*
fáj(i)r *dawn*
fákkar, yifákkir (A) *to think*
faláafil *fried bean patties*
fariig (furúug) *team*
fáSSal, yifáSSil (A) *to make, fashion, tailor*
fátaH, yíftaH (A) *to open, conquer*
fáTar, yíTur (A) *to break a fast; have breakfast*
fáwran *immediately, right now*
fáwwat, yifáwwit (A) *to pass, go past (a place)*
fibráayir *February*
fii amáan Al-láah: *goodbye*
fii amáan al-kariim *goodbye (reply to above)*
fii *in*
fiih *there is*
fikrah (afkáar) *thought, idea*
fíl(i)m (afláam) *film*
filfil *pepper*
filúus *money*
finjáan (fanajiin) *(small coffee) cup*
foog *above, upstairs*
fúndug (fanáadig) *hotel*
fustáan *(lady's) dress*
fuTúur *breakfast*
fúuTah (fúwaT) *towel*

gá:ad, yíg:ad (A) *to sit, stay, remain*
 gáa:ah *hall, large room*
 gáadim *next, coming*
 gaal yigúul (B1) *to say*
 gaam, yigúum (B1) *to rise, get up (from sleep)*
 gaas, yigiis (B1) *to measure*
 gáb(i)l *before*
 gabiilah (gabáayil) *tribe*
 gádar, yígdar (A) *to be able*
 gadiim *old*
 gáfshah (gfáash) *spoon*
 gáhwah *coffee*
 gála:, yígla: (A) *pull out*
 gálam (agláam) *pen*
 galóon (-aat) *gallon*
 gamiis (gumSáan) *shirt*
 gára, yígra (C) *to read*
 garáaj *garage*
 gariib min *near (to)*
 garn (gurúun) *century*
 gaSiir *short*
 gáTar *Qatar*
 gháali *expensive*
 gháda *lunch*
 gháilam *turtles (in Oman; elsewhere Hámas)*
 ghaim or ghuyúum *clouds*
 ghair *other than, else*
 ghassáalah (-aat) *washing machine*
 ghooS *diving*
 ghraam (-aat) *gram*
 ghúrfah (ghúraf) *room*
 ghúrfat (ghúraf) ákil *dining room*
 ghúrfat (ghúraf) noom *bedroom*
 giláas (glaasáat) *(drinking) glass*
 giTáar *train*
 goolf/lá:bat al-goolf *golf*
 gumáash (ágmisha) *cloth, material*
 gúTun *cotton*

háadha, (f.) háadhi (haadhóol) *this, these*
 haadháak, (f.) haadhúik (haadhooláak) *that, those*
 háadi *quiet, peaceful*
 Háajah (-aat) *need (noun).*
 háajar, yiháajir (A) *to emigrate*
 Háal (aHwáal) *condition*
 Haarr *hot*
 Háasis bi- *feeling (e.g. illness)*
 Habb, yiHíbb (B2) *to like, love*
 Hábbah (Hubúub) *pill*
 Had *someone*
 Hadiigah (Hadáayig) *garden, park*
 Hagg *for, belonging to*
 Hájaz, yíHjiz (A) *to book, reserve*
 Hajj *pilgrimage; pilgrim*
 Hálag *earrings*
 Haliib *milk*
 hámbargar (-aat) *hamburger*
 Hammáam (-aat) *bathroom*
 Haráami (-iyya) *thief*
 Haráarah *heat, temperature*
 Harr *heat*
 Hásab, yíHsab (A) *to reckon, count, calculate*
 HáSSal, yiHáSSil (A) *to get, find, obtain*
 HaTT, yiHúTT (B2) *to put, place*
 Háтта *until, so that, in order to*
 háwa *wind, air*
 Hawáli *about, approximately*
 hawáayah (-aat) *interest, hobby*
 Háwwal, yiHáwwil (A) *to change, exchange*
 Hayyáa-k Al-láah *goodbye*
 Hiin *when, at the time when*
 Hilw *sweet, pleasant, pretty*
 hína/híni *here*
 hináak *there*
 Hisn *fort*
 híyya *she, it*
 Húmma *fever*

húmma *they*
 Húrmah (Harīm) *woman*
 húwwa *he, it*

 ibtáda, yibtádi (C) *to begin, start*
 idha, idha kaan *if*
 idhan *so, therefore*
 iftákar, yiftákir (A) *to think, consider, be of the opinion that*
 iHdá:shar *eleven*
 iHtáaj, yiHtáaj (B1) *ila to need*
 iHtifáal (-aat) *celebration, party, function*
 iHtimáal (lit. possibility) *possible, perhaps*
 :iid (a:yáad) *Eid, religious festival*
 iid (dual iidáin) *hand, arm*
 ijáazah (-aat) *holiday*
 iksbráis *express*
 illa *except for, less*
 illi *who/which, the one who/which*
 :imáarah (-aat) *apartment building, block*
 imáarah (-áat) *emirate*
 in shaa' Al-láah *if God wills*
 inbásaT, yinbásiT min (A) *to enjoy*
 :ind *at, with (used for to have)*
 :ind-ma *when, while*
 ingiltérra *England*
 inglúizi (pl. inglíiz) *English*
 inn *that (conjunction)*
 ínta/inti/intu *you (m., f. and pl.)*
 intáDHar, yintáDHir (A) *to wait*
 intáshar, yintáshir (A) *to spread, spread out*
 ís(i)m (asáami) *name*
 isbáanya *Spain*
 :isha *evening prayer*
 isháal (pronounced is-háal) *diarrhoea*
 :ishrín *20*
 ishtághal, yishtághal (A) *to work*
 ishtára, yishtári (C) *to buy*
 ískutlánda *Scotland*

isláami *Islamic*
 istá'jar, yistá'jir (A) *to hire, rent*
 iSTáad, yiSTáad (B1)(sámak) *to hunt (fish), to fish*
 istáma:, yistámi: íla (A) *to listen to*
 istaráaH, yistaríiH (B1) *to rest, relax, take one's ease*
 ithná:shar *12*
 ithnáin, (f.) thintáin *two*
 ittáSal, yittáSil (A) fii *to phone, contact*
 ittijáah *direction, facing, in the direction of*
 :iyáadah (-aat) *clinic*

 jaa yíiji (C irreg.) *to come*
 jaab, yijíib (B1) *to bring, get, collect, obtain*
 jáahil (jihháal) *child*
 jáahiz *ready*
 jáami: (jawáami:) (big) *mosque*
 jáami:ah (-aat) *university*
 jábal (jibáal) *mountain, desert*
 jadd (ajdáad) *grandfather (ancestors)*
 jáddah *grandmother*
 jádiid (júdad, jidáad) *new*
 jaish (juyúush) *army*
 jámal (jimáal) *camel*
 jamb *next to*
 jamíil *beautiful*
 jánTah *suitcase (alternative to shánTah)*
 janúub *south*
 jawáaz as-sáfar *passport*
 jáwlah (-aat) *tour*
 jaww *air, atmosphere, weather*
 jáyyid *good (quality)*
 jázar *carrots*
 jazíilan *copious, very much (used only after shúkran thanks)*
 jazíirah (jazáayir/júzur) *island*
 jazíirat al-: árab *the Arabian peninsula*
 jíb(i)n *cheese*
 jíddan *very*
 jiháaz (ájhizah) *appliance, piece of equipment*

Glossary of language terms

Although this book is written in as plain language as possible, some linguistic or grammatical terms have been used. It is worthwhile becoming used to these as they are often a quick way to express a complex idea. Here is a list of the main ones used, with particular reference to their use in relation to Arabic.

Accent	See stress.
Adjectives	Adjectives describe a person or thing, e.g. <i>A huge building, I am tired</i> . In Arabic these have the same properties as the noun (q.v.) and must agree with it in number, gender and definiteness. So: if a noun is feminine, its adjective must be feminine; if a noun is definite, its adjective must be definite, if a noun is plural its adjective must be plural.
Adverb	Words which describe how (or sometimes when or where) the action of a verb occurs or has occurred. In English they usually end in <i>-ly</i> (He ran <i>quickly</i> up the stairs.). In Arabic they either end in <i>-an</i> or are phrases such as <i>with speed</i> , i.e. <i>quickly</i> .
Agreement	This grammatical term for describing changes in one word caused by another mainly applies to nouns + adjectives (q. v.), and verbs which must agree with their subjects (feminine subject requires feminine verb etc.).
Article	This refers to <i>a</i> or <i>an</i> (the <i>indefinite</i> article), and <i>the</i> (the <i>definite</i> article). Arabic does not have an indefinite article. To say <i>a book</i> you just say <i>book</i> , but it does have a definite article <i>al-</i> which is attached or prefixed to the following word.
Cardinal	See number.
Comparative	An adjective which compares two things. In English these end in <i>-er</i> or are preceded by the

Conjunctions	word <i>more</i> (she is <i>brighter/more intelligent</i> than him). See also superlatives.
Consonant	Words which join parts of sentences, such as <i>and, or, but</i> etc.
Demonstrative	The non-vowel letters: b, d, g, dh, DH etc. in this book.
Dual	See pronoun.
Elision	A special form in Arabic to refer to <i>two</i> of anything, as opposed to <i>one</i> (singular) and more than two (plural).
Gender	Where part of a word, usually a vowel, is omitted to smooth speech.
Hidden 't'	Masculine or feminine. See noun and adjective.
Imperative	The feminine ending of a noun <i>-ah</i> , which in certain contexts changes to <i>-at</i> .
Interrogative	The form of a verb used when telling someone to do something.
Negatives	Question words. See also pronoun.
Noun	These are words used to negate or deny something: <i>no, not</i> etc. Arabic uses different words with nouns/adjectives and verbs.
	A noun is the name of a person, thing, place or abstract concept, e.g. Hassan, boy, book, Dubai, economics. In Arabic a noun has three important properties:
	1. It is either masculine or feminine. (There is no 'neuter', or <i>it</i> , which you use in English to describe inanimate objects or abstracts etc.) This is called gender (q.v.).
	2. It is either singular (one only), dual (two only) or plural (more than two). English does not have a dual. This is called number.
	3. It is either definite or indefinite. This is simply logical: the word refers either to an unspecified person, thing etc. or to a specific one. In English, indefinites are often preceded by <i>a</i> or <i>an</i> (the indefinite article), but this is omitted in Arabic. Definites often have <i>the, this, that</i> etc., or <i>his,</i>

	<i>her</i> . Names of people, places (words with capital letters in English) are automatically definite, e.g. Ahmed, Bahrain and so on. The concept of definiteness is very important in Arabic as it affects other words in the sentence. (Note: pronouns (q. v.) are always definite.)
Number	See noun and adjective.
Numbers	The numbers or numerals divide into two sets, <i>cardinal</i> (one, two, three, etc.) and <i>ordinal</i> (first, second, third).
Object	The object of a verb is the thing or person which the action of the verb affects. It contrasts with the subject (q.v.), e.g. <i>the dog</i> (subject) <i>chased the cat</i> (object).
Ordinal	See number.
Phrase	A phrase is a part of a sentence, not necessarily making sense on its own, but a useful term in describing features of a language.
Pitch	Pitch describes whether a word or part of a word is higher on the musical scale than another. It is mainly important in questions which, in Gulf Arabic, are often identical to statements except that the pitch rises towards the end of the phrase or sentence.
Plural	In Arabic more than two. See noun and adjective.
Possessive	When something owns or possesses something else. In English you either add <i>s</i> to the noun (Charlie's aunt), or use a possessive pronoun: <i>my</i> father, or the word <i>of</i> , e.g. <i>the manager of the company</i> .
Prefix	A short part of a word added to the beginning of a noun or verb. In English for example you have <i>un-</i> , <i>dis-</i> or <i>pre-</i> . In Arabic prefixes alter the meaning of a verb.
Prepositions	These are (usually) short words relating a noun to its place in space or time, e.g. English <i>in</i> , <i>on</i> etc. In Arabic a few common prepositions are prefixed to the word which follows them.
Pronouns	Short words used as substitutes for nouns (q.v.). The most important is the personal pronoun. For example the English pronoun <i>he</i> has

three distinct forms, *he*, *him* and *his* (in other pronouns such as *you* some of these forms have fused together). It will come naturally to you to say *he isn't at home* (not *him* or *his*), and also *I saw him* and *it is his house*. The first of these (*he*) is called a subject pronoun and these pronouns have equivalent words in Arabic. The other two (*him*, known as an object pronoun, and *his*, known as a possessive pronoun) share the same form in Arabic, and are not separate words, but endings or suffixes attached to their nouns. The personal pronouns are the most important, but there are other kinds such as demonstratives (*this*, *that* etc.), relatives (*who*, *which*, *that* in phrases like *the one that I like best*) and interrogatives *who*, *what* and *which* when used in questions like *who goes there?*

See pronoun.

Relatives
Sentence
A sentence is a complete utterance making sense on its own, e.g. *he is in his room*. In English these must contain a verb (q.v.), but sentences with *is* and *are* do not have a verb in Arabic. For instance, the sentence above would be in Arabic: *he in his room*.

Stem
Stress
See verb.
Also called accent. This is the part or syllable of a word which is most emphasised, e.g. the first *o* in English *photograph*. In the first few units of this book, stress has been marked with the acute accent: -á, ú, etc., and it is also given in the vocabularies and glossaries.

Subject
The subject of a sentence is the person or thing which is carrying out the action. It can be a noun, pronoun or a phrase as in: *Bill* lives in Abu Dhabi, *he* works for the oil company, *the best picture* will win the prize.

Suffix
An ending attached to a word which alters its meaning.

Superlative
Applied to adjectives when they express the highest level of a quality. In English they end

in *-est* or are preceded by *most* (*he is the brightest/most intelligent boy in the class*). See also comparatives.

Tense
Verb

See verb.

A 'doing' word expressing an action (*he reads the newspaper every day*). Its most important features are:

1. *Tense*. This tells us when the action is/was performed. In Arabic there are only two tenses, present (*I go, am going*) and past (*I went, I have gone*). The future (*I shall go*) is the same as the present with a special prefix.

2. *Inflections*. This means that the prefix and/or suffix of the verb changes according to who is doing the action. In English, most verbs in, for instance, the present tense, undergo only one change: *I go, you go, they go* etc., but *he/she/it goes*. In Arabic there is a different verb part for each person, singular and plural. The part of the verb which remains constant in the middle of all the prefixes and suffixes is called the 'stem'. This is an important concept in learning Arabic, and may be compared to the *go-* part of *goes* in the example above.

Note: a) that the verb *is/are* is omitted in Arabic, and b) the English verb *to have* is not a real verb in Arabic, but a combination of a *preposition* and a *pronoun* (q.v.).

Vowels

The sounds equivalent to *a, e, i, o, u* or combinations of them in English. Gulf Arabic has *a, i, u* and their long equivalents *aa, ii, uu*, and also *ai* occasionally *o* and *oo*. See also consonant.

Word order

In Arabic adjectives usually follow their nouns, e.g. *good man* becomes *man good*. Possessive pronouns are also suffixed to their nouns: *my book* becomes *book-my*.

Arabic-English glossary

Note: Nouns are given in the singular followed by plural in brackets, with *al-* included only in place names and other words where it is always present. The feminine and plural of adjectives is given only if they are irregular (i.e. not *-ah, -iin*). Verbs are given in the *he*-form of the past tense followed by the *he*-form of the present tense and the verb group shown in brackets. The order of entries does not take account of the symbols : and ', or distinguish between capital and small letters.

a:máal (pl.)	<i>business affairs</i>
á:Ta, yá:Ti (C)	<i>to give</i>
:áa'ilah (-aat)	<i>family</i>
:áadatan	<i>usually, generally</i>
:áadi	<i>regular (petrol)</i>
áakhir	<i>last, end</i>
:áalam	<i>world</i>
:aam (a:wáam)	<i>year</i>
:áaSifah (:awáaSif)	<i>storm</i>
:áaSimah (:awáaSim)	<i>capital (city)</i>
áayil (engine)	<i>oil</i>
ab	<i>father</i>
ábadan	<i>never</i>
:ábba. yi:ábbi (C)	<i>to fill</i>
:abd (:ibáad)	<i>worshipper</i>
abriil	<i>April</i>
ábu DHábi	<i>Abu Dhabi</i>
ábyaDH, f. báidHa (biidH)	<i>white</i>
:áfwan	<i>you're welcome, don't mention it; excuse me</i>
agáll	<i>less, least</i>
aghúsTos	<i>August</i>
:ágrab (:agáarib)	<i>scorpion</i>
ágrab	<i>nearer, nearest</i>
ágSar	<i>shorter, shortest</i>

áh(a)l *family, kinsfolk*
 ahámm *more/most important*
 áhlan wa sáhlan *welcome, hello*
 áHmar (f.) Hámra (Húmur) *red*
 áHsan *better, best*
 áhwan *better (from an illness)*
 áHyáanan *sometimes*
 :ain (:uyúun) *spring; eye*
 aish *what*
 aishgádd *how long, how much, what amount?*
 :ájab, yí:jab (A) *to impress, please (in the idiom to like)*
 ájnabi (ajáanib) *foreign, foreigner*
 ákal, yáakul (A) *eat*
 ák(i)l *food*
 ákbar *bigger, biggest*
 akh (ikhwáan/ ikhwah) *brother*
 ákhadh, yáakhudh (A) *to take*
 akhbáar (pl.) *news*
 ákhDHar f. kháDHra (khúDHur) *green*
 akiid *certain(ly)*
 :aks eksrai *X-ray photograph*
 al-'áan *now*
 al-ándalus *Arab Spain*
 al-baHráin *Bahrain*
 al-gharb *the West*
 al-gíblah *the direction of prayer, facing Mecca*
 al-Hagüigah *really, actually*
 al-Hámdu li-l-láah *praise (be) to God*
 al-Hiin *now*
 al-hijrah *the Hegirah*
 al-imaaráat al-:arabíyyah al-muttáHidah *the UAE*
 al-isláam *Islam*
 al-ká:bah *the Kaaba (holy shrine in Mecca)*
 al-khalíij (al-:arabi) *the (Arabian) Gulf*
 al-kuwáit *Kuwait*
 Al-láah *God, Allah*
 al-lail, bi l-lail *night, at night*
 al-lúghah al-:arabíyyab *Arabic, the Arabic language*

al-madiinah *Medinah*
 al-mámلاكab l-muttáHidah *the United Kingdom*
 al-mukárramah *Holy (adjective used after Mecca)*
 al-munáwwarah *resplendent, illuminated (used after Medinah)*
 al-qáahirah *Cairo*
 al-qur'áan *the Koran*
 al-yáman *Yemen*
 al-yóom *today*
 :ála *on*
 :ála shaan *because, in order to*
 :álam (a:láam) *flag*
 :alf (aaláaf) *thousand*
 :állam, yi:állim (A) *to teach*
 almáani (almáan) *German*
 ám(i)s *yesterday*
 ámbah, hámbah *mango*
 :amm (paternal) *uncle*
 :ámmah (paternal) *aunt*
 amriika *America*
 :an *of, about*
 ána *I*
 ananáas *pineapple*
 ánzal, yúnzil (A) *to reveal, send down (literary usage)*
 ar-riyáaDH *Riyadh*
 aráad, yirüid (B1) *to want, wish*
 :árabí (:árab) *Arabic, Arab*
 :áraf yí:raf (A) *to know*
 árba:ah *four*
 arba:atá:shar *14*
 arba:iin *40*
 árkhah *cheaper, cheapest*
 áS(a)l (uSúul) *origin*
 :ás(i)r *late afternoon*
 as-sa:udíyyah *Saudi Arabia*
 aS-Siin *China*
 aS-Súb(a)H *(in the) morning, forenoon*
 asáas (úsus) *basis, fundamental belief*
 asbriin *aspirin*

áSfar (f.) Sáfra (Súfur) *yellow*
 áSghar *smaller, smallest*
 ash-sbáarjah *Sharjah*
 ash-sharg al-áwsaT *the Middle East*
 :ásha *dinner, supper*
 :ásharab *ten*
 :aSiir *juice*
 ásrá: *faster, fastest*
 áswad (f.) sóoda (suud) *black*
 aatháath (pl.) *furniture*
 :aTsháan *thirsty*
 áTwal *longer, longest*
 aw *or*
 awáa'il *the first, early part of*
 áwHash *worse, worst*
 áwwal *first*
 áwwal ams *the day before yesterday*
 áwwalan *firstly*
 áyDHan *also*
 ayskrüim *ice cream*
 áywa *yes*
 ayy *which, any*
 ázrag (f.) zárga (zurg) *blue*

ba:(a)dáin *afterwards, later, then*
 ba:d aDH-Dhúh(u)r *(in the) afternoon*
 ba:d *after*
 ba:d búkrah *the day after tomorrow*
 ba:DH *some*
 ba:iid (:an) *far (from)*
 baab (biibáan) *door, gate*
 báagi *change, remainder of something*
 báakir/búkrah *tomorrow*
 baal *attention*
 báarid *cold (of things)*
 baaS (-aat) *bus*
 baat, yibáat (B1) *to spend the night*
 baddáalah *telephone exchange*

bádlah (-aat) *suit (clothes)*
 bádrí *early*
 báH(a)r *sea, beach*
 báíDHah (baiDH) *egg*
 bait (buyúut) *house*
 báitri (bayáatri) *battery*
 baizáat *money (Oman)*
 bálad (biláad) *town, village, country*
 banáfsaji *violet (colour)*
 bánchar *puncture*
 bándar *town on the coast, port*
 bánjari (banáajri) *bracelet*
 bank (bunúuk) *bank*
 bánnad, yibánnid (A) *to close*
 banziin *petrol*
 bard *cold (noun)*
 bardáan *cold (of a person)*
 bárg *lightning*
 bárgar bi l-jíbin *cheeseburger*
 bárgar sámak *fishburger*
 barnáamij (baráamij) *programme, plan of activity*
 barnúuS (baraniüS) *blanket*
 barr *land, desert*
 bass *only, just, enough, that's all*
 báT(i)n *stomach*
 baTáa'Tis *chips, potatoes*
 báTTah (baTT) *duck*
 bi DH-DHábT *exactly*
 bi- *with, by, in*
 bi-dúun *without*
 bi-kháir *well*
 biláad (buldáan) (f.) *country*
 bint (banáat) *girl, daughter*
 biráik *brakes*
 booling *bowling*
 burtugáal *orange*
 burtugáli *orange (colour)*
 bustáan *garden, park*

buTáagah (-aat) *card, postcard*
buTáagah shakhSíyyah *identity card*

chaik (-aat) *cheque*
chaik siyáaHi *traveller's cheque*
chakláit *chocolate*
cháyyak, yicháyyik (A) *to check*
chingáal (chanagüil) *fork*

dáa'irah (dawáayir) *(government) department*
dáawam, yidáawim (A) *to keep office hours*
dáayman *always,*
dábal *4-wheel drive*
dáfa:, yidfa: (A) *to pay*
dagiigah (dagáayig) *minute*
dáirah *Deira (the commercial quarter of Dubai)*
dáizil *diesel*
dajáajah (dajáaj) *chicken*
dállah (dlaal) *coffee pot*
darájah (-aat) *degree, class, step*
dáras, yidrus (A) *to study*
dárراس, yidárris (A) *to teach*
dáwa (adwiyah) *medicine*
dáwlah (dúwal) *state, country, nation*
dáwli *international*
DHáabiT (DHubbáaT) *officer*
DHáh(a)r *back*
dháhab *gold*
DHaif (DHuyúuf) *guest*
DHárab, yidHrab (A) *to hit, strike, knock*
DHarb *multiplication*
dhiháab *going, single (ticket)*
dhiháab w iyáab *return (ticket)*
DHúh(u)r *noon*
DHuhúur *emergence, appearance*
diin (adyáan) *religion*
disámbar *December*

doktóor (dakáatrah) *doctor*
dooláar (-aat) *dollar*
door (adwáar) *floor, storey*
dráiwil (draiwiliyya) *driver*
dubáy *Dubai*
dukkáan (dakaakiin) *(small) shop*
duwwáar (-áat) *roundabout*

fa *so*
fáaDHi *free, empty*
fáakihah (fawáakih) *fruit*
fáDHDHah *silver*
fádDHDHal, yifádDHDHil (A) *to prefer*
fáj(i)r *dawn*
fákkar, yifákkir (A) *to think*
faláafil *fried bean patties*
fariig (furúug) *team*
fáSSal, yifáSSil (A) *to make, fashion, tailor*
fátaH, yifátaH (A) *to open, conquer*
fáTar, yifáTur (A) *to break a fast; have breakfast*
fáwran *immediately, right now*
fáwwat, yifáwwit (A) *to pass, go past (a place)*
fibráayir *February*
fi amáan Al-láah: *goodbye*
fi amáan al-karíim *goodbye (reply to above)*
fi *in*
fiih *there is*
fikrah (afkáar) *thought, idea*
fil(i)m (afláam) *film*
filfil *pepper*
filúus *money*
finjáan (fanajiin) *(small coffee) cup*
foog *above, upstairs*
fúndug (fanáadig) *hotel*
fustáan *(lady's) dress*
fuTúur *breakfast*
fúuTah (fúwaT) *towel*

gá:ad, yíg:ad (A) *to sit, stay, remain*
 gáa:ah *hall, large room*
 gáadim *next, coming*
 gaal yigúul (B1) *to say*
 gaam, yigúum (B1) *to rise, get up (from sleep)*
 gaas, yigúis (B1) *to measure*
 gáb(i)l *before*
 gabúilah (gabáayil) *tribe*
 gádar, yígdar (A) *to be able*
 gadúim *old*
 gáfshah (gfáash) *spoon*
 gáhwah *coffee*
 gála:, yígla: (A) *pull out*
 gálam (agláam) *pen*
 galóon (-aat) *gallon*
 gamúis (gumSáan) *shirt*
 gára, yígla (C) *to read*
 garáaj *garage*
 garúib min *near (to)*
 garn (gurúun) *century*
 gaSiir *short*
 gáTar *Qatar*
 gháali *expensive*
 gháda *lunch*
 gháilam *turtles (in Oman; elsewhere Hámas)*
 ghaim or ghuyúum *clouds*
 ghair *other than, else*
 ghassáalah (-aat) *washing machine*
 ghooS *diving*
 ghraam (-aat) *gram*
 ghúrfah (ghúraf) *room*
 ghúrfat (ghúraf) ákil *dining room*
 ghúrfat (ghúraf) noom *bedroom*
 giláas (glaasáat) *(drinking) glass*
 giTáar *train*
 goolf/lá:bat al-goolf *golf*
 gumáash (ágmisha) *cloth, material*
 gúTun *cotton*

háadha, (f.) háadhi (haadhóol) *this, these*
 haadháak, (f.) haadhiik (haadhooláak) *that, those*
 háadi *quiet, peaceful*
 Háajah (-aat) *need (noun).*
 háajar, yiháajir (A) *to emigrate*
 Háal (aHwáal) *condition*
 Haarr *hot*
 Háasis bi- *feeling (e.g. illness)*
 Habb, yiHíbb (B2) *to like, love*
 Hábbah (Hubúub) *pill*
 Had *someone*
 Hadiigah (Hadáayig) *garden, park*
 Hagg *for, belonging to*
 Hájaz, yiHjiz (A) *to book, reserve*
 Hajj *pilgrimage; pilgrim*
 Hálag *earrings*
 Haliib *milk*
 hámbargar (-aat) *hamburger*
 Hammáam (-aat) *bathroom*
 Haráami (-iyya) *thief*
 Haráarah *heat, temperature*
 Harr *heat*
 Hásab, yiHsab (A) *to reckon, count, calculate*
 HáSSal, yiHáSSil (A) *to get, find, obtain*
 HaTT, yiHúTT (B2) *to put, place*
 Háтта *until, so that, in order to*
 háwa *wind, air*
 Hawáali *about, approximately*
 hawáayah (-aat) *interest, hobby*
 Háwwal, yiHáwwil (A) *to change, exchange*
 Hayyáa-k Al-láah *goodbye*
 Hiin *when, at the time when*
 Hiilw *sweet, pleasant, pretty*
 hina/híni *here*
 hináak *there*
 Hisn *fort*
 híyya *she, it*
 Húmma *fever*

húmma *they*
 Húrmah (Hariim) *woman*
 húwwa *he, it*

ibtáda, yibtádi (C) *to begin, start*
 ídba, ídba kaan *if*
 ídhan *so, therefore*
 iftákar, yiftákir (A) *to think, consider, be of the opinion that*
 iHdá:sbar *eleven*
 iHtáaj, yiHtáaj (B1) íla *to need*
 iHtifáal (-aat) *celebration, party, function*
 iHtimáal (lit. possibility) *possible, perhaps*
 :iid (a:yáad) *Eid, religious festival*
 iid (dual iidáin) *hand, arm*
 ijáazah (-aat) *holiday*
 iksbráis *express*
 illa *except for, less*
 illi *whowhich, the one whowhich*
 :imáarah (-aat) *apartment building, block*
 imáarab (-aat) *emirate*
 in shaa' Al-láah *if God wills*
 inbásaT, yinbásiT min (A) *to enjoy*
 :ind *at, with (used for to have)*
 :ind-ma *when, while*
 ingiltérra *England*
 ingliizi (pl. ingliiz) *English*
 inn *that (conjunction)*
 inta/inti/intu *you (m., f. and pl.)*
 intáDHar, yintáDHir (A) *to wait*
 intáshar, yintáshir (A) *to spread, spread out*
 ís(i)m (asáami) *name*
 isbáanya *Spain*
 :isba *evening prayer*
 isháal (pronounced is-háal) *diarrhoea*
 :ishriin *20*
 ishtághal, yishtághal (A) *to work*
 ishtára, yishtári (C) *to buy*
 iskutlánda *Scotland*

isláami *Islamic*
 istá'jar, yistá'jir (A) *to hire, rent*
 iSTáad, yiSTáad (B1)(sámak) *to hunt (fish), to fish*
 istáma:, yistámi: íla (A) *to listen to*
 istaráaH, yistaráiH (B1) *to rest, relax, take one's ease*
 ithná:shar *12*
 ithnáin, (f.) thintáin *two*
 ittáSal, yittáSil (A) fi *to phone, contact*
 ittijáah *direction, facing, in the direction of*
 :iyáadah (-aat) *clinic*

jaa yijji (C irreg.) *to come*
 jaab, yijjib (B1) *to bring, get, collect, obtain*
 jáahil (jihháal) *child*
 jáahiz *ready*
 jáami: (jawáami:) (big) *mosque*
 jáami:ah (-aat) *university*
 jábal (jibáal) *mountain, desert*
 jadd (ajdáad) *grandfather (ancestors)*
 jáddab *grandmother*
 jadiid (júdad, jidáad) *new*
 jaish (juyúush) *army*
 jámal (jimáal) *camel*
 jamb *next to*
 jamiil *beautiful*
 jánTah *suitcase (alternative to shánTah)*
 janúub *south*
 jawáaz as-sáfar *passport*
 jáwlah (-aat) *tour*
 jaww *air, atmosphere, weather*
 jáyyid *good (quality)*
 jázar *carrots*
 jazíilan *copious, very much (used only after shúkran thanks)*
 jazíirah (jazáayir/júzur) *island*
 jazíirat al-: árab *the Arabian peninsula*
 jib(i)n *cheese*
 jiddan *very*
 jiháaz (ájhizah) *appliance, piece of equipment*

jináaH (ájniHah) *suite, wing*
jináih (-aat) starlíini *pound sterling*
jís(i)r (jusúur) *bridge*
joo:áan *hungry*
júndi (junúud) *soldier*

káamil *complete*
káamira (-aat) *camera*
kaan, yikúun (B1) *was (present tense will/would be)*
káatib (kuttáab) *clerk*
kábat (-aat) *cupboard, wardrobe*
kabiir (kibáar) *big*
kaHH, yikúHH (B2) *to cough*
káhrab(a) *electricity*
kahrabáa'i *electrical*
kaif *how*
kaik *pastry, cake*
kalb (kiláab) *dog*
kálimah (-aat) *word*
kam *how much, how many*
kamáan *also, as well*
kandáishan *air-conditioning*
kariim (kiráam) *generous, noble (after Koran holy)*
kart (kurúut) *card*
kásar, yíksir (A) *to break*
kasláan *lazy*
kássar, yikássir (A) *to break up, smash*
kátab, yiktib (A) *to write*
kathiir *much, many, a lot, often, frequently*
khaal *maternal uncle*
kháalah *maternal aunt*
kháaliS *pure; (after negative) at all*
kháarij *outside*
khábbar, yikhábbir (A) *to tell, inform*
kháffaf, yikháffif (A) *to lighten, reduce*
khafiif *light (in weight)*
kháimah (khiyáam) *tent*
khálla, yikhállí (C) *to let, leave*
khállas, yikhállíS (A) *to finish, complete something*

khamastá:shar 15
khámsah *five*
khamsiin 50
khánjar (khanáajir) *dagger*
kharbáan *broken down, not working*
khaSáarah *a pity*
khaSiSah (khaSáa'iS) *characteristic, feature*
kháTar (akhTáar) *danger*
khayyáaT (-iin/khayaayiiT) *tailor*
khídmah (khidmáat) *service*
kídha, chídha, chídhi *like this, so*
kiilo, kiiloghráam *kilogram*
kiilo, kiilomít(i)r *kilometre*
kitáab (kútub) *book*
kull *all, each, every*
kúrah, (more formally) kúrat al-gádam *football*
kúrsi (karáasi) *chair*
kúuli (kuulíyya) *coolie, labourer*

lá:ab yil:ab (A) *to play*
laa . . . wála *neither . . . nor*
laa *no*
laa shay *nothing*
láakin *but*
láazim *necessary*
lában *yoghourt drink*
ládagh, yildagh (A) *to sting*
ládghat náHlah *bee-sting*
ladhúdh *delicious*
laff, yilíff (B2) *to turn (direction)*
láH(a)m *meat*
láHDHah (laHaDHáat) *moment*
lail *night in general; láilah (layáali) a night, nights*
laimóon *lemon, lime*
láisan (layáasin) *licence*
láisan maal siwáagah *driving licence*
laish *why*
lait (-aat) *light (of a car, street lamp)*
láitir, lítir (-aat) *litre*

lámbah (-aat) *lamp*
 lándan *London*
 law samáHt *if you please*
 law, loo *if*
 li'ánn *because*
 li-, la- *to, for*
 li-gháayat *up to, until*
 li-múddat aish *for how long*
 líHyah *beard*
 lóobi *lobby (hotel)*
 lóoHah (-aat) *board, (framed) picture*
 loon (alwáan) *colour*
 looz *almonds*
 lúbsah (-aat) *(lady's) dress*
 lúghah (-aat) *language*
 lúghat al-úmm *mother tongue (lit. language of the mother)*

má:a *with, along with, together with*
 má:a l-ásaf *sorry*
 má:a s-saláamah *goodbye*
 ma:gúul *reasonable*
 ma:júun al-asnáan *toothpaste*
 má:na *meaning*
 maa :aláish *it doesn't matter*
 maa *not (before verbs)*
 maa sháa' alláah! *good heavens!*
 maa yikháalif *that's OK, it doesn't matter*
 maa zaal *still (continuing something)*
 máaDHi *past, last (year, week etc.)*
 maal *belonging to, associated with*
 maay *water*
 máayo *May*
 máblagh (mabáaligh) *sum, amount (money)*
 maDhbúuT *exact, correct*
 mádrasah (madáaris) *school*
 mafrúuDh *obligatory, required, should be done*
 mafrúush *furnished*
 maftúuH *open*

magáas *size*
 magfúul *closed, shut*
 mágha (pronounced mág-ha) (magáahi) *café*
 mágli *fried*
 magsúumah :ala *divided by*
 maHáll (-aat) *(large) shop*
 maHáTTah (-aat) *station*
 maHáTTat al-baaS *bus station*
 maHjúuz *booked, reserved*
 maiz (amyáaz) *table*
 majjáanan *free, gratis*
 majlis (majáalis) *sitting-, reception room; also council*
 makáan (-aat) *place*
 makháddah (-aat) *pillow*
 mákHalah (pronounced mák-Halah) *kohl pot*
 makhSúuS *special*
 makiinat Sarf *cash machine*
 mákkah *Mecca*
 maksúur *broken*
 máktab (makáatib) *office, desk*
 máktab al-bariid *post office*
 maktúub *written*
 málak, yímlík (A) *to own*
 málik (mulúuk) *king*
 man, min *who*
 mánTigah (manáaTig) *area, region*
 mára (niswáan) *woman*
 márHab *welcome, hello*
 márham *cream (pharmaceutical)*
 mariiDH (márDHa) *ill; sick person, patient*
 márkaz (maráakiz) *centre*
 márkaz ash-shúrTah *police station*
 márkaz tijári *shopping centre*
 márkazi *central*
 márrah (-aat) *time, occasion*
 mars *March*
 márwaHah (maráawiH) *fan*
 máS(i)r *Egypt*

másbaH (masáabiH) *swimming pool*
 másha, yimshi (C) *to walk*
 mashghúul *busy*
 mashhúur *famous, well known*
 mashruubáat *drinks*
 másjid (masáajid) *(small) mosque*
 máT:am (maTáa:im) *restaurant*
 máta *when? (in questions)*
 maTáar (-aat) *airport*
 máTar *rain*
 máTbakh (maTáabikh) *kitchen*
 máT Haf (matáaHif) *museum*
 máthalan *for example*
 matrúus *full*
 máw:id (mawa:iid) *appointment; (pl. schedule, operating hours)*
 mawjúud *present, here*
 mawlúud *born*
 mázra:ah (mazáari:) *farm, country estate*
 miftáaH (mafatiiH) *key*
 míghsalah *washbasin, sink*
 miiláadi *pertaining to the birth of Christ, AD.*
 mīina (mawáani) *port, harbour*
 míjmar (majáamir) *incense burner*
 milyóon (malaayīn) *million*
 min fáDHI-ak/-ich/-kum *please*
 min *from; who (also man)*
 min gábil *before, beforehand*
 min Hiin íla Hiin *now and then, occasionally*
 miráayah (-aat) *mirror*
 míS:ad (maSáa: id) *lift, elevator*
 mísa *afternoon, evening*
 mit'ákkid *sure*
 mit:áwwid :ála *used to, accustomed to*
 míth(i)l *like, similar to*
 mitzáwwaj *married*
 míyyah, (also ímya) *hundred*
 móosam (mawáasim) *season*
 mooz *bananas*

mu'támar (-aat) *conference, convention*
 mu:áaSir *contemporary*
 mubáasharatan *directly*
 mubáashir *direct*
 mudárris (-iin) *teacher (m.)*
 mudárrisah (-aat) *teacher (f.)*
 múddah *period of time*
 mudíir (múdara) *manager*
 mufíid *effective, beneficial*
 mugáddam *in advance*
 muhándis (-iin) *engineer*
 mujtáhid *hard-working, diligent*
 muláwwan *coloured*
 múmkin *possible*
 mumtáaz *excellent; super, premium (petrol)*
 munáasib *suitable, convenient*
 murúur *traffic*
 múshkilah (masháakil) *problem*
 musiiga *music*
 mustáshfa (mustashfayáat) *hospital*
 mut'ákkid *sure*
 mut(a)'ássif *sorry*
 muu, mub *not (before nouns and adjectives)*
 muwaaSaláat *communications, transport*
 muwáDHDHaf (-iin) *official*

 náfar (anfáar) *individual, person (used in counting)*
 ná:am *yes*
 náagiS *minus*
 naam, yináam (B1) *to sleep, go to sleep*
 naas *people*
 nábi (anbiyáa') *prophet*
 naDHDHáarah (-áat) *(pair of) glasses*
 naDHDHáarah maal shams *(pair of) sun-glasses*
 naDHíif *clean, in good condition*
 náfa:, yinfa: (A) *to be suitable, useful*
 nafs *self, same*
 nafs ash-shay *the same thing*

SálaTah *salad*
 Sálla Al-láahu :alái-hi *peace be upon Him (used after the mentioning
 wa sállam the name of the Prophet Muhammad)*
 Sálla, yiSálli (C) *to pray, say one's prayers*
 SállaH, yiSálliH (A) *to repair*
 Sálsah *sauce*
 sámak *fish*
 sámic, yisma: (A) *to hear*
 sámma, yisámmi (C) *to call, name*
 sánah (sanawáat/siniin) *year*
 sand(A)wíich (-áat) *sandwich*
 Sáraf, yiSraf (A) *to cash, change money*
 saríir (saráyayir) *bed*
 Sarráaf (-iin) *cashier; money changer*
 sáwwa, yisáwwi (C) *to do, make*
 sawwáag (also dráiwil) *driver*
 Sáwwar, yiSáwwir (A) *to photograph, take photographs*
 Saydalíyyah (-aat) *pharmacy*
 sayyáarah (-aat) *car*
 shaaf, yishúuf (B1) *to see, watch, look at*
 sháari: (shawáari:) *street*
 shaay, chaay *tea*
 shadíid *violent, acute*
 shággah/shíggah (shígag) *flat, apartment*
 sháh(a)r (shuhúur) *month*
 shájarah (ashjáar) *tree*
 shák(i)l (ashkáal) *appearance; shape, type, kind*
 shakhS (ashkháaS) *person, individual*
 shamáal *North*
 shams (f.) *sun*
 shánTah (shúnuT) *bag, suitcase*
 shárab, yishrab (A) *to drink*
 sharg *East*
 shárikah (-aat) *company, firm*
 shárshaf (sharáashif) (bed) *sheet*
 shawármah *sliced roast lamb, doner kebab*
 shay (ashyáa) *thing*
 shay ghair *something else, other*

shibs *crisps, chips*
 shíishah/maHaTTat banziin *filling station*
 shákar *sugar*
 shíta *winter*
 shúgh(u)l (ashgháal) *work, working (pl. public works, road works)*
 shúkran *thanks, thank you*
 shúrTah *police*
 shwáyyah *a little, some*
 si:r (as:áar) *price, exchange rate*
 sibáag al-jimáal *camel racing*
 sibáaHah *swimming*
 sifáarah (-aat) *embassy*
 Síf(i)r *zero*
 síidah *straight on, straight ahead*
 síinima (-aat) *cinema*
 sikkíin (sakaakiin) *knife*
 sikritáirah (-aat) *secretary (f.)*
 sílsilah (saláasil) *chain*
 sinn (asnáan) *tooth*
 sitáarah (satáyayir) *curtains*
 sittá:shar 16
 sittah *six*
 sittiin 60
 siwáagah, siyáagah *driving (car)*
 Soom *fast, fasting*
 Sudáa: *headache*
 Sufriyyah (Safáari) *pan (cooking)*
 suhúulah *ease*
 sú:rah *speed*
 Suuf *wool*
 suug (aswáag) *market*
 Súurah (Súwar) *picture, photograph*
 ta'miin *insurance*
 ta:áal/i/u *come! (imperative)*
 tá:ab, yit:ab (A) *to tire*
 ta:állam, yit:állam (A) *to learn*
 ta:áwwar, yit:áwwar (A) *to be, get wounded*

ta:báan *tired, ill*
 ta:lím *education*
 Táabag (Tawáabig) *floor, storey*
 Táabi: (Tawáabi:) *(postage) stamp*
 Táalib (Tulláab or Tálabah) *student (m.)*
 Táalibah (-aat) *student (f.)*
 taariikh *date, history*
 taayr (-aat) *tyre*
 Táb:an *of course, naturally*
 Tábakh, yí'lbukh (A) *to cook*
 Tabbáakhah (-aat) *cooker*
 Tabiib (aTibba) *doctor*
 Tabiib al-asnáan *dentist*
 Tabiikh *cooking, cuisine*
 tádfi'ah *heating*
 tádhkarah (tadháakir) *ticket*
 t(a)fáDHDHal *here you are, help yourself*
 tafSiil *making, fashioning*
 taghádda, yitghádda (C) *to lunch, eat lunch*
 tagriiban *approximately*
 táH(i)t *underneath, below, downstairs*
 Tair (Thyúur) *bird*
 takállam, yitkállam (A) *to speak*
 takhfiiDH (-aat) *discount, reduction*
 takyiif *air conditioning*
 Tála:, yíTla: (A) *to leave, depart, go out*
 Tálab, yíTlub (A) *to order (something), ask for*
 tánis *tennis*
 táнки *tank (car)*
 táras, yítrus (A) *to fill*
 Tard (Turúud) *parcel, package*
 Tariig (Túrug) *road, way*
 Tárrash, yiTárrish (A) *to send*
 tashkiil (-aat) *selection, variety*
 Tawáari' (pl.) *casualty, emergency*
 Tayyáarah (-aat) *plane*
 Táyyib *good, well, fine, OK*
 tháalith *third*

tháni *second*
 thaláathah *three*
 thalaathiin *30*
 thalaathá:shar *13*
 thalj *ice*
 thalláajah (-aat) *refrigerator*
 thamáan(i)yah *8*
 thamaaniin *80*
 thamantá:shar *eighteen*
 thilth *third (fraction)*
 Tibb *(the science of) medicine*
 tijáarah *commerce*
 tijári *commercial*
 tilifóon *telephone*
 tilifizyóon *television*
 tís:ah *nine*
 tis:atá:shar *19*
 tis:iin *90*
 tuffáaH *apples*
 Tuul *throughout*

ukht (akhawáat) *sister*
 :úm(u)r *life, age*
 :umáan *Oman*
 :úmlah (-aat) *currency*
 umm (ummaháat) *mother*
 urúbba *Europe*
 usbúu: (asabii:) *week*
 ustráalya *Australia*
 úula fem. of áwwal *first*

viidiyoo or fiidiyoo (viidiyooháat) *video*
 villa or fillah (vilal, filal) *villa*

wa, w *and*
 wa-l-láahi *by God!*
 wáadi (widyáan) *wadi, dried-up river bed, valley*
 wáaHa (-aat) *oasis*

SálaTah *salad*
 Sálla Al-láahu :alái-hi *peace be upon Him (used after the mentioning
 wa sállam the name of the Prophet Muhammad)*
 Sálla, yiSállli (C) *to pray, say one's prayers*
 SállaH, yiSállliH (A) *to repair*
 Sálsah *sauce*
 sámak *fish*
 sámii:, yísma: (A) *to hear*
 sámma, yisámmi (C) *to call, name*
 sánah (sanawáat/siniin) *year*
 sand(A)wíich (-áat) *sandwich*
 Sáraf, yiSraf (A) *to cash, change money*
 sariir (saráayir) *bed*
 Sarráaf (-iin) *cashier; money changer*
 sawwa, yisáwwi (C) *to do, make*
 sawwáag (also dráiwil) *driver*
 Sáwwar, yiSáwwir (A) *to photograph, take photographs*
 Saydalíyyah (-aat) *pharmacy*
 sayyáarah (-aat) *car*
 shaaf, yishúuf (B1) *to see, watch, look at*
 sháari: (shawáari:) *street*
 shaay, chaay *tea*
 shadiid *violent, acute*
 shággah/shíggah (shígag) *flat, apartment*
 sháh(a)r (shuhúur) *month*
 shájarah (ashjáar) *tree*
 shák(i)l (ashkáal) *appearance; shape, type, kind*
 shakhS (ashkháaS) *person, individual*
 shamáal *North*
 shams (f.) *sun*
 shánTah (shúnuT) *bag, suitcase*
 shárab, yishrab (A) *to drink*
 sharg *East*
 shárikah (-aat) *company, firm*
 shárshaf (sharáashif) (bed) *sheet*
 shawármah *sliced roast lamb, doner kebab*
 shay (ashyáa) *thing*
 shay ghair *something else, other*

shibs *crisps, chips*
 shúishah/maHaTTat banziin *filling station*
 shíkar *sugar*
 shíta *winter*
 shúgh(u)l (ashgháal) *work, working (pl. public works, road works)*
 shúkran *thanks, thank you*
 shúrTah *police*
 shwáyyah *a little, some*
 si:r (as:áar) *price, exchange rate*
 sibáag al-jimáal *camel racing*
 sibáaHah *swimming*
 sifáarah (-aat) *embassy*
 Síf(i)r *zero*
 síidah *straight on, straight ahead*
 síinima (-aat) *cinema*
 sikkíin (sakaakíin) *knife*
 sikritáirah (-aat) *secretary (f.)*
 sílsilah (saláasil) *chain*
 sinn (asnáan) *tooth*
 sitáarah (satáayir) *curtains*
 sittá:shar 16
 sittah *six*
 sittíin 60
 siwáagah, siyáagah *driving (car)*
 Soom *fast, fasting*
 Sudáa: *headache*
 Sufríyyah (Safáari) *pan (cooking)*
 suhúulah *ease*
 sú:rah *speed*
 Suuf *wool*
 suug (aswáag) *market*
 Súurah (Súwar) *picture, photograph*
 ta'míin *insurance*
 ta:áal/i/u *come! (imperative)*
 tá:ab, yit:ab (A) *to tire*
 ta:állam, yit:állam (A) *to learn*
 ta:áwwar, yit:áwwar (A) *to be, get wounded*

wáaHid *one*
wáajid *much, many*
wáalid *father*
wáalidah *mother*
waalidáin *parents*
wáarim *swollen*
wáasi: *spacious*
wádda, yiwáddi (C) *to take to, deliver*
wag(i)t *time*
wágaf, yóogaf (A) *to stop, come to a stop*
wágga:, yiwággi: (A) *to sign*
wággaf, yiwággif (A) *to stop (a car, etc.)*
wagt al-faráagh *leisure (time)*
wain *where*
wája: *ache, pain*
wája: al-asnáan *toothache*
wája:, yóoja: (A) *to give pain*
wájabah (-aat) *meal*
wála *nor (lit. and not)*
wálad (awláad) *boy, son; (pl. children)*
wáragah (awráag) *(sheet of) paper*
wárshah (-aat) *workshop*
wás(a)T *middle, centre*
wás(i)kh *dirty*
wáSal, yóoSal (A) *to arrive*
wáSSal, yiwáSSil (A) *to transport, take to*
wáTan (awTáan) *nation, homeland*
wáTani *national*
wazíir (wúzara) *minister*
wazn (awzáan) *weight*
wíyya *with, together with*
wizáarah (-aat) *ministry*
wizáarat ad-daakhilíyyah *Ministry of the Interior*
wizáarat al-i:láam *Ministry of Information*
wizáarat al-khaaríyyah *Ministry of Foreign Affairs*
wizáarat aS-SiHHah *Ministry of Health*
wizáarat at-ta:lím *Ministry of Education*
wizáarat ath-thaqáafah *Ministry of Culture*

yaa *(used before names when addressing people)*
yamíin *right (direction)*
yanáayir *January*
yímkin *maybe*
yisáar *left (direction)*
yoom (ayyáam) *day*
yoom al-áHad *Sunday*
yoom al-árba:ah *Wednesday*
yoom al-ithnáin *Monday*
yoom al-júma:ah *Friday*
yoom al-khamíis *Thursday*
yoom ath-thaláathah *Tuesday*
yoom as-sabt *Saturday*
yúulyo *July*
yúunyo *June*
zaa`ir or záayir (zuwwáar) *visitor*
zaa:, yizúu: (B1) *to vomit*
záar, yizúur (B1) *to visit*
záayid *plus*
zain *OK, good*
ziyáadah *more, increase*
zooj *husband*
zóojah *wife*
zoolíyyah (zawáali) *carpet*
zuhúur *flowers*
zukáam *a cold*

English–Arabic glossary

a little, some shwáyyah
a pity khaSáarah
A.D. miiláadi
about, approximately Hawáali
above, upstairs foog
ache, pain wája:
after ba:d
afternoon ba:d aDH-DHúhur
afterwards, later, then ba:(a)dáin
age :úm(u)r
air conditioning kandáishan, takyíif
air, atmosphere, weather jaww
airport maTáar (-aat)
all, each, every kull
almonds looz
also áyDHan, kamáan
always dáayman
ambassador safiir (súfara)
America amriika
and wa, w
any ayy
apartment building :imáarah (-aat)
appearance; type, shape, kind shák(i)l (ashkáal)
apples tuffáaH
appliance jiháaz (ájhizah)
appointment máw:id (mawa:iid)
approximately tagriiban, Hawáali
April abríil
Arabic, Arab :árabí (:árab)
Arabic, the Arabic language al-lúghah al-:arabíyyah
area, region mánTigah (manáaTig)
army jaish (juyúush)
arrive wáSal, yóoSal (A)

ask sá'al, yís'al (A)
aspirin asbriin
attention baal
August aghúsTos
aunt, paternal :ámmah, *maternal* kháalah
Australia ustráalya

back DHáh(a)r
bag, suitcase shánTah (shúnuT)
Bahrain al-baHráin
bananas mooz
bandage ribáaT (rúbaT)
bank bank (bunúuk)
basis asáas (úsus)
bathroom Hammáam (-aat)
battery báitri (bayáatri)
be kaan (past), yikúun (future) (B1); not used in the present
be able gádar, yígdar (A)
be suitable, useful náfa:, yínfa: (A)
be, get wounded ta:áwwar, yit:áwwar (A)
beard líHyah
beautiful jamíil
because lí'ánn, :ála shaan
become, happen Saar, yiSiir (B1)
bed sariir (saráayir)
bedroom ghúrfat (ghúraf) noom
bee náHla (náHal)
bee-sting ládghat náHlah
before gáb(i)l
beforehand min gábil
begin ibtáda, yibtádi (C)
belonging to, associated with maal
better, best áHsan; (from an illness) áhwan
big kabíir (kibáar)
bigger, biggest ákbar
bird Tair (Tuyúur)
black áswad f. sóoda (suud)
blanket barnúuS (baraníS)

blue ázrag f. zárga (zurg)
board, (framed) picture lóoHah (-aat)
book kitáab (kútub)
book, reserve Hájaz, yíHjiz (A)
booked, reserved maHjúuz
born mawlúud
boy, son; (pl. children) wálad (awláad)
bracelet bánjari (banáajri)
brakes biráik
break kásar, yíksir (A)
break up, smash kássar, yikássir (A)
breakfast fuTúur, riyúug
breakfast (to eat) fáTar, yifTur (A)
bridge jis(i)r (jusúur)
bring, get jaab, yijíib (B1)
broken maksúur
broken down, not working kharbáan
brother akh (ikhwáan)
bus baaS (-aat)
bus station maHáTTat al-baaS
busy mashghúul
but láakin
buy ishtára yishtári (C)

café mágha (magáahi), gáhwah
Cairo al-qáahirah
cake kaik
call, name sámma, yisámmi (C)
camel jámal (jimáal)
camel racing sibáag al-jimáal
camera káamira (-aat), áalat taSwiir
capital (city) :áaSimah (:awáaSim)
car sayyáarah (-aat)
card kart (kurúut)
card, postcard buTáagah (-aat)
carpet zooliyyah (zawáli)
carrots jázar
cash, change money Sáraf, yíSraf (A)

cash machine makíinat Sarf
cashier; money changer Sarráaf (-iin)
casualty, emergency Tawáari' (pl.)
ceiling fan pánkah or bánkah (-aat), márwaHah (maráawiH)
celebration, party, function iHtifáal (-aat)
central márkazi
centre márkaZ (maráakiz)
century garn (gurúun)
certain(ly) TáB(a):an, akiid
chain sílsilah (saláasil)
chair kúrsi (karáasi)
change, exchange Háwwal, yiHáwwil (A)
change, remainder of something báagi
characteristics khaSáa'iS
cheap rakhiiS
cheaper, cheapest árkháS
check cháyyak, yicháyyik (A)
cheese jíb(i)n
cheque chaik (-aat)
chicken dajáajah (dajáaj)
child jáahil (jihháal)
China aS-Siin
chips, potatoes baTáaTis
chocolate chakláit
cinema sūnima (-aat)
clean naDHiiif
clerk káatib (kuttáab)
clinic :iyáadah (-aat)
clock, watch sáa:ah (-aat)
close bānnad, yibānnid (A)
closed, shut magfúul, mubānnad
cloth, material gumáash (ágmisha)
clouds ghaim/ghuyúum
coconuts narjiil
coffee gáhwah
coffee pot dállah (dlaal)
cold (illness) zukáam
cold (noun) bard

cold (adj. of a person) bardáan
cold (of things) báarid
colour loon (alwáan)
coloured muláwwan
come jaa, yúji (C irreg.)
come! (imperative) ta:áal/i/u
commerce tijáarah
commercial tijáari
communications muwaaSaláat
company, firm shárikah (-aat)
complete káamil
condition Háal (aHwáal)
conference mu'támar (-aat)
contemporary mu:áaSir
cook Tábach, yíTbukh(A)
cooker Tabbáakhah (-aat)
cooking, cuisine Tabiikh
coolie, labourer kúuli (kuulíyya)
correct, right SaHíiH
cotton gúTun
cough kaHH, yikúHH (B2)
country biláad (buldáan) (f.)
cream (pharmaceutical) márham
crisps, chips shibs
cup (small coffee) finjáan (fanajíin)
cupboard, wardrobe kábat (-aat)
currency :úmlah (-aat)
curtain sitáarah (satáayir)

dagger khánjar (khanáajir)
danger kháTar (akhTáar)
date taariikh
dawn fáj(i)r
day yoom (ayyáam)
day after tomorrow ba:d búkrah
day before yesterday áwwal ams
December disámbar
degree, class, step dárajah (-aat)

delicious ladhúidh
dentist Tabíib al-asnáan
department (government) dáa'irah (dawáayir)
desk máktab (makáatib)
diarrhæa isháal (pronounced is-háal)
diesel dáizil
difficult Sá:(a)b
dining room ghúrfat (ghúraf) ákil
dinner :ásha
direction of prayer al-gíblah
direction; facing, in the direction of ittijáah
direct mubáashir
directly mubáasharatan
dirty wás(i)kh
discount takhfíiDH (-aat)
divided by magsúumah :ala
diving ghooS
do, make sáwwa, yisáwwi (C)
doctor doktóor (dakáatrah), Tabíib (aTíbba)
dog kalb (kiláab)
dollar dooláar (-aat)
door, gate baab (biibáan)
dress (lady's) lúbsah (-aat)/fustáan (fasatíin)
drink shárab, yishrab (A)
drinks mashruubáat
drive saag, yisúug (B1)
driver sawwáag (-iin), dráiwil (draiwilíyya)
driving siwáagah, siyáagah
driving licence láisan maal siwáagah
duck báTíah (baIT)

each kull
early bádri
earrings Hálag
ease suhúulah
east sharg
education ta:liim
effective, beneficial mufiid

egg báidHah (baiDH)
 Egypt máS(i)r
 Eid, religious festival :iid (a:yáad)
 eight thamáan(i)yah
 18 thamantá:shar
 80 thamaaniin
 electrical kahrabáa'i
 electricity káhrab(a)
 11 iHDá:shar
 else ghair
 embassy sifáarah (-aat)
 emigrate háajar, yiháajir (A)
 emirate imáarah (-áat)
 engineer muhándis (-iin)
 England ingiltérra
 English ingliizi (ingliiz)
 enjoy inbásaT, yinbásiT min (A)
 equal, add up to sáawa, yisáawi (C)
 Europe urúbba
 every kull
 evening misa
 evening prayer :isba
 exact, correct maDHBúuT
 exactly bi DH-DHAbT
 excellent; super, premium (petrol) mumtáaz
 except illa
 exchange (telephone) baddáalah
 expensive gháli
 eye :ain (:uyúun) (f.)
 family :áa'ilah, :áayilah (-aat)
 family, kinsfolk. áh(a)l
 famous mashhúur
 fan márwaHah (maráawiH)
 far(from) ba:iid (:an)
 farm, country estate mázra:ah (mazáari:)
 fast, quickly bi-súr(a):ah
 fast, fasting Soom

fast Saam, yiSúum (B1)
 faster, fastest ásra:
 father ab, wáalid
 February fibráayir
 feeling (illness) Háasis bi-
 fever Húwnma
 15 khamastá:shar
 50 khamsiin
 fill táras, yítrus (A), :ábba, yi:ábbi (C)
 filling station shiishah or maHáTTat banziin
 film fil(i)m (afláam)
 finish, complete khállas, yikhállis (A)
 first áwwal, fem. úula
 firstly áwwalan
 fish sámak
 fish iSTáad, yiSTáad (B1) sámak
 fishing Said as-sámak
 five khámsah
 flag :álam (a:láam)
 flat, apartment shággah or shíggah (shígag)
 floor, storey door (adwáar), Táabag (Tawáabig)
 flowers zuhúur
 food ák(i)l
 foot, leg rijl (rujúul)
 football kúrah, or more formally kúrat al-gádam
 for example máthalan
 for, belonging to Hagg, maal
 foreign, foreigner ájnabi (ajáanib)
 fork chingáal (chanagiil)
 fort Hisn
 40 arba:iin
 four árba:ah
 14 arba:atá:shar
 fourth ráabi:
 4-wheel drive dábal
 free, empty fáaDHi
 free, gratis majjáanan
 Friday yoom al-júma:ah

fried mágli
 friend (f.) Sadiigah (-aat)
 friend (m.) Sadiig (áSdiga)
 from min
 fruit fáakihah (fawáakih)
 full matrúus
 furnished mafrúush
 furniture aatháath (pl.)

gallon galóon (-aat)
 garage garáaj
 garden, park Hadiigah (Hadáayig), bustáan
 German almáani (almáan)
 get, find, obtain HáSSal, yiHáSSil (A)
 girl, daughter bint (banáat)
 give á:Ta, yá:Ti (C)
 give back, return rájja:, yirájji: (A)
 give pain wája:, yóoja: (A)
 glass (drinking) giláas (glaasáat), pane of jáamah
 glasses naDHDHáarah (-áat)
 go raaH yirúuH (B1), sáar, yisiir (B1)
 God, Allah Al-láah
 gold dháhab
 golf goolf or lá:bat al-goolf
 good (quality) jáyyid
 goodbye má:a s-saláamah
 good morning SabáaH al-kháir, (reply SabáaH an-núur)
 good, well, fine, OK zain, Táyyib
 gram ghraam (-aat)
 grandfather (ancestors) jadd (ajdáad)
 grandmother jáddah
 green ákhDHar f. kháDHra (khúDHur)
 guest DHajif (DHuyúuf)
 Gulf, the (Arabian) al-khalüij (al-:árabi)

half nuSS
 hall (of a house) Sáalah
 hand, arm iid (iidáin)

harbour, port míina (mawáani)
 hard-working, diligent mujtáhid
 have :ind (plus noun or pronoun suffix)
 he, it húwwa
 head, headland, raas (ruus)
 headache Sudáa:
 hear sámi:, yísma: (A)
 heat Harr, Haráarah
 heating tádfi'ah
 Hegirah, the al-hijrah
 help sáa:ad, yisáa:id (A)
 here hína or híni; present mawjúud
 hire, rent istá'jar yistá'jir (A)
 hit, strike DHárab, yíDHrab (A)
 holiday ijáazah (-aat)
 hospital mustáshfa (mustashfayáat)
 hot Haarr
 hotel fúndug (fanáadig)
 hour sáa:ah (-aat)
 house bait (buyúut)
 how kaif
 how much, how many kam, aishgádd
 hundred míyyah, (also imya)
 hungry joo:áan
 husband zooj

I ána
 ice thalj
 ice cream ayskriim
 identity card buTáagah shakhSiyyah
 if idha, idha kaan, law, loo, in
 ill; sick (person), patient maríDH (márDHa)
 immediately fáwran
 impress, please :ájab, yí:jab (A)
 in fi
 in advance mugáddam
 in order to :ála shaan
 incense burner míjmar (majáamir)

individual, person (used in counting) náfar (anfáar)
inside dáakhil
insurance ta'miin
interest, hobby hawáayah (-aat)
international dáwli
Islam al-isláam
Islamic isláami
island jaziirah (jazáayir or júzur)
it húwwa, híyya
it doesn't matter maa :aláish, maa yikháalif

January yanáayir
juice :aSiir
July yúulyo
June Yúunyo

key miftáaH (mafatiíH)
kilogramme kiilo, kiiloghráam
kilometre kiilo, kiilomít(i)r
king málik (mulúuk)
kitchen máTbakh (maTáabikh)
knife sikkiin (sakaakiin)
know :áraf yí:raf (A)
kohl box mákHalah
Koran, the Holy al-qur'áan al-kariim

lamp lámbah (-aat)
land, desert barr
landlord SaaHib al-milk
language lúghah (-aat)
last (year, week etc.) máaDHi
lazy kasláan
lead (metal) raSaaS
learn ta:állam, yit:állam (A)
leave, depart, go out Tála:, yíTla: (A)
left (direction) yisáar
leisure (time) wagt al-faráagh
lemon, lime laimóon

less, least agáll
let, leave khállla, yikhállli (C)
letter risáalah (rasáayil)
licence láisan (layáasin)
lie down rágad, yírgad (A)
life, age :um(u)r
lift, elevator miS:ad (maSaa:id)
light (in weight) khafiif
light (of a car, street lamp) lait (-aat)
lighten, reduce kháffaf, yikháffif (A)
lightning bárg
like this, so kídhá, chídhá, chídhi
like, love Habb, yiHíbb (B2)
like, similar to míth(i)l
listen to istáma: yistámi: íla (A)
litre láitir, lítir (-aat)
live, reside sákan, yiskun (A)
London lándan
longer, longest áTwal
lunch gháda
lunch, eat lunch taghádda, yitghádda (C)
make, do sáwwa, yisáwwi (C)
man rajjáal (rajaiil)
manager mudiir (múdara)
mango ámbah, hámbah
March mars
market suug (aswáag)
married mitzáwwaj
master, owner SaaHib (aSHáab)
May máayo
maybe múmkin, yímkin
meal wájabah (-aat)
meaning má:na
measure gaas, yigiis (B1)
meat láH(a)m
Mecca mákkah
medicine dáwa (adwíyah), (the science of) Tibb

Medinah al-madiinah
 Middle East, the ash-sharg al-áwsaT
 middle wás(a)T
 milk Halīb
 million milyóon (malaayiin)
 minister waziir (wúzara)
 ministry wizáarah (-aat)
 Ministry of Culture wizáarat ath-thaqáafah
 Ministry of Education wizáarat at-ta:liim
 Ministry of Foreign Affairs wizáarat al-khaarijyyah
 Ministry of Health wizáarat aS-SiHHah
 Ministry of Information wizáarat al-i:láam
 Ministry of the Interior wizáarat ad-daakhiliyyah
 minus náagiS
 minute dagiigah (dagáayig)
 mirror miráayah (-aat)
 moment láHHDHah (laHaDHáat)
 Monday yoom al-ithnáin
 money filúus, baizáat
 month sháh(a)r (shuhúur)
 more ziyáadah
 more/most important ahámm
 morning SabáaH, Súb(a)H
 mosque (big) jáami: (jawáami:), (small) másjid (masáajid)
 mother umm (ummaháat), wáalidah
 mother tongue lúghat al-úmm
 mountain, desert jábal (jibáal)
 much, many kathiir, wáajid
 museum mátHaf (matáaHif)
 music musiiga

 name is(i)m (asáami)
 nation wáTan (awTáan)
 national wáTani
 near (to) gariib min
 nearer, nearest ágrab
 necessary láazim
 need iHtáaj, yiHtáaj (B1) íla

need (noun) Háajah (-aat)
 neither ... nor laa... wála
 never ábadan
 new jadiid júdad, jidáad)
 news akhbáar (pl.)
 next, coming gáadim
 next to jamb
 night (in general) lail; (single night) láilah (layáli)
 nine tis:ah
 19 tis:atá:shar
 90 tis:iin
 no laa
 noon DHúh(u)r
 North shamáal
 not (before nouns and adjectives) muu, mub, (before verbs) maa
 nothing laa shay
 November nufáambar
 now al-Hiin, al-'áan
 now and then, occasionally min Hiin ila Hiin
 number rág(a)m (argáam)

 oasis wáaHa (-aat)
 obligatory mafrúuDH
 October októobar
 of min; of, about :an
 of course, naturally Táb:an
 office máktab (makáatib)
 officer DHáabiT (DHubbáaT)
 official muwáDHDHaf (-iin), (adj.) rásmi
 oil (engine) áayil; (petroleum) nafT, bitróol; (cooking) zait
 OK, good zain
 old gadiim
 on :ála
 one wáaHid
 only, just, enough, that's all bass
 open fátaH, yiftaH (A)
 open (adj.) maftúuH
 opinion ra'y (aaráa)

or aw
orange burtugáal
orange (colour) burtugáali
order (something), ask for Tálab, yiTlub (A)
origin áS(a)l (uSúul)
other than, else ghair
outing, trip riHlah (-aat)
outside kháarij
own, to málak, yimlik (A)

palm (tree) nákhlah (nakhíl)
pan (cooking) Sufriyyah (Safáari)
paper (sheet of) wáragah (awráag)
parcel Tard (Thrúud)
parents waalidáin
pass, go past fáwwat, yifáwwit (A)
passport jawáaz as-sáfar
pay dáfa:, yidfa: (A)
pen gálam (agláam)
people naas
pepper filfil
person shakhS (ashkháaS)
petrol banziin
pharmacy Saydaliyyah (-aat)
phone tilifóon
phone ittáSal, yittáSil (A) fii
photograph Sáwwar, yiSáwwir (A)
picture, photograph Súurah (Súwar)
pilgrimage; pilgrim Hajj
pill Hábbah (Hubúub)
pillow makháddah (-aat)
pineapple ananáas
place makáan (-aat)
plane Tayyáarah (-aat)
plate SáH(a)n (SuHúun)
play lá:ab yil:ab (A)
please min fáDHI-ak/-ich/-kum
plus záayid

police shúrTah
possible múmkin
potatoes áalu, baTáaTis
post bariid
post office máktab al-bariid
pound sterling jináih (-aat) starliini
pray Sálla, yiSálli (C)
prefer fáDHDHal, yifáDHDHil (A)
price sir: (as:áar)
problem múshkilah (masháakil)
programme barnáamij (baráamij)
puncture bánchar
put Ha'TT, yiHúTT (B2)

quarter rúba:
quick saríi:
quickest ásra:
quickly bi-súr(a):ah
quiet, peaceful háadi

rain máTar
read gára, yigra (C)
ready jáahiz
really, actually al-Hagúgah
reasonable ma:gúul
reckon, count, calculate Hásab, yíHsab (A)
red áHmar (f.) Hámra (Húmur)
refrigerator thalláajah (-aat)
regular :áadi
religion diin (adyáan)
repair SállaH, yiSálliH (A)
resident, inhabitant sáakin (sukkáan)
rest, relax, take one's ease istaráaH, yistaríiH (B1)
restaurant máT:am (maTáa:im)
return, come back, go back rája:, yirja: (A)
return ticket tádhkarat dhiháab w iyáab
right (direction) yamiin
rise, get up gaam, yigúum (B1)

road, way Tariig (Túrug)
rock Sákhrah (Sukhúur)
room ghúrfah (ghúraf)
roundabout duwwáar (-áat)

salad SálaTah
same thing, the nafs ash-sháy
sands rimáal, (sing. ráam(a))
sandwich sand(a)wíich (-áat)
Saturday yoom as-sabt
sauce Sálsah
Saudi Arabia as-sa:udíyyah
say gaal, yigúul (B1)
school mádrasah (madáaris)
scorpion :ágrab (:agáarib)
sea báH(a)r
season móosam (mawáasim)
second, other tháani
secretary (f.) sikritáirah (-aat)
see, watch, look at shaaf, yishúuf (B1)
self, same nafs
send Tárrash, yiTárrish (A)
September sabbámbar
service khídmah (khídmáat)
seven sáb:ah
17 sab:atá:shar
70 sab:iin
she, it híyya
sheet (bed) shárshaf (sharáashif)
shelf raff (rufúuf)
ship safiinah (súfun)
shirt gamíiS (gumSáan)
shop (large) maHáll (-aat), (small) dukkáan (dakaakiin)
shopping centre márkaz tijáari
short gaSíir
shorter, shortest ágSar
sign wágga:, yiwággi: (A)
silver fáDHDHah

single ticket tádhkarat dhiháab
sister ukht (akhawáat)
sit, stay, remain gá:ad, yíg:ad (A)
sitting room májlis (majáalis)
six síttah
16 sittá:shar
60 sittiin
size magáas
sleep (noun) noom
sleep, go to sleep naam, yináam (B1)
small, young Saghíir (Sugháar)
smaller, smallest áSghar
so fa, idhan
so that, in order to :ála shaan, Hátta
soap Saabúun
soldier júndi (junúud)
some ba:DH, shwáyyat
someone Had
something else, other shay ghair
sometimes aHyáanan
sorry mut(a)'ássif, ma:a l-ásaf
South janúub
spacious wáasi:
speak takállam, yitkállam (A)
special makhSúuS
speed súr:ah
spend the night baat, yibáat (B1)
spoon gáfshah (gfáash)
sport riyáaDHah (-aat)
spread out intáshar, yintáshir (A)
spring (water) :ain (:uyúun) (f.)
stamp (postage) Táabi: (Tawáabi:)
state, country, nation dáwlah (dúwal)
station maHáTTah (-aat)
still (continuing) maa zaal
sting ládgah (-aat)
sting ládagh, yildagh (A)
stomach báT(i)n

stop (a car etc.) wággaf, yimággif (A)
 stop, come to a stop wágaf, yóogaf (A)
 storm :áaSifah (:awáaSif)
 straight ahead sūidah
 street sháari: (shawáari:)
 student (f.) Táalibah (-aat)
 student (m.) Táalib (Tulláab or Tálabah)
 study dáras, yídrus (A)
 sugar shíkar
 suit (of clothes) bádiyah (-aat)
 suitable, convenient munáasib
 suitcase shánTah, jánTah (shúnuT)
 sum, amount (money) máblagh (mabáaligh)
 summer Saif
 sun shams (f.)
 Sunday yoom al-áHad
 super (petrol) mumtáaz
 sure mit'ákkid
 sweet, pleasant, pretty Hilw
 swim, bathe sábaH, yísbaH (A)
 swimming sibáaHah
 swimming-pool másbaH (masáabiH)
 swollen wáarim

table maiz (amyáaz)
 tailor khayyáaT (-iin/khayaayiiT)
 take ákhadh, yáakhudh (A irreg.)
 take someone, give them a lift wáSSal, yiwáSSil (A)
 take, deliver wádda, yiwáddi (C)
 tank tánki
 tea shaay, chaay
 teach :állam, yi:állim (A)
 teach dárras, yidárris (A)
 teacher (f.) mudárrisah (-aat)
 teacher (m.) mudárris (-iin)
 team fariig (furúng)
 telephone tilifóon
 television tilifizyóon

tell, inform khábbar, yikhábbir (A)
 ten :ásharah
 tennis tánis
 tent khaimah (khiyáam)
 thanks, thank you shúkran
 that (conjunction) inn
 that, those haadháak, (f). haadhíik (haadhooláak)
 there hináak
 there is/are fiih
 they húmma
 thief Haráami (-iyya)
 thing shay (ashyáa)
 think, ponder fákkar, yifákkir (A)
 think, be of the opinion iftákar, yiftákir (A)
 third tháalith
 third (fraction) thilth
 thirsty :aTsháan
 13 thalaathá:shar
 30 thalaathíin
 this, these háadha, (f.) haadhi (haadhóol)
 thought, idea fíkráh (afkáar)
 thousand alf (aaláaf)
 three thaláathah
 throughout Tuul
 thunder rá:ad
 Thursday yoom al-khamiis
 ticket tádhkarah (tadháakir)
 time wag(i)t; occasion márrah (-aat), period of múddah
 tire tá:ab, yit:ab (A)
 tired, ill ta:báan
 to, for li-, la-
 today al-yóom
 tomorrow báakir/búkrah
 tooth sinn (asnáan)
 toothache wája: al-asnáan
 toothpaste ma:júun al-asnáan
 tour jáwlah (-aat)
 towel fúuTah (fúwaT)

town, village, country bálad (biláad)
traffic murúur
train giTáar
transport, take wáSSal, yiwáSSil (A)
travel sáfar
travel, to sáafar, yisáafir (A)
travellers' cheque chaik siyáaHi
tree shájarah (ashjáar)
tribe gabiilah (gabáayil)
Tuesday yoom ath-tbaláathah
turn, to (direction) laff, yiliff (B2)
turtles (in Oman) gháilam; elsewhere Hámas
twelve ithná:shar
twenty :ishriin
two ithnáin, f. thintáin
tyre taayr (-aat)

UAE al-imaaráat al-:arabíyyah al-muttáHidah
UK al-mámlakah al-muttáHidah
uncle, paternal :amm, *maternal* khaal
underneath, below, downstairs táH(i)t
university jáami:ah (-aat)
until Háтта, li-gháayat
used to, accustomed to mit:áwwid :ála
usually, generally :áadatan

very jiddan, wáajid
video viidiyoo/fiidiyoo (viidiyooháat)
villa vïlla/fïllah (vïlal, fïlal)
violent, acute shadiid
violet (colour) banáfsaji
visit záar, yizúur (B1)
visitor záa'ir or záayir (zuwwáar)
vomit zaa:, yizúu: (B1)

wadi wáadi (widyáan)
wait intáDHar, yintáDHir (A)
walk másha, yímshi (C)

want, wish aráad, yiriid (B1)
warm, hot sáakhin
washbasin, sink mighsalah
washing machine ghassáalah (-aat)
water maay
we níHna
Wednesday yoom al-árba:ah
week usbúu: (asabii:)
weight wazn (awzáan)
welcome, hello áhlan wa sáhlan, márHab
well bi-kháir
west gharb
what aish
when Hiin; (in questions) máta
where waim
which ayy
while :ind-ma
white ábyaDH, (f.) báidHa (biiDH)
who man, mim
why laish
wife zóojah
wind, air háwa
winter shíta
with, together with má:a, wiyya; *by means of* bi-
with, by, in bi-
without bi-dúun
woman Húrmah (Hariim), már'a (niswáan)
wool Suuf
word kálimah (-aat)
work ishtághal, yishtághal (A)
work shúgh(u)l (ashgháal)
workshop wársbah (-aat)
world :áalam
worse, worst áwHash
worshipper :abd (:ibáad)
write kátab, yiktib (A)
written maktúub

X-ray photograph :aks éksrai

year sánah (sanawáat/siníin); :aam (a:wáam)

yellow áSfar (f.) Sáfra (Súfur)

yes áywa, ná:am

yesterday ám(i)s

you (m., f. and pl.) ínta/ínti/íntu

zero Síf(i)r

Index

References take the form 5.Gp4, where the first number refers to the unit, the letter(s) refer to the section within the unit (e.g. Gp for 'Grammar points'), and the second number refers to the point within that section. For example, 10.D2.2 indicates Unit 10, Dialogue 2, Note 2 (in the Notes section following Dialogue 2); 10.D1.Ct refers to the 'Cultural tips' section at the end of Dialogue 1. Other references are in the form 1. As, where the number is the unit and the letter(s) refer to the section within the unit (in this case 'Arabic script'), and there are no numbered points within the section. The abbreviations for sections within the units are as follows:

As	Arabic script
D1 etc.	Dialogue 1 etc.
Ct	Cultural tips
E	Exercises
Gp	Grammar points
Kp	Key phrases

adjectives 5.Gp4	dates 3.As, 8.D2.4
agreement 5.Gp4	days of the week 4.Gp6
comparative 5.Gp5	demonstratives (<i>this, that</i> etc.) 2.Gp6, 5.Gp2
formed from nouns 10.Gp1	dual 5.Gp3
of nationality 10.Gp1	
superlative 5.Gp5	
adverbs 10.Gp3	<i>each, every, all</i> 12.Gp1
articles, definite 1.D1.3, 1.As	
indefinite 2.D2.1	gabil and ba:d with verbs 11.Gp2
ba:DH (some) 9.D2.1, 13.D3.1	gender 1.D1.3, 1.Gp3, 13.Gp2
colours 5.Gp4, 10.Gp1	honorific adjectives and phrases 10.D2.6

hope, intention 2.D1.Ct,
9.D1.2
how much/many? 3.D1.1, 5.Kp

if 11.D2.9, 12.Gp2
ind (to have) 5.Gp1
inn (that) 13.D3.3
is/are sentences 1.Gp1
Islamic dates 3.As

laazim (must) 7.Gp1, 11.D2.5,
14.D2.2

maal (see also possessive)
5.E4, 6.D2.2
money 5.D1.1, 12.D2.1
months of the year 8.D2.3
múmkín (perhaps) 8.D2.5,
11.D3.3

nafs (same) 7.D3.4
negatives (*not*) 5.Gp6
noun/adjective phrases 2.Gp5,
5.Gp4
numbers, cardinal 3.Gp2,
5.Gp3
ordinal 2.Gp4

please 2.Gp1
plural, nouns 5.Gp3, 7.Gp3
adjectives 7.Gp4, 9.D1.4
points of the compass 9.D3.7
pronoun, personal 1.Gp4,
6.Gp6
possessive 1.Gp5, 3.Gp1,
6.Gp6

relative *which, what,*
who 14.Gp

seasons 8.D2.Ct

time, expressions of 4.Gp7,
7.D2.3
telling the 4.Gp2
times of day 4.Gp4
there is and *there are* 2.Gp2,
8.D2.6

verbs, future 8.D2.1, 8.Gp1,
11.D2.4

gender in 1.D4.1
imperative 2.Gp3, 13.Gp1
kaan 9.D3.1
negative imperative
11.Gp.1, 13.Gp.3
past continuous/
habitual 10.Gp2
past tense 9.Gp1
strings or phrases 5.D2.2,
6.Gp2, 8.Gp2, 11.Gp3
to be 1.D1.2, 1.Gp1,
9.D3.1
to have 5.Gp1
to like 6.Gp4, 7.Gp2
types of 9.Gp1

weather 9.D3.3, 9.E5
word order 2.Gp4, 2.Gp5,
3.Gp2, 12.Kp